THE HISTORY OF
Genghizcan the Great,
First Emperor of the Ancient Moguls and Tartars;
In Four Books:
Containing
His Life, Advancement and Conquests;
with a short History of his Successors to the present Time; the Manners, Customs and Laws of the Ancient Moguls and Tartars; and the Geography of the vast Countries of Mogolistan, Turquestan, Capfchac, Yugurestan, and the Eastern and Western Tartary.

Collected from several Oriental Authors, and European Travellers; whose Names, with an Abridgment of their Lives, are added to this Book.

By the late M. Petis de la Croix Senior, Secretary and Interpreter to the King in the Turkish and Arabick Languages.

And now faithfully translated into English.

LONDON:
Printed for J. Darby in Bartholomew-Clofe, E. Bell in Cornhil, W. Taylor in Pater-nofter-Row, W. and J. Innys at the West End of St. Paul's Church-yard, and J. Osborn in Lombard-Street, M.DCC.XXII.
THE
HISTORY
OF
CAMPAGNIA in the East
1522
First Edition of the Fourth
52.
Mongols and Tartars.
In Four Books.
CONTAINING
The Rise, Advancement, and Conquest
with a short History of the Successors to the
Dreadful Semi-Tibetan Empire, and
the Manchu, Chou, and T'ang
 Laws of the Ancient Tribes and Tyrants of
and the Geography of the Ancient
Countries of
Mongolia, Tibet, China, and the
Middle East and Western Asia.
Colonial India, Central Asia, and Egypt.

The true life of the King and His
Cabinet Ministers,
And How Faithfully Translated into English.

LONDON

Printed for J. Dodsley, and are to be Sold by
Mr. Wilford, King's Printer to the
House of Commons, and Mr. W. Knapton, Printer to
the House of Commons, and Mr. J. Knapton, Printer to
the House of Commons.

MDCCXII.
TO HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS
THE Prince of WALES.

SIR,

I am premised upon the Reading of this curious volume with the intention intended to be careful in presenting the particular parts of the General Reserve of the Character of Gustavus Adolphus, in which the Character of Gustavus Adolphus is more is the exercise of what is the utmost Respect, that I presume to lay at Your Royal Feet the History of an Asiatick Prince, who excelled all his Predecessors in Bravery and good Fortune, and made himself (tho not born a King) Monarch of all Tartary, Persia, a great part of China, and many other vast Countries; carrying his victorious Arms as far as Muscovy: A Prince, who was Chaste, Just, and Temperate; an excellent Husband, Father, Friend and Master, and a great General.
DEDICATION.

I am persuaded when the Readers of this History will be delighted with that Great Prince's Character, they cannot fail of calling to mind those Virtues which have render'd Your Royal Highness the Darling of our Nation; in whose Person those Qualifications shine with the greater Luster, as they are heighten'd by that Candour, and general Benevolence towards Mankind, in which the Character of Genghiskan appears defective.

May the same good Fortune attend all Your Undertakings which attended His; and may Your Prowess be as renowned as his Successor and Descendent Tamerlain was, is the ardent Wishing of Your Royal Highness's most obedient and most devoted humble Servant.
THE

French PREFACE.

We are indebted for this History to the late M. Petis de la Croix, Secretary and Interpreter to the King in the Turkish and Arabick Languages, who died Nov. 4. 1695. in the 73d Year of his Age, after having executed this Employment for the Space of forty four Years with as much Honour and Integrity as Understanding. He is well known to the learned World by many excellent Works which he has composed. He translated the History of France into the Turkish Language, by which means he published the Grandure of our Monarchs to the farthest Parts of all Asia. He digested the three Volumes of Voyages into the East Indies of M. Thevenot the Nephew, being his particular Friend. He also made an accurate Catalogue of all the Turkish and Persian Books which are in the King's Library. He composed two compleat Dictionaries.
for the French and Turkish Languages. And, in short, when he was dying, he was about to present the World with the History of Genghiscan.

HE undertook this History by M. Colbert’s Order. This great Minister being wholly employ’d in aggrandizing his Master’s Glory, and putting our Nation in a condition of envying nothing which belonged to Strangers, was accustomed every Week to call together, either in the King’s Library or his own, a certain number of learned Men; as Messieurs Renaudot, Charpentier, Vaillant, Bizet, Gallois, Cotelle, many learned Jesuits, and others, to confer with them about the Sciences, in which each of them was skilled. He also caused their Works to be examined before him, and often proposed new ones to them; and to encourage them in their Studies, obtained from the King Rewards suitting their Merits and Labours.

IN one of these Conferences, where M. De la Croix had the Honour to be call’d in, the History of the Ottoman; by that celebrated Turkish Author Abulcair Tasch Kuprizade, falling into M. Colbert’s Hands, he order’d M. Petit to translate the Preface, and more particularly a Poem in the Book which treated of the Life and Actions of Genghiscan. The Poem being translated, this great Minister would hear it read, and found this Mogul Hero more justly merited that proud Title of Conqueror of Asia, than the famed Macedonian. He therefore order’d our learned Interpreter to compose this History: And to render it more exact, he commanded him to read carefully all Authors, both
both Eastern and European, who made any mention of this great Prince.

M. De la Croix, the better to answer M. Colbert’s Intentions, after having translated the four principal Authors Works who had writ, expresso, the Actions of Genghiscan, read all the Relations of the Travels of such as made any mention of this Monarch; and by this means reports nothing which is not confirmed by the Testimony of Authors worthy Credit.

THIS History, which cost him more than ten Years Labour, is useful not only to the Learned who are curious to know past Events, or to Geographers, who have remained mostly ignorant to this day of the Names of the Towns, Roads, Rivers, and Mountains in Grand Tartary, but likewise to all those who trade to China, the East Indies, Persia, or other Eastern Parts of the World, pursuant to the Treaty of Commerce renewed and established by the means of M. Colbert in 1708. between Lewis the Great and the Emperor of Persia, which is highly advantageous to the French Nation, and was managed by Monseigneur the Count de Pontchartrain, Secretary of State, whose Diligence and Zeal will not suffer him to lose any Opportunity of serving his Country. Merchants will therefore doubtless be glad to see a perfect Account of this Country, and become acquainted with the Manners and Customs of its Inhabitants.

As to the Pronunciation of proper Names, it is convenient to know, that the greatest part of those European Authors who have published Translations of Eastern Books, have spelt the proper Names according to their own Fancy.
Fancy, M. de Herbelot, for example, has writ them very near the same as they are pronounced in the Indies. And this is what M. Petis has rather chose to do, than to imitate that famous Andish Professor M. Pauquier, who in those Translations, he has published, the very excellent in all things else, has so corrupted the proper Names, that one can scarce know them: for instead of writing Abdallah, he puts Gabdole; instead of Emir Almumini, he puts Miramomtia, and so of others. Marco Polo has no less disfigured the Eastern Names: For Genghizcan he writes Cingiscan.

This History has been read and corrected by several Persons who understand the Eastern Languages, and who take place amongst Men of Learning: For the Author was not one of those opinionated Writers who think no Man on Earth capable of amending their Works. He freely consulted his Friends, and profited by their Remarks. If the late M. Herbelot had been of this Temper, his Bibliotheca Orientale had not been so full of Errors, but would have been digested into a better Order.

The History of Genghizcan has been examined with so much the more Care, in that the Author designed in publishing it the Advantage of his Countrymen; and nothing has been neglected that could render it both useful and agreeable to the Readers. M. de l'Isle, one of the best Geographers of the Age, drew the Map, according to the Directions he received from the two Messieurs Petis de la Croix. And M. Petis, the Author's Son, not only revised this Work; but, to render it yet more worthy...
The Preface.

The Reader's Curiosity, he has added an Abridgement of the Lives of all those Authors from whom this History of Genghiscan was collected. He has also translated the Lives of a great many Eastern Historians, Physicians and others, which he designs soon to present the Publick.
THE CONTENTS.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I. Of the Scythians or Tartars, and ancient Moguls. Of Genghizcan's Country, Ancestors, and Genealogy. Of his Birth and Name, and the Troubles he suffer'd during his Minority from the rebellious Chiefs or Cans of the Moguls after his Father's Death. Page 1.

Chap. II. Of Ounghcen King of the Keraites, otherwise known by the Name of Prester John of Asia. Of the Arrival of Temugin at Caraco-rum, and of the Conspiracy form'd against him there. 20.

Chap. III. Temugin's Retreat from Ounghcen's Court. His first Combat with his Father-in-Law's Troops. The Moguls refuse to pay Tribute to Ounghcen. Temugin is declared General of the Mogul Army. 37.

Chap. IV. Ounghcen's War with the Moguls. The Death of that King, and of the Prince his Son. Temugin proclaim'd Emperor of the Moguls,
The CONTENTS.

guls, Tartars, and other the Northern Nations of Asia.

Chap. V. The Moguls War against the Can of the Naimans. Temugin's Expedition against Toueta-Bey, Can of the Merkites. Regulations of the Mogul Army.

Chap. VI. The Description of the General Diet of the Moguls, called in their Language Couriltay. The Establishment of the Yasfa, that is to say, the Mogul Laws. Temugin changeth his Name for that of Genghizcan.

Chap. VII. The Death of Prince Boyrucc. Genghizcan's Expedition against Toueta-Bey, and the Success of it. Caschlu's Flight to Gurcan the King of Turquistan, who gives him his Daughter in Marriage. A Description of the Yugures, and their Religion.

Chap. VIII. Genghizcan's first War against the Northern Parts of China, called Cathay; and the Success of it. His Return into his own Country. His Expedition to the Desert of Capschac, otherwise called Decht.

Chap. IX. Genghizcan's second War with China, and the taking of Pequin the Capital City of the Northern China, or Cathay.

Chap. X. Genghizcan's War against the rest of his Enemies in Caracatay, Mogolistan, and Turquistan. The Perfidy of Prince Caschlu to his Father-in-Law Gurcan. The Moguls War against Caschlu. The Death of that Prince. Genghizcan's Alliance with the King of Carizme.
The CONTENTS.

BOOK II.


CHAP. II. An Envoy sent to Genghizcan from the Califf of Bagdad, to ruin the Interest of Sultan Mehemed King of Carizme. 132.

CHAP. III. Of five great Queens, the Wives of Genghizian; and of his four principal or darling Sons. 139.

CHAP. IV. The King of Carizme's Conduct towards the Moguls. The Mogul Merchants go to Carizme. 142.

CHAP. V. The Mogul Merchants are assassinated, and the Peace broken. 146.

CHAP. VI. Preparations for War against the King of Carizme. The State of Asia at the time of the Moguls Irruption. 152.

CHAP. VII. Genghizcan's Arrival in the Dominions of the Sultan of Carizme. The Battle of Caracou. 158.

CHAP. VIII. The Siege of Otrar. 164.

CHAP. IX. The Sieges of the Cities of Saganac, Uzkend, Alfchashe, Fenaket or Toncat, by Touchican. 172.

CHAP. X. The Siege of Cogene, and the History of Timur Melic. 185.
The CONTENTS.

BOOK III.


Chap. II. The Siege of Bocara. 208.

Chap. III. The Siege of Samarcand. 219.

Chap. IV. Genghizcan sends thirty thousand Men under the Command of three Generals, to pursue the Sultan of Carizme. Their Journey thro Coraflana. The Death of Sultan Mehemed King of Carizme. 229.

Chap. V. The Siege of the City of Carizme, Capital of the Kingdom of that Name. The Adventures of the Queen Turcan-Catun, the Mother of the King of Carizme. 239.

Chap. VI. Genghizcan's Expedition to Nacchcheb, Termud, Bedaschan, and other Places. 257.

Chap. VII. The Moguls Hunting. 260.

Chap. VIII. The Mogul Generals Expedition to Nifa, Cændar, and Damegane. 267.

Chap. IX. The taking of the Fortress of Ylale. The Captivity of the Queen Turcan-Catun, the Mother of Sultan Mehemed. The Conquest of the Cities of Rei, Com, and other Places in the Persian Hircania. 273.

BOOK IV.

CHAP. I. Genghizcan's Expedition to the Country of Balc, antiently called Bactriana. The Siege of Talcan. 283.

†  Chap.
The CONTENTS.

Chap. II. Prince Tuli's Expedition against the Sultan Gelaleddin, Son of Sultan Mehemed. The Sieges of the Cities of Merou and Nischabour. 290.

Chap. III. The Sieges of the Cities of Bamian, Candahar, Frontier-Towns of India on the side of Persia. 301.

Chap. IV. Prince Coutoucou's Expedition against the Sultan Gelaleddin. The Continuation of the Siege of Bamian. 306.

Chap. V. The Battle between Genghizcan and Gelaleddin. This Sultan's Passage to India. 313.

Chap. VI. The Reduction of Azerbijana, or the ancient Media, to Genghizcan's Obedience. The Moguls War against the Georgians. 323.

Chap. VII. Genghizcan's Employments during the Expedition of the Generals Hubbe and Suida in Azerbijana, and what the other Generals of the Army did. 331.

Chap. VIII. Genghizcan's Return from the Country of Iran to the Country of Touran, that is, from Persia to Tartary. 338.

Chap. IX. The Generals Hubbe and Suida's Expedition to the Kingdom of Schirouana: Their Travels by Derbende, or the Caspian Port. 344.

Chap. X. Genghizcan's Departure from Sogdiana for the Diet at Toncat. The Arrival of the Princes his Sons at this Diet. 351.

Chap. XI. The General Diet held in the City of Toncat. 356.

Chap. XII. Genghizcan's Return to Caracorom, the Seat of his Empire. The Moguls Marriages. The beginning of the War of Tangut. 362.

Chap. XIII. Genghizcan's March to Tangut. The last Actions of the Sultan Gelaleddin at his Return from India. The Battle fought with Schidascou the Sovereign of Tangut. 370.
The CONTENTS

Chap. XIV. The Advancement of Ogai Can to the great Empire of Asia. The Death of Genghizcan. 378.

AN Abridgment of the History of Genghiz-can's Successors.

The History of Touachi, Genghizcan's eldest Son. 386.
The Branch of the Uzbek Caus, Kings of Transoxiana, descended from the same Touachi Can, the Son of Genghizcan. 393.
The History of Zagatai Can, Genghizcan's second Son. 394.
The History of Ogai Can, third Son of Genghiz-can, and his Successor. 397.
The History of Tuli-Can, Genghizcan's fourth Son. 398.
The History of Hulacou Can, the second Son of Tuli, and of his Posterity. 401.

AN Abridgment of the Lives of the Authors, out of whose Works the History of Genghizcan has been collected. 408.
The Names of the European Authors, and Travellers, who are made use of to prove the Truth of the Facts related in the History of Genghizcan. 436.
The Names of the twelve years of the Mogul Kalendar.

1. The Mouse 1215
2. The Ox 1216
3. The Leopard 1217
4. The Hare 1218
5. The Crocodile 1219
6. The Serpent 1220
7. The Horse 1221
8. The Sheep 1222
9. The Monkey 1223
10. The Hen 1224
11. The Dog 1225
12. The Hog 1226

For an Account whereof, see Page 209. of this Book.
A Map of the
NORTHERN ASIA
Calculated for
M. Petis de la Croix's
HISTORY of GEOGRAPHIC.
By
William De Lisle
Member of the Royal Academy
of Sciences of Paris
1710.
THE
HISTORY
OF
GENGHIZCAN the Great.

CHAP. I.

Of the Scythians or Tartars, and antient Moguls. Of Genghizcan's Country, Ancestors, and Genealogy. Of his Birth, and Name, and the Troubles he suffer'd during his Minority from the rebellious Chiefs or Cains of the Moguls after his Father's Death.

If the Greatness and Rapidity of Conquests, the Variety of Events, the Downfall of Empires, and Establishment of the greatest Monarchy that ever the World knew, can recommend a History, without doubt this of Genghizcan and his Successors will be well receiv'd.
ceiv’d. This Prince laid the Foundation of a
Monarchy greater in its Extent than those
poffeded by Alexander or Augustus; for he ex-
tended his Dominions to more than eighteen
hundred Leagues from East and West, and a-
bove a thousand from North to South. It
likewise flourisht’d for more than one whole Age;
that is to say, from the Elevation of Genghiz-
can to the Throne, to great part of the Reign
of Timur Caan, his fifth Successor in the Chinese
Empire. But what is yet more extraordinary,
is, that Genghizcan had much fewer Forces
when he began his Conquests, than Alexander
or Casar, and that he kept them with as much
Prudence as Valour. He even excell’d all his
Successors put together in the number of his
Vicories; and was not contented with the
single Title of Conqueror, but strove to mer-
rit that of a Lawgiver also: tho this appear’d
incompatible with the continual martial Em-
ployments which his almost incessant Wars en-
gaged him in. Thus he made himself acknow-
ledg’d to be the greatest Prince that ever fill’d
the Eastern Throne; and all Historians have
given him the highest Titles and Encomiums
that ever Emperor was honour’d withal: They
surname him the Sultan of the Moguls
and Turks, the Conqueror of the World, the
only King of Kings, the Support of Princes,
the Master of Thrones and Crowns: they like-
wise say that God never invested any Sovereign

1 We are sole Ruler of the Earth, from the farthest East
even to the West.
2 The Prince and Chief of the Moguls was Genghizcan.
3 Sultan of the Moguls and Turks, sole King of Kings,
Posseffor of the Crown and Throne.
4 The conquering Genghizcan.
Genghizcan the Great.

on Earth with so great Authority. Nevertheless, how considerable forever this History may make this Monarchy appear to be, yet it must be confess'd, that till this time we in Europe have had very little Knowledge of this People, or knew what the Moguls were, from whence descended, or who have reign'd over them. We have little Knowledge of their several Countries and Tribes, altho Genghizcan's Successors have carry'd their victorious Arms even into Hungary and Bohemia, where they fought a famous Battel in the Year 1242; and they have likewise had Differences with the French in Syria on several occasions. And before this time Hulakou, Grandson to Genghizcan, had ruined the famous Empire of the Califs, or Successors of Mahomet, after having cut off the Head of Mustafem Billah, the last of the Abasside Califs, in the City of Bagdad, in 1258. Notwithstanding all these remarkable Events, and that there are yet living at this day some of the Descendants of this Prince, as well in Asia as in Europe, without mentioning those in India, who possess the mighty Empire whose Prince is call'd the Great Mogul, who is descended from Tamerlain the Great, who sprang from Genghizcan by the Mother's Side, in the fifth Generation. 6 Maurgre all this, I say, these known Facts, and the

---

8 Henry Duke of Silesia was kill'd. The King of Hungary faved himself in Austria, whose Prince stripp'd him of all the Riches his Queen had sent him to keep. He was at last exil'd into Slavonia, where he pait the rest of his Days in extreme Misery.
6 The Cans of Crim or little Tartary Precopens, who descended from Toufchican the Son of Genghizcan: the Uzbes who establisht themselves in 1498, in the Kingdom of Transoxiana, as also in Capfchac.
actual Existence of so many Princes of the Race, it is most surprizing that this Nation is so little known to us in Europe.  

Schidcardus. It is true, that the Empire of the present Moguls is new, it not being above a hundred and fifty Years since it was founded by Humayoun in Indoostan 8; and it is more than five hundred Years since Genghizcan was proclaim'd Emperor of the Moguls and Tartars: but both Nations had the same Original. And in this History the Moguls of Tartary are call'd the antient Moguls, only to distinguish them from the Moguls of India, who are more known.

But to return to Genghizcan, all the Moguls and Tartars of all sorts acknowledge him to be the greatest of all their Princes. 9 He was the Son of a Can named Pisouca, or Yesouca, who had reigned in the antient Mogolistan, a Country situate in Great Tartary, and in a Province call'd Caracatay. This Great Tartary in Asia, as well as the little Tartary in Europe, are no other Countries but those which in past times were call'd Scythia. They contain'd many Kingdoms, but they are now divided into so many petty Monarchies, that it is almost impossible to give a perfect Account of the Number or Names of them all.

The Eastern Authors are content to divide them into four Parts. The first of which is Caspibac, composed of many great Provinces, amongst which is that of the Gees, situate to the Eastward of the Moguls, and to

---

7 Ut vix quisquam nostrum ejus nomen audierit.
8 The Moguls of the East Indies are descended from the antient Moguls by Tamerlain.
9 In Caracatay was a great Can who was called Pisouca, the Son of Purtaa.
Genghizcan the Great.

the Northward of Transoxiana, and the Country which the River Sibon * waters. The second Division is Zagatay, which was call’d by the Antients Transoxiana, and by the Arabs Maouarammahar. The third is Caracatay, which contains Turquestan, the Country of the Naimans, the Country of the Gelayrs, of whom the Keraites make but a part; the Country of the Ygures, Tangut, Kothan or Khyta or Koutan; the Country of the Calmucks, and the Kingdom of Courge, which borders on China and on the Sea. The fourth part is compos’d of the antient Mogoiskan, which is Gog and Magog, whose Situation is so differently describ’d by Historians, tho’ it is indeed the Country possess’d by Genghizcan: Some have placed it in Asia Minor, others only in Lydia, others in Colchis and in Hyberia; and some Travellers have placed it in the Country of the first Scythians, beyond China, to the North East of Asia, saying, to support their Conjectures, that the Children of Magog, the second Son of Japhet, went from the North Parts of Europe to the North Parts of Asia, where they gave their Name to the Country they inhabited. In a word, this Country is situate in the most Eastern Part of Asia, to the Northward of China, and was always well-peopled. The Oriental Writers call its Inhabitants Moguls, and the Europeans have given them other Names.

In the time of Genghizcan’s great Grandfather, they made a vast progres, and advance’d as far as Caracatay, where they oblig’d some Cans to pay them Tribute; but in the twelfth Century, in which Genghizcan was born, they were Tributaries to the King of the Keraites.
The History of

In the seventh Age there were two sorts of Moguls, the one called Dirlighin Moguls, and the other Niron Moguls: the Sequel of this History will shew why they were thus call'd. The Dirlighin Moguls were the Nations of Congorat, Berlas, Mercout, Courlas, and many others. And the Inhabitants of Merkit, Tanjout, Mercat, Joumogul, Nironcaiat, Tecamogul, and some others besides, were call'd Niron Moguls; amongst whom we must observe that the Tecamogul and Nironcaiat properly belong'd to Genghizcan's Family.

The Word Cayat signifies a Smith. Cabalcan, the Great Grandfather of Genghizcan, to make himself distinguish'd from the other Cans of the Tribe of Niron his Relations, added the Name of Cayat to that of Niron; which Name his particular Tribe were known by: Since which time, this Name, as a Title of Honour, has remain'd not only to the Tribe, but to the Can himself, who is the Head of them all. The Origin of this Word was deriv'd from a certain People who liv'd at the remotest Northern Parts of Mogollstan, which were call'd Cayat, because their Chiefs had heretofore erected a Foundary for Ironwork in a Mountain called Arkenekom, which gain'd them a great Reputation, and made this Branch of the Moguls highly esteem'd, by the great Advantage all the Moguls Country receiv'd from this Invention; they therefore called these People the Arkenekom-Smiths. And Genghizcan's Ancestors being a-kin to them by Alliances with this People, "some mistaken

---

* They had never before that time had the Art of making use of Iron.

* Tunc temporis Chingis faber quidam eras in populo Moal, furabatur de animalibus Une Gai quod poterat, &c.
Genghizcan the Great.

Writers have publish'd, that this Prince was the Son of a Blacksmith, and had been of that Trade himself. What occasion'd them to fall into this Error was, that every Mogul Family, to preserve the Memory of these illustrious Founders, or Smiths, were accustomed the first Day of the Year to celebrate a Feast, during which they erected a Forge, with its Bellows, in which they lighted a Fire, and heated a Wedge of Iron, which they beat with Hammers upon an Anvil; and this Beating was preceded and concluded with Prayers. These Writers doubtless, not knowing the Meaning of this Ceremony, and ignorant of the Reason why the Surname of Cayat was given to Genghizcan's Family, were persuaded that this Can had been a Smith, and that in Thankfulness to God for having raised him to the Throne, they had established this Ceremony. Thus having searched no farther into the History of the antient Moguls, they made Genghizcan pass for a mean Person, whose Elevation to the Empire was owing to nothing but his good Fortune.

But those Historians who have made a curious search into Antiquity, to discover the Origin of this Prince, have had other Sentiments of him. They all speak of his Father Pifouca Behader, as of a Can the most considerable amongst the antient Moguls: He had, say they, two Kingdoms of great Extent; he had married Oulon Aikeh, the Daughter of a

---

3 This Emperor was Master of two Kingdoms, over both which he ruled.

4 The Mogul Emperors, to the number of twenty one, have reigned in Persia 150 Years; the first of which was Genghizcan the Son of Pifouca.
Can, his Relation, who had gained many Victories over his Enemies. It may be plainly seen by this that the mean Birth they report him to have had is purely the effect of the Ignorance or Malice of these Writers; whereas his Father was descended, in a direct Line for seven Descents, from Buzengir surnamed the Just, whose Reputation was so great both in the Eastern and Northern Parts of Asia, that there was no considerable Prince who would not gladly have paid for his Relation, or been proud of being ally'd to him. We may then rest assured that Genghizcan the Son of Pisoqua was born a Prince or Can.

As almost all Empires and illustrious Families have their fabulous Stories and false Miracles to grace their Beginnings, the Moguls have not failed to have theirs, and have rather chose to corrupt their History than to let it pass uncord'd with something marvellous. They have attributed strange Revelations to Genghizcan; and to gain the greater Veneration from the People, they have even deify'd him: those who were most interested in his Advancement, have had the inolence to make him pass for the Son of God; but his Mother, more modest, said only, that he was the Son of the Sun: but not

* Remus
and Romus
lus Sons of
Mars.
Alexander
the Son of
Jupiter.

1. They were all Emperors of the East, and the greatest of them all was Buzengir Can.

2. The greatest of these was Buzengir, from whom all the Mogul Cans descended.

3. Bin Abdallatif in his second Chapter of his Lubbattaouarikh says, that Genghizcan lived in the days of Abou Muslim Merouzy, who according to the Historian Almakine was in the days of Merouana the elder, the last of the Ommiades Califs. This Abou Muslim was he who took the Diamen from the Ommiades Califs, and gave it to the Abbasides, A. D. 749. Heg. 132.

being
being bold enough to aver that she was personally belov'd by this glorious Planet, she pretended to derive this fabulous Honour from his ninth Predecessor; and his Partizans reported, that Buzengir was the Son of the Sun.

The Turks and Tartars believe that the Mother of Buzengir was the Root from whence all the Mogul Emperors sprung: and History, or fabulous Story, has given ground to Historians to report, that a Woman was the first of this illusrious Family, which cannot be traced farther than her: she is called Alancoua. She had been married, and had born two Sons, the one named Baikut, and the other Balac-tout, according to Marco Polo's Report: other Authors call them Belkeda and Yekeda. 'Tis said that Dowyan-Byan her Husband died some time after; and that instead of thinking of marrying again, being esteem'd a very vertuous Lady, she lived a retired Life, and easily made the World believe that she applied her self wholly to the well educating of her Children: Nevertheless some time after she appear'd to be big with Child, at which her deceased Husband's Relations murmur'd, and she was at last forced by them to appear before the chief Judge of the Tribe. It is true, she made no scruple of doing it, but went boldly to the Judge, and defired him to give attention to what she should relate, and weigh well every

---

1 It is affirm'd that Genghizcan derived his Original from a Woman called Alancoua.

2 She became with Child; they accused her of a Crime, and carried her before the Judge, who question'd her about it: she said she had not had conversation with any Man living, and was upon her Bed, when a Light appear'd which penetrated three times into her Body.
circumstance of what had happen’d to her, before he past his Judgment on her. The Judge asked her by whom she was with child: she answer’d that no man had occasioned it, but that one day lying negligently upon her bed, an extraordinary Light appeared, illuminating the dark Room where she lay; that this Light, whose exceeding Brightness even blinded her, seemed to environ her, and three times she felt it penetrate even into her Body. And this good Lady being desirous to prove her self innocent to the People, and to persuade them that her conceiving with child was a Prodigy, and not naturally, she is said to have added, that each time the Light penetrated her Body, she conceived a Son; and therefore they must wait till the time of her Delivery, and that if she brought into the world three Male Children, it was an incontestable proof of the Truth of what she told them; but on the contrary, if she brought not three Sons, she would submit to suffer the most cruel Torments they could invent. The time of her Delivery being come, she silenced the Calumnies her Husband’s Relations had raised of her, and justified her Virtue by bringing three Sons, who in process of time gave their Names to three considerable Tribes, of which they were the Chiefs.

Buzengir was one of these three Sons, and the Heads of their Descendants were called Nouramyoun, that is to say, Children of Light. This Fable hath caused some Authors to call Genghiz-

---

9 I conceived with child, and I am big with three Sons; wait till I am deliver’d, and if I bring three Male Children, you will be convinced of the Truth of what I say: if I bring not three Sons, do with me whatsoever you think good.

6 She brought into the world three Male Children.
Genghizcan the Great.

can the Son of the Sun, believing him to be descended from Alancoua by Buzengir, his Predecessor in the ninth degree. Marrakeschy an Arabian Historian, who relates this Fable, professes that he does not credit it, and that he is fully persuaded this Lady only invented it to avoid the Death which by her Crime she had merited: but the Persian Condemir, a celebrated Historian, compares the Chastity of Alancoua to that of the Moon; and after having related the Fact in a more modest manner, affirming that the Light enter'd into her Mouth, and thence descended into her Womb, adds, that she was really brought to bed of three Sons, as she had foretold: And this Prediction, being thus verified, made her be afterwards look'd on as a Saint or Prophets.

It is most certain, that the Moguls look on this Fable as a sacred Truth, and that it is held a great Miracle amongst them; and they remain persuaded that God sending his Light to Alancoua, design'd that a Prince should be one day born of the Descendants of this Woman, who should avenge God on Mankind for all the Injustice committed by them on Earth; and they believed Genghizcan to be that Prince.

These three Children, whose Names were Mitconde, Bucan, Bosky and Buzengir, no sooner appear'd in the world, but Superstition consecrated Alancoua's Cheat to the People, and distinguish'd these her three last Sons from all the other Moguls, and the People gave to them and their Successors the Sirname of Niron: I say, to

1 She invented this Fiction only to avoid being put to death.
2 Corrupting the Word Nooranyson, which signifies Children of Light.
The History of

these three last Sons, for her other Children were called Dirlighin, to diltinguith that they were only Moguls born without a Miracle.

The same Condemir makes Alancona to be descended from Noah; he says, that she was the Daughter of Tchoubinecan, whose Ancestors he makes to be Oguz, Caracan, Mogolcan and Turk, who was the Son of Japhet, the Son of Noah: this Turk is the Person from whom the Turks pretend to proceed, he was the first King of the Eastern Tartary, in the days of Ceymerres the first King of Persia.

In fine, Genghizcan, according to the Report of Fadlallah who writ his Life, had for his Father Pisouca Behader, and for his Grandfather Purcan the Son of Cabalcan, who sprung from Tumeneecan Son to Baisancourcan, whose Father was called Caiducan; this last was the Son of Toutonitenean, who had for his Father Boucacan the Son of Buzengir, surnamed the Juff.

Amongst these Princes there were particular-ly three, who have render'd themselves worthy our notice: Buzengir, by a thousand Virtues, and by his Quality, being King of Cotan; Cabalcan made himself the Admiration of all Asia by his Courage; and Pisouca, the Father of Genghizcan, was fam'd for having brought under his Command the greatest part of the Chiefs of the Mogul Nations, with the Kings of Caracatay, who troubled his Quiet: he van-quish'd them, notwithstanding they frequently receiv'd Succours from the King of the nor-

1 Turk, the Son of Japhet, succeeded his Father; the Turks call themselves Sons of Japhet. He was the first Turkish King, as Kayoumerres is reported to have been the first King of Persia.
Genghizcan the Great.

Genghizcan was born Anno Domini 1154, in the Reign of Lewis the seventh King of France; and this Year was the Year of the Hog, according to the Mogul Calendar.

1. Genghizcan was born Anno Domini 1154, in the Reign of Lewis the Seventh King of France; and this Year was the Year of the Hog, according to the Mogul Calendar.

2. Cadrikbun sejurde Dermucht Daech.

3. He was first named Temugin.


5. Pifouca called him Temugin.
who could satisfy the Mogul Can; he told
him, That the Planet that reign’d at his Son’s
Birth, shew’d that he should have many En-
emies to combat with; and that the Blood
obser”vd in his Hands foretold that he should
slain the Fields with their Blood, and over-
come them all; and that he should in a little
time be Grand Cham of all Scythia, because the
House of his Nativity 1 in his Horoscope was
Libra, which was a celestial Sign, and the seven
Planets at that time were all in that Sign.
In effect, the Eastern Authors say in their
figurative Stile, ‘That the Air or Wind, im-
patient of his Severity, blew with such Vio-
lence in Asia in the time of his Reign, that
many thousands of People were destroy’d.’
This Prediction pleased Pisouca: He soon
conceiv’d mighty hopes equal to what it pro-
mised, and thought he could see in his Son Te-
mugin’s Face all the Presages of an heroicck Mind.
Nor was he deceiv’d in his Conjectures: This
young Prince had scarce attain’d to his ninth
Year, when he would apply himself to no other
Exercise than Arms.
The great Minister Soughoudjin died before
this time, but he left a Son called Carasbar
Nevian, who was a Man of great Parts and
Learning. Pisouca chose him to breed up 2 Temu-
gin; and the Sequel proves that he made
no ill choice.

6 Cuando Chinguiuscan nacio, truio en sus dos manos a
pretodo en cada una delias un poco de Sangre que fue cierto
proesfico de su crudidad.
1 His Horoscope was Libra, a celestial Sign, and all the
seven Planets in it.
2 Seeing his Son of a noble Genius, he committed him to
the Care of an Astarer, or Governor, of high Birth and Quality.
Genghizcan the Great.

About this time Pisouca saw the Course of his Prosperity cross'd by an adverse turn of Fortune. The King of China took and kept him long a Prisoner in his Dominions, and treated him very ill; but Pisouca had the good Fortune at last to break his Chains. He bribed those that guarded him, and found a way to escape to the Yeca-Mogul; where being come, he thought of nothing but how to revenge himself upon the King of China. In order to which, he married his Son Temugin (tho' he was not thirteen Years old) to a Princess who was Daughter to the Can of Naiman, who had as much Cause as he to hate the King of China. These two Cans were designing to go and attack this Prince with all their united Forces, but Death prevented them: for Pisouca died, and then all things were quite alter'd in less than a Year's space, and put into a very ill Posture.

Pisouca having made war with the People of Bin Abdal-
Tanjout, Merkit, and several other Tribes of the
Branch of Niron, his Relations, and force'd them to acknowledge him for their Sovereign; soon after his Death all these Nations revolted, the Cans of Tanjout and Merkit, Gemouca Cousin to Prince Temugin, and several Heads of other Tribes whom Pisouca had subjected, join'd together, and came to attack Temugin, who, notwithstanding his Youth, courageously set up his Standard, animated by his Mother's Example, who show'd her self a noble Prince, such as it became Pisouca's Wife to be. He

---

8 When Pisouca died, Genghizcan was but thirteen Years old; Ann. Heg. 562. It was in 1166, two Years or thereabouts after the Birth of Philip Augustus King of France.

4 It was a Staff, at the end of which a Horse's Tail was fasten'd, which served for a Standard in the Armies.
exhorted his Subjects to defend themselves, and with her, putting himself at the Head of his Army, march'd to his Enemies, and immediately gave them battle with good Success. But Fortune in the end turn'd against him; he was beaten, and Temugin fell several times into his Enemies hands, yet had always the luck to escape.

Being in the fourteenth Year of his Age, he espoused Purta Cousine, the Daughter of a Mogul Can, the Chief of the Nation of Congorat, and Kinman to Ounghean King of the Keraites.

By this Lady he had a Daughter that Year: But the Year following a powerful Party of the Inhabitants of Merkit having learn'd that Temugin was gone from his Kingdom on an Expedition, went into Nironcaiat to plunder it, it belonging to one of his Tribes. They surprized those few Forces that guarded it, and after a slight resistance, they enter'd and carried off all that was valuable, as also the Princess Purta Cousine, who was big with her second Child, and sent her to the King of the Keraites, thinking it would much oblige him to put into his power a Princess of such extraordinary Beauty as she was.

The King of the Keraites certainly receiv'd this Present with much Joy; but he always look'd on Purta Cousine as a Father on his Child; and tho Temugin had a great many Enemies in his Court who press'd him to marry this Lady himself, he answer'd, that he could not marry his Son's Wife. He spoke thus, because in the

* The Persecutions Temugin suffer'd from the neighbouring Cans or Princes.
time that he made a League of Friendship with Pisuca, he called Temugin his Son; he therefore treated her as if she had been his own Daughter.

So soon as Temugin heard that his Wife was in the King of the Keraites Hands, he order'd a Ne-vian to go and demand her in his Name, and to acquit himself of this Commission with all Diligence. The Ne-vian obey'd, and was no sooner arrived at Caracorum, where this King kept his Court, but he obtained Audience; and after having made him the usual Compliments, he declared the Subject of his Embassy. The King received him favourably, and granted all he desired; he even committed the Princes to his Care, charging him to treat her with all the Respect and Tenderness that he in duty owed to his Monarch's Wife.

The Princess Purga Cougine was so near her time, that she was obliged to stop for some Days on the Road; in which time she was de-liver'd of a lovely Son, whom she cauf'd to be wrapt up in soft Pafte, and to carried in her Lap, without harming its tender Limbs. This succeed'd so well, that when she arriv'd at Temugin's Palace, notwithstanding the tedious Journey she had gone, the Child was found to be in perfect Health. The Care she had taken of this young Prince was very acceptable to her Lord: He call'd him Jougi. And now altho Temugin had continued to support a War Condemned for seven or eight Years after his Father's Death, and that Oulon Ayke his Mother used all her Efforts to maintain him on the Throne.

4 That is to say, a Prince of that Court.
5 In the Mogul Language Jougi signifies happily arrived.
The History of

Heg. 566.

his Father had left him in, yet of necessity he
must at last sink under the weight of so many
Enemies; and therefore it was no wonder that
he was in the end taken Prisoner by the Tribe
of Tanjout. And what was more grievous to
him than his Prison, was, that his own Tribe
of Niron Cayat, seduced by Touela Bey, Can of
the Merkites, the most powerful of all his En-
emies, revolted at the same time, and took up
Arms against him. He again had the good
Fortune to escape from his Enemies hands by
his Wisdom; and then he began wisely to con-
sider, that tho he had again escaped, yet he
must now yield to Necessity, and provide a
Retreat for himself, in case his Enemies refus’d
to make a Peace with him; and that such a Re-
treat could not be procur’d from any Prince, but
on very disadvantageous Terms. He therefore
made all the Advances possible to bring the
Cans to an Accommodation. He offer’d them
all they could desire; but they having no other
Design than entirely to ruin the Family of Pi-
souca, rejected all his Proposals, in such sort,
that they invaded and usurp’d the greatest part
of his Dominions. He used many vain Efforts
to resist them; so that at length, despairing to
retrieve his Losses, he took a Resolution to take
refuge under the King of the Keraites, who
he flatter’d himself would give him a good Re-
ception, because Pifouca his Father had before
assisted this Prince against his Enemies.

About this time Temugin had a Dream that
prefag’d his future Greatness. He dream’d

* The Tribe of Niron, who had been subdued by Pifouca,
abandon’d Temugin, and put themselves under the Banner of
the Tribe of Tanjout.
Genghizcan the Great.

that his Arms were grown of an extraordinary length, that he had a Sword in each of his Hands, and that the Point of that in his right Hand was turn'd towards the East, and the Point of that in his Left to the West. He communicated this Dream to the Queen his Mother, who explain'd it in a manner suit- ing the ambitious Ideas she had conceiv'd of him. She told him, that these two Swords prefigured to him the Empire of two Parts of the World.'

Flatter'd with such vast Expectations, he was confirm'd in his Design of retreating to the Grand Can's. To this effect, he sent a Prince, or Nevian, to Caracorom, and did not in vain implore the Protection of Ounghecan: The King granted him an Asylum in his Court; and sent him word by the Nevian, that he might look on him as a Man who thought himself absolutely bound to his Service, by the singular Obligations he lay under to his Father Pisaouca. Temugin, thus assured of the Grand Can's Protection, had nothing more to do but contrive his Retreat. He left the Management of his Kingdom to his Uncle Ulagois, and marry'd the Queen Oulong Ayke, his Mother, to the Emir Buzrae, whom he made to fit on his right hand above all the other Princes; and then he departed with Carasbar to go for the King of the Keraites' Court. * Carasbar took all the Precautions imaginable for the Safety of his Prince whom he had the Honour to accompany. He chose six thousand Soldiers for his Guard,

* Accompany'd by Carasbar, he took refuge under Ounghecan.
and engaged all his faithful Servants to follow him; giving them hopes that the Grand Can would not fail to lend Assistance to Temugin, and re-establish them in their Fortunes, to the Confusion of their Enemies. Thus the brave Son of Pisuca put himself at the Head of those who would follow his Fortune; which tho' but few in number, and appearing an inconsiderable Band of Forces, yet in respect of their Courage and Fidelity to their Prince, were formidable.

C H A P. II.

Of Oungcan King of the Keraites, otherwise known by the Name of Prester John of Asia. Of the Arrival of Temugin at Caracorum, and of the Conspiracy formed against him there.

BEFORE we speak of the Reception Oungcan gave Temugin, I think it will not be improper to relate what Historians have said of this King, because he was not only a Prince of glorious Memory, but also a Person who has a considerable share in this History. His Predecessors had been powerful Lords in the Northern Parts of Asia, that is to say, in Mogolshan, in Gelair, Turquentan, and some other Parts of Caracatay. Some of his

1 Pisuca being dead, this young Prince went to Oungcan, who was King of Caracatay.
Genghizcan the Great.

Ancestors had even assum’d the Title of Padjcha; but their Greatness in time decay’d. And his Family, which was one of the most illustrious in all Caracatay, in the Country of Gelair, contain’d six great Branches or Tribes of Dirlighin Moguls, amongst whom were the Keraites, who made cruel Wars with their Neighbours. The Grandfather of Oung-hcan, whose Tribe resided at Caracoram, was one of the most considerable and most valiant Princes of the Keraites, but at the same time one of the most unfortunate. Several Cans of Caracatay combined against him, and vanquish’d him twice; and one amongst the rest, named Naour, his Relation and next Neighbour, having drawn him into an Ambuscade near a Wood, seized and immediately sent him under a strong Guard to the King of Courga in China, where he finished his Life in a strange manner; for the King of Courga caused him to be bound, and low’d up in a Sack, and cruelly let him expire on a wooden Afs.

* The Widow of Margous, which was the Name of this unhappy Prince, inconsolable for his Loss, and having a lively Sense of the unworthy Usage given her Husband, took a Resolution to be reveng’d, whatever it cost her; and you shall see in what manner she obtain’d her Ends. Tho Naour was the principal Cause of her Grief, and Object of her Hate, she feign’d herself to be angry with none but the King of Courga, and caus’d Naour to be told, after she had been fifteen Months a

---

* Which signifies Emperor.
* Some pretend that this Courga was Corea.
* She was call’d Conouky.
Widow, that being resolv'd to leave off her Mourning, she passionately desired to divert her self with his Company; and that if he yet retain'd any part of that Affection he had profes'd to have for her before her Marriage with Mergons, she should not refuse to make him her Husband: In fine, that if he approv'd of what she propos'd, of making merry with her, she should prepare to receive her, for she would forthwith come to him, with only a few of her Attendants; and that she would take care to bring with her good store of Bourachios, or Leather Barrels, filled with an excellent Cammez, or Drink 3. Naour falls into the Snare, and sends the Prince's word back, that nothing could be more agreeable to him than her Company. The Lady immediately makes ready to go; and after having sent before her a hundred Sheep, and ten Mares, she sets forward, attended by Chariots, laden with great Vessels made of Ox-hides, full of Cammez. Being arrived near Naour's Tents, the order'd that the Sheep should be given to the Cooks to dress, and the Chariots full of the Vessels placed within two Paces of the Tent in which they were to feast. The Can went out to meet the Princes with all the Demonstrations of Joy and Respect of a passionate Lover. He had a long Conversation with her. The Table was spread, and she caused some of the Barrels of Cammez to be brought into the Tent, which she presented to Naour. He drank of this Liquor with much Pleasure, and made himself drunk. Then she gave the Signal to her Attendants, who open-

---

3 Some call it Cosmos. It is a Drink made of Mares Milk and prepared after a particular manner.
Genghizcan the Great.

ing the great Barrels, there came forth instantly
arm'd Men, who joining with the rest of the
Princess's Attendants, fell upon Naour, whom
she had already stab'd, and cut him in pieces.
Nor could their Fury be appeased till they
had spilt the Blood of all those Domesticks
whom this Can had caused to come into the
Tent to serve them. Such was the Venge-
geance this generous Woman took on her
Husband's Enemy. And she concerted her
Measures so well to execute her bold Design,
that she retreated in Safety, without any dis-
covcry being made of what she had done, or
falling into the Hands of those who might
have reveng'd Naour's Death. By this great
Action she acquir'd a mighty Fame, and all the
Princes of that Age highly esteem'd her.

Mergous Can left two Sons by this Princess, Fadallah,
Coca Buiruc and Gurcan; the first of whom dying, p. 272.
left several Children, the eldest of whom was
Oungheen, who was at first called Togrul. At
ten Years of Age he accompanied his Father
in his Wars. Togrul was in that Expedition
where his Grandfather was taken by Naour,
and with much difficulty escaped. And hav-
ing more Merit, and being better belov'd
than the rest of his Brothers, they conceiv'd a
moist inveterate Hatred against him, when they
faw him seated on the Throne of the Keraiuts,
which he took possession of after the Death of
his and their Father. This Aversion was in-
creased in them, when they saw the King of
China send an Ambassador to congratulate him,
giving him the Name of Oungheen, by which he
intimated that he meritied the Title of Grand
Can, and that he acknowledg'd him for such.
And in truth this Name, which signify'd the
first of Cans, pleas'd him so much, that he af-
fum'd
The History of

sum'd it, and quitted that of Togrul, which he always disliked, because it was the Name of a certain Bird that was accounted an ill Omen. Ounghean had afterwards more than one Quarrel with his Brothers and Cousins, some of whom he put to death. This rigorous Treatment of them caus'd his Uncle Gurcan to make war against him. They came to Blows in the open Field, where, after a bloody Battel, Ounghean was vanquish'd, and despoil'd of all his Dominions; But he had recourse to Pisooua, Temugin's Father, and by his Assistance he expell'd his Uncle Gurcan, and pursu'd him even to the Kingdom of Cachin, and so was re-establish'd in his Throne.

This same Ounghean, King of the Keraites, was that Prince who made so great a Noise in the Christian World towards the end of the twelfth Century, ¹ under the Title and Quality of the Prester John of Asia, which Name the Nestorians first fil'd him by. And there are yet to be seen circular Letters sent by him to Christian Princes during his Reign; one of which was to Pope Alexander III. one to the King of France, one to the Emperor of Constantinople, and one to the King of Portugal, all writ in a very lofty Stile; in which he seem'd to design to give to those Princes to whom they were address'd, an Idea of his Greatness, and to persuade them that he was the greatest Monarch that ever Asia produc'd. There is yet remaining in French a Copy of the Letter he writ to King Lewis VII. the Father of Philip Augustus; but it seems by the Writing not to have been writ above three hundred

¹ Ounghean is the Prester John of Asia.
Genghizcan the Great.

Years, and it begins with these Words, *Pres-
ter John, by the Grace of God, the most
powerful Monarch, King of all Christian
Kings, wifeth Health, &c.*

This Letter is fill'd with an Account of this
Prince's Magnificence: He boasts of his great
Wealth, the Vastness of his Dominions, in
which he comprehends India, and all the Inhabi-
tants of Gog and Magog: he proudly speaks
of seventy Kings, who serve him, and are his
Subjects; he vaunts of the Tribute he extorts
from an Israelitish King, who is Lord of ma-
ny Lords, Dukes, and Jewish Princes; he in-
vites the King of France to come and see him,
promising to give to him great Dominions, and
also to make him his Successor. He proceeds in
this Letter to name the different sorts of Peo-
ple and Rarities that are in his Kingdoms. In
fine, he omits nothing that may conduce to his
advantage, and speak him a most powerful Mo-
narch. He calls himself a Priest, because of
the Sacrifice of the Altar, which, as such, he
performs; and King, as he executes Justice
and Right as sovereign Judge. He speaks of
St. Thomas, conformable to the fabulous Notions
of the Indians; and at the Conclusion of his
Letter, desires the King to send him some va-
liant Cavalier who is of the French Generation.
These are his Words.

But 'tis not difficult to discover that this Let-
ter is a Counterfeit, and that it was not writ
by Omghcan. The Nestorians who in that Coun-
try were very numerous, having establied
themselves there in the Year 737, by the means
of the Missionaries of Moussoul and Basra, were
the Authors of this Letter; having by means
of their Emisaries spread a Report over all
Christendom, that they had converted the greate-

The History of

Heg. 566.  

Test Part of the People in Scythia, and also the King himself, who was the most mighty and powerful King that ever reign’d there; that his Conversion was so sincere, that he was become a Priest, and had taken the Name of John. They added these Circumstances, to render their fabulous Stories more like Truth; and compos’d these vain Letters, to make the Zeal of their Sect more respected and commended, by their having gain’d so great a Prince to Christianity.

All the use we can make of these Letters for our History, is to prove that the World was at that time persuaded, and believ’d, that this King was a very great Prince, and likewise both a Christian and a Priest. There is also found a Letter of the Pope’s, who stiles him a most holy Priest; yet in reality there is not the least Appearance that he was a Christian, but only that he permitted Christians to live under him, 7 and that some of his Subjects had embraced the Christian Religion; nay more, that he even suffer’d them quietly to have Bishops. What is really true, is, that this King was the most considerable Can of the Kingdom of Caracatsay, and that a great number of Sovereign Princes paid him Tribute. Abulfarage observes, that he was Sovereign over all the Eastern Turks; but we must take notice, that in his time the greatest part of the Tartars were call’d Turks, tho they were not of the Country of Turquestan.

---

7 Et vocabant eum Nesloriani Regem Johannem, & plus dicerat de ipso in decuple quam veritas esset. Sic ergo exi- vit magna fama de illo Rege Johanne; & quando ego transtui per pascua ejus, nulius aliquid sciebat de eo nisi Nesloriani pauci. Rubruquis.
Genghizcan the Great.

Ounghecan was a Native of the Kingdom of the Keraites, whose Dependants were the Inhabitants of Gelair and Tendouc, which possess'd the largest Countries of Caracatay. The capital City of his Kingdom was Caracorum, situate about ten or twelve days Journey from the Place where Temugin first kept his Court, and about twenty days Journey from China. This City after Ounghecan's Reign became the Residence of the Mogul Emperors. Temugin establishment'd his Seat there, and his Successors made it the principal City of the Empire. The Emperor Othay Caan, Genghizcan's third Son, caused it to be rebuilt after his Expedition into China, and gave it the Name of Ourdoubaleg.

This Digression I thought necessary, to prove who Ounghecan was, in whose Court Temugin sought an Asylum from the Persecutions of his Neighbours. And now let us return to this Prince. * He arrived safely at Caracorum, being conducted thither by the Prince Caraschar, Ann. Dom. 1174. He was then in his twentieth Year. Ounghecan receiv'd him kindly, and gave him all the Marks imaginable of Friendship and Affection, acknowledging the grateful Sense he retain'd of the great Services the deceased Pisouca had done him. Temugin treated him with a like Respect, and mutual

---

8 Ounghecan who was the Governor of the Kerait Nation.
9 Ounghecan erat Dominus cujusdam villula que dicetur Caracorum, populum habens sub se qui disebantur Krit, Merkit.
1 And arrived in his own Country, where he built a City, which he called Ourdoubaleg; and this was the City of Caracorum.
2 Caracorum signifies black Sand.
3 Temugin comes to the Court of Ounghecan King of the Keraites.
Civilities pass'd between them. And, as in all Courts, the Favourites care's him whom their Master respects; so here the Courtiers all strove to please and oblige Temugin, whom their Monarch strove daily to do Honour to, and much loved.

Some Days after his Arrival, Caraschar desired Ounghean to give his Master a private Audience, which was granted. * Then Caraschar, being the Prince's Governour, first made to the King a full Recital of all the Injustice and Persecutions the Mogul Cans had treated this young Prince his Master withal since his Father Pisauc's Death; and finish'd his Discourse with supplicating him to permit him to continue in his Court till he was of years to be able to revenge himself upon them. Temugin, after his Governour had ended his Discourse, assured the King of his Obedience and Fidelity; adding, that he would entirely devote himself to his Service. Ounghean care's'd the young Prince, and promised him his Protection; and that he would not only make the Mogul Cans cease to persecute the Tribe of the Yeca-Moguls who had always been faithful to him, but that he would force the Tribe of Niron Cayat to return to their Duty: In fine, he treated him with all the Goodness that a King could shew, nay indeed used him as a tender Father would his Son. He added more Officers to his Retinue, and honour'd him highly. He sent Lords from his own Court to those Cans who were the greatest Enemies to Temugin, to threaten them in his Name with his Displeasure, declaring war with them if they

---

* He continued in Ounghean's Service till he was of age.
Genghizcan the Great.

continued any Hostilities against Temujin.

Caraschar had indeed much Wisdom and Judgment, and it was doubtless by his sage Counsel and Instructions that the young Mogul Prince came to be so soon capable of such a great Trust as he discharged in Oungbcan's Court, who honour'd him greatly, calling him his Son; nay he even plac'd him above the Princes of his own Blood, and committed the Conduct of his Armies to him in a War he had with the Can of Tendouc. Temujin made his Courage appear on this occasion; and some Mogul Cans refusing to pay the Tribute they usually paid to Oungbcan, felt his Valour. He behaved himself on all occasions with so much Prudence and Wisdom, that Oungbcan undertook nothing without first consulting him.

All this good Success, and the Confidence the King had in this young Mogul Prince, seem'd to secure him his Favour for ever; but his Virtues created him Enemies, even more dangerous than those who forc'd him to fly his Kingdoms.

The Princess Ouifoulougin, Daughter to the King, charm'd with Temujin's Valour and Person, fell in love with him, \(^5\) and rejected the Abulcair's Offers of Gemoucha, Can of the Tribe of Ja\(\text{a}\)-\(\text{a}\)gerat, who had asked her in Marriage with much Earnestness. Oungbcan gave her to Temujin, \(^6\) and this Marriage was celebrated with Abulcair, as much Pomp as if it had been the Grand Can's himself. Gemoucha could not patiently see this; he lov'd the Princess, and saw himself slighted.

---

\(^5\) Gemoucha was in love with Ouifoulougin, but she lov'd Temujin.

\(^6\) Genghizcan marries the Princess; Gemoucha is mad with Rage, and lores the Grand Can's Favour.
and rejected, his Love and Honour both in-
jury'd and affronted: This enraged him so, that
he resolv'd to revenge himself first on his Ri-
val, and then on the King of the Keraites.

Marrakeshy, a celebrated Arabian Author,
says, 'That the Fire of Envy was kindled in
the Hearts of those who belong'd to the
Grand Can, and that they invented devilish
Stratagems to ruin the young Mogul Prince,
and set the King against him; that they laid
Snares (like Huntmen) to entrap him, and
omitted nothing to break the Union that
was betwixt the King and him.' These are
the Words of Marrakeshy.

Gemouca, now a despairing desperate Lover,
easily found People disposed to join with him.
A thousand envious Wretches offer'd themselves
to assist him in his Revenge: Yet notwithstanding
they were all combined against Temugin, and
their Impatience great to ruin him, it was ma-
ny Years before they could bring it to pass.
The Credit of this young Prince, whom the
King had made his first Minister, the great
number of his Friends, and the Services he did
Ounghcan, defeated all their Plots and villainous
Designs a long time; but the Grand Can,
who wanted nothing but a Mind firm and
constant, proof against Sycophants Whispers, at
last suffer'd himself to be seduce'd with Calum-
nies: But before he gave ear to Temugin's En-
emies, many great Events past.

Toufia Bey, Can of the Merkites, was at the
head of those who sought to ruin the Mogul
Prince; and seeing that their Designs did not

7 He was valiant, and fear'd of his Enemies, which gain'd
him the Envy of his Equals, who did him ill Offices with
Ounghcan.
succeed, he broke Friendship with Ounghecan, resolving publicly to make known the Hatred he bore to Temugin. He join’d with the Can of Tanjout, and they made a League together, and had to formidable an Army when join’d, that they doubted not of overthrowing both the Father and Son-in-law together. They receiv’d into their Party all that were Enemies to Ounghecan, as well as Temugin; and to make their Friendship and League lasting, the Can of Tanjout proposed to the Confederates, to confirm their Union with a solemn Oath, frequent with the Moguls to swear on such occasions.

All the Cans and Emirs, or their Deputies, hew’d in pieces with their Sabres, a Horse, a wild Ox, and a Dog, and then pronoun’d these Words:

"Hear, O God! O Heaven! O Earth!

the Oath that we swear against Ounghecan and The Moguls Oath.

Temugin; If one of us spare them when occasion offers, and fail to keep the Promise he has made to ruin them, and assist their Enemies against them, may he become as these Beast.

This Oath was a long time kept secret; but at last the King and the Mogul Prince having been inform’d of all by a Lord of the Congorats, prepared for the War, and to prevent their Enemies. Temugin ask’d to go against them in Person. The half of the Army was given him. To these Forces he join’d his Moguls; and having set up his Standard, he Marched to the Borders of the Tanjouts, of whom he got intelligence by his Scouts, and by his extraordinary

---

*This was a long Staff or Pike, to which a Horse’s Tail was ty’d.*
Diligence surprized their General with his Arrival, who did his utmost to avoid fighting, till such time as some of the Allies Forces, whom he expected, had join’d him; and therefore amuzed Temugin so long with sometimes sending Parties towards the Mountains, where others were entrenched, or other Stratagems of War, that the Naimans, who being join’d in league with the Cans, were inform’d by their Scouts that the Grand Can had not all his Army with him, took this opportunity, whilst the Mogul Prince was on this Expedition, to enter into the Dominions of the King of the Keraites; and this Enterprize they undertook by the Advice of a younger Brother of Ounghecan’s, whose Name was Erkeecara, who had many Years before retir’d to the Naimans. Whole King Tayancan, accompanied with this malecontented Prince, briskly attack’d the Grand Can, who thought of nothing less than this Irruption, having the Year before made Peace with the Naimans on very advantageous Terms for them. Tho much surprized, yet he omitted not to oppose them bravely, but in vain; for this unfortunate King, after a tedious Fight, found himself oblig’d to fly, to avoid falling into the Enemy’s Hands. The greatest part of his Soldiers were either kill’d or wounded, the Capital City taken and pillaged; and his Brother Erkeecara ascended his Throne as King of the Keraites. The Remainder of his scatter’d Troops, with Prince Samouan his Son, retired to the Mountains; and Ounghecan, by unfrequented Ways, went to seek his Son-in-law, whom he found just on the point of giving battle to the Tanjouts, and their Confederates.

The Mogul Prince was much amazed when he saw the King in his Camp. He made him many
Genghizcan the Great.

many Compliments of Condolance, and comforted him with Hopes of having now his full Revenge. In order to which, Ounghecan put himself at the Head of the main Body, Temugin commanded the left Wing, and a Keraites Lord the right; and in this order they vigorously attack'd the Tanjouts, who defended themselves obstinately. The Victory was a long time doubtful, but at last the Grand Can was Conqueror; for Temugin, after having animated the Troops, both by his Words, and more by his Example, broke in with such Fury upon the Confederates Troops, that he put their right Wing into disorder. The rest of the King's Army taking fresh courage at this sight, fell in upon them with such Resolution, that they were routed: And so great a Slaughter was made of the Tanjouts that day, that that Nation was almost entirely destroy'd.

But this great Victory could not satisfy Ounghecan's Revenge; he must regain his Throne, and punish the rest of his Enemies. He order'd Temugin to levy more Troops. This Prince immediately issued forth his Orders; and by his Care the Year following he had got together a formidable Army of Keraites.

The Confederate Cans were not idle on their side, nor were their Troops less numerous. It is true there were but few Tanjouts; but to make amends, Toucha Bey brought a great number of Merkies with him. There likewise came many Hords of Dirigbin Moguls. The Can of Nanman came in Person at the Head of his Troops, and the Tribes which Erkecura had engaged to his Party considerably augmented his Army.

---

A Hord is a Tribe of Tartars living together in Tents.
They had at first only Skirmishes, and the Van-Guard on both sides fought several times with equal Advantage; but at last, the two Armies seeing each other, ranged themselves in Order of Battle, and Temugin at the Head of his Troops began the Fight. He was immediately follow'd by the whole Army: The Fight was smart and very obstinate, and perhaps the most bloody that History ever recorded. The Leaders of the Enemy at last gave way and fled: Their Example de-spirited all their Forces, who soon follow'd, and so great a Slaughter was made of them by the Pursuers, that the Fields were all dyed in their Blood. In this dreadful Confusion it was not known what became of Erkevara; but the Grand Can Ounghecan his Brother, enter'd victorious into Caracorum, and was re-establisht in his Throne An. Dom. 1179.

An. 1180. The Year after this famous Victory, Gemouca, Can of the Jagerats, who was the Author of this War, being still an Enemy to Temugin, and holding a Correspondence with the Confed-erate Cans, by the Mediation of the Prince Saconoun, obtain'd leave to return to the Grand Can's Court; where he was no sooner arriv'd, but he apply'd himself artfully to gain the Friendship of all those whom Temugin's great Exploits had render'd envious, and who by private Whispers and Practices endeavour'd to lessen his Credit. But he strove above all things to please the Prince Saconoun, who was very young. He easily gain'd his Ear and good Opinion: He represented Temugin to him in the blackest Colours, to render him odious in his Eyes. He did not stop there; he strengthened his Cabal, redoubled his Plots, and spread many Calumnies against the Mogul Prince,
Prince, which his Friends supported. He fail'd not to find People enough who subtly inspired Prince Sancoun with the Sentiments they defied against Temugin; making him believe he was an ambitious Man, who had no other design in view, but to deprive him of the Succession, and get the Crown. To accomplish which, he held secret intelligence with Tayan-can, King of the Naimans, whose Daughter he had marry'd in his Minority, which King was a known Enemy to his Father the Emperor; and that Temugin built his Hopes on this Can's Assilance, of whose Friendship he was well affir'd.

These Discourses had at last the Effect General, and mouca desir'd upon the young Prince, and Temugin past in his Opinion for a Traitor. He by many Letters to the Grand Can his Father, advertiz'd him of what he had been secretly inform'd, and omitted nothing that could render the Mogul Prince suspect. The King at first did not regard Sancoun's Advice, but look'd on it as coming from Gemouca's Malice, who had inspired him with these Notions: and without giving ear to it, continued to love Temugin, and to employ him on several Occasions where he had need of his Valour or Counsel. But at last Sancoun and Gemouca, the one spur'd on by Fear, and the other by Hate, redoubled their Efforts, and took so much pains, that they broke the King's Peace, and made him jealous of Temugin. The Grand Can's Troops and his being quarter'd together in the same Province, the least Motion of the Mogul Troops appear'd to Prince Sancoun treasonable Designs. This young Prince lived in perpetual Disquiet and Misfortune; he daily sent Couriers with Packets of Letters to his Father, in which he ceased
The History of


not to advise him to be on his guard, and said all that his Imagination or Fears could invent against Temugin. Ourhean was no longer proof against his Son's Solicitations, who conjured him earnestly to secure Temugin's Person; yet it was not without much Reluctance that he at last consented to resolve on seizing upon him. For first the Love he had for the 7 Princess his own Daughter, and next his reflecting on the great Services Temugin had done him, long kept him in suspense, and racked his Soul: but his Love for his Son overcame all; and the Fear of Temugin's wronging him of the Crown when he was dead, as he was made to apprehend he design'd to do, made him determine to secure his Son-in-law.

The Princess said to her Father weeping, my Husband is innocent, believe not these malicious Tongues. Abulcair.
Genghiscan the Great.

C H A P. III.

Temugin's Retreat from Ounghecan's Court. His first Combat with his Father-in-Law's Troops. The Moguls refuse to pay Tribute to Ounghecan. Temugin is declared General of the Mogul Army.

When Temugin's Enemies were assured that the King had resolved to seize this Prince's Person, they were overjoy'd; but as it often happens in the Affairs of this world, that Success does not always answer our Desires, and that Fate often confounds our politicke Designs, the Mogul Prince's Affairs took quite another turn than Ounghecan and Gemouca expected.

Bata and Kischelik, two of the King's Slaves, (some Authors say they belong'd to an old Lady of the Court) heard from a Place where they were hid some part of this Conspiracy; but particularly the Resolution the King had taken to arrest Temugin. * They hastened to the Hord where this Prince was encamp'd with his Troops by the King's Order, who had sent him from Court under pretence that his Presence was necessary in the Army, but in

---

1 Temugin remain'd more than eighteen Years in Ounghecan's Service. Mironde.

2 Ounghecan was displeased with two young Men, who fled for Safety to Temugin, who receiv'd them kindly, and hearken'd to them. Marrakeshby.
The History of

Reg. 589.

reality to get him away from his own Guards; for all the Soldiers ador'd the Mogul Prince, both because of the brave Actions he had done in the Field, and his Liberality to them every where else, of which they had a grateful Sense. The two Slaves gave him notice to take care of himself; nay, it is said, that they told him the very Day that was fix'd to seize him.

Tho Temugin could hardly credit what the Slaves told him, yet he did not omit to thank them, and promised that on all occasions wherein he could serve them, he would manifest his Gratitude for the Affection they had shew'd for him. After this, he consulted Canschar, and the rest of his faithfulst Friends, what to do; amongst whom it was resolved, that they should not do any thing rashly, but lie in ambuscade on their guard, and if any came to attack them, defend themselves valiantly. And the Slaves assuring him it was in his Tent he was to be seiz'd, Temugin order'd that all things of value should be remov'd out of it, that the Pavillion and Tents should be left standing, that all his Family and Officers should quit them, and that they should leave Fires burning in the Camp all Night. Then he march'd away with all his Troops, to go and possess themselves of a narrow Lane or Pass.

Temugin's Officers had no sooner executed his Orders and departed, but Ounghecan's Troops, who had marched all Night, arriv'd. They were far more numerous than Temugin's, and commanded by Sancoun and Gemouca. The

They even told him the time when Ounghecan design'd to fall upon him. Abuflarago.

Prince
Genghizcan the Great.

Prince rid full speed up to the Tents which he saw standing, and illuminated by the Fires left within; but the Mogul Prince’s Tent he chiefly aim’d at, at which they shot a prodigious Quantity of Arrows, not doubting but the Cries of the Wounded would soon drive out the Enemy they wanted to find: but they were much surprized when they could hear no Voice or Noise. They enter’d, and finding no body in that nor the other Tents, they imagin’d Fear had made the Mogul Prince betake himself to flight. They resolv’d to follow him; and looking on him not as an Enemy whom they must fight, but as a Man dismay’d by his own Guilt, who strove to escape from them, they follow’d the Track where his Army had gone, and never thought of keeping the Soldiers in their Ranks, who marched in disorder more like a confused multitude of Men and Horses, than an Army.

Mean time, Temg⁃jan, who was not above two or three Leagues from his Camp, had posted himself at the foot of a Mountain in a narrow Pass called Germeghab, cover’d by a Wood, with a Brook before him: but when he saw his Enemies coming up to him in disorder, he pass’d the Brook, and charged them so hotly, they had not time to discover who they were that assaulted them; which increased the Disorder that was already amongst them, in such a manner, that Djanghan’s Troops, after a very slight Resistance, fled before him. In this Fight they lost a great many Soldiers and Offi-

* They ran and pierced the Tents with their Arrows, but they perceiv’d no body; then they sent Detachments after him, but they could not find him. Marrakeshy.
The History of

Heg. 590.

cers. The Prince Sancoun himself was wounded in the Face by an Arrow, and was obliged to save himself, and all those that escaped from Temugin, by flying to Caracorum. This Action happen'd Ann. Dom. 1193. Temugin had not six thousand Men, and 'tis affirm'd that he defeated ten thousand. He was then about forty Years of Age.

This first Battle was a Presage to him of a great many other Victories. "When the Divine Providence, says an Arabian Poet, throws down to thee the Cable of good Fortune, all Creatures shall combine to render thee happy, every Enemy shall contribute to it; and if thou meetest with any Obstacle, Fortune shall take care to remove it." This was what befell the Mogul Prince in the end, those who strove to abase him were the cause of his rising; and it seem'd as if he stood in need of their Hatred and Malice to establish him in his Empire.

If the Grand Can had not suffer'd himself to be preposess'd against him, this Prince, who had already lived in his Court nineteen Years, had past the rest of his Life in the Employments and Station he had given him, and had been content with being a Dependant Can under him: but God was determined to make use of him to punish Asia, whose Crimes had arm'd his Vengeance against them.

After this Battle Temugin thought no more of any thing but how to secure himself from any farther Inults, and to open himself a way to the Throne. He strait retired with his Forces near to the Lake Baljouta: There

1 Sancoun was wounded, and a great number of Keraite kil'd. Miranda.
2 Some call it the Fountain of salt Water. Ibid.
he call'd together all his Relations and Friends; and the Battel of Germeghab having as it were given a new Lustre to his Name, all the Malecontents of the Grand Can's Court fail'd not to go and join with him. There daily arrived in his Camp entire Troops of Soldiers, with their Officers, who had before serv'd under him, offering him their Lives and Fortunes.

When he saw that he had an Army strong enough to execute his Designs, he quitted the Lake Bajjouca, and went and encamp'd on the Frontiers of China, upon the Banks of the River Cacoul, at the foot of a very high Mountain. He stay'd there some Months, which he very well employ'd: for in that time he accomplish'd his Design of bringing all the Officers and Soldiers entirely into his Interest; some by Promises of Rewards, and others, his particular Friends, by the hopes of Advancement: so that his whole Army was disposed to follow him wherever he would lead them. Then he decamp'd, and march'd for Mogolltan his native Country.

His Subjects the Yeca Moguls receiv'd him with Transport, as a Prince whom they passionately loved, and had lost with much regret. The Inhabitants of Niron Cayat sent their Deputies; nay, even some of the most considerable Persons amongst them went in Person to congratulate him on his Return to his Kingdoms, and offer'd him their Assistance if he had

---

3 He retires from the Field of Battel to the Lake Bajjouca, which is a salt Lake, and has not much Water. Abscia.

4 It was also called Caramouran, i.e. the yellow River, crocus Fluvius.
The History of

An. Dom. 1194. 
Heg. 591.

He thanked them all for their Good-Will, retain'd those whom he thought most sincere, and concerted with them what measures to take to be revenged on his Enemies. It was immediately resolved in his Council, that it should be publickly forbidden in all the Mogul Provinces to pay the customary Tribute to the Grand Can Ounghean. But before this Order was publish'd, they founded the People's Temper; and knowing they fear'd Ounghean's Power, they summoned several Diets, in order to dissipate their Fears. The greatest part of the Persons thus call'd, appear'd Tenugia laid before them the miserable Slavery they had long groan'd under, the Tyranny that was exercis'd over them, not only by the King of the Kervaites, but by his Favourites, to whom they paid intolerable Tribute. He represent'd to them, that it was in their own power now to deliver themselves from this cruel Yoke; That the Moguls, their Countrymen, who had been his Companions in the late Victory, were sensible that their Persecutor was not invincible; That having at their Head now a Man who had gain'd so many great Victories for Ounghean their Enemy, they need not doubt but he would conquer for them also who were his Subjects and Friends: To conclude, knowing the power Religion has over the Peoples Minds, he finish'd with assuring them that this important Enterprize which he now propos'd to them, proceed'd not from himself alone, but that the Almighty had inspir'd him with these

5 He stay'd some time near the Lake Baljouta, then decamp'd, and went to the Frontiers of China, and there encamp'd on the Bank of a River at the foot of a Mountain. Mircoudi.

Thoughts,
Genghizcan the Great.

Thoughts, and sent him to deliver them from this heavy Yoke of Slavery.

This Speech of Temugin made such an impression on the Peoples Minds, that all the Assembly gave him their Applause, and promised to obey him. When he was thus aftir'd of the Good-Will of his Subjects, the Teca Moguls and Niron Cayats, he raised only four thousand five hundred Soldiers more, whom he join'd to those he already had; and then sent and proposed a League to the Commander of the Congorats; his Brother-in-law, for his Father-in-law the Can of Congorat was dead, whose Daughter Purta Cougine was Temugin's second Wife. With this Prince he made a League, as also with the Cans of the Nation of Courlas; but for those of the Soumoguls, or Tartars, they refus'd to enter into the League, till he constrain'd them to it by force of Arms. The Cans of Merkat, seeing what had happen'd, chose to do freely what he would otherwise compel them to. And several Tribes, after their Example, put themselves under his Command, notwithstanding they were solicited by some Cans to stand out, particularly those of Merkit, amongst whom Touckabey, the mortal Enemy of Temugin's Family, was the most powerful.

All the Cans of Soumogul, Merkat, Courlas, the Teca Moguls, Niron Cayat, and some others, caused to be publish'd in their Dominions, that for the time to come, no more Tribute should be paid to Ounghecan, on any Cause or Pretext whatsoever. Pursuant to this Declaration, the People of all those Countries pull'd down the Offices, and drove away the King of the Keraites Receivers, who fled to Caracorom to give the King Advice of this Rebellion.

Ounghecan
Ounghean used all the means possible to oblige thefe petty Sovereigns to return to their Duty, but he could not gain his ends; and at last despairing to obtain any thing of them by gentle means, he remitted all sorts of Tribute, and Impositions to the Merkites, who had not revolted from him, and made large Promises to Toueta Bey their principal Can, hoping that this Party of the Moguls would balance the Power of the other.

It is true, Tenugin’s Cunning and Wisdom was such, that all the Grand Can’s Threats and Promises were ineffectual, either to regain or intimidate the People’s Hearts; he knew so well how to guard his own Frontiers, and those of his Allies, that his Enemies could not penetrate into their Countries. In fine, his Conduct was such, that all the Nations of his Party look’d upon him as their Deliverer. Yet tho he was very desirous to enter upon Action, he omitted not to counsel the other Cans first to send an Ambassador to Ounghean, to propose an Accommodation, on condition that he should release them from all Taxes, as he had done the Merkites.

All the Cans left the Management of this Affair wholly to him, protesting they would approve of whatever he should think fit to do. Tenugin cast his Eyes on a Man named Armi-joun (for so Fadallallah calls him.) He gave him all necessary Instructions, and sent him away with all Diligence; tho perhaps in his Soul he was less desirous of Peace than he appear’d to be by this Action, and rather wish’d to be revenged.

6 They send an Ambassador, but no Peace was made. A bulcair, p. 4.
So soon as this Ambassador arrived at Ounghecan's Court, he desired Audience, and was admitted to the King's Presence; to whom, pursuant to his Orders, he first made a recital of the Services Pisouca had formerly done him: Next he reminded him of his Breach of Faith with Temugin, whom he had promised to protect, and never to hearken or give credit to any that should speak against him, or endeavour to cause distrust between them; and then hinted how contrary to this his Promise, he had given credit to his Enemies, without searching into the Truth of the Matters they laid to his charge, or giving him leave to clear himself. Next he made a particular recital of the great Services Temugin had done him, which were sufficient to secure him of his Love and Fidelity to him. At last, he concluded, with entreating him to grant Peace to the Moguls, and renew the tender Friendship that had so long been between him and his Son-in-law, which he would never have lost, had it not been for his Enemies.

Ounghecan gave no answer to the Ambassador, but refer'd the Affair to his Council's Deliberation. Arnijoua retir'd to the Tent which his Attendants had prepared for him; and there the Prince Sancoun's Partizans and Gemouca's Friends treated him basely, and put a thousand Indignities upon him, of which he loudly complain'd, but receiv'd not any Satisfaction. He continued here a whole Year in the utmost Pain and Uneasiness, Ounghecan still putting him off from Month to Month; when he was still promised an Answer to his Proposals, but he never got any. At last he lost all Patience, and sent his Master an Account of all that had past. Temugin sent him express orders to return,
turn; after having made one Effort more to oblige the King to explain himself.

7 Oungbeau would willingly have made peace, but the Prince his Son, who still harbour'd in his Breast the Suspicion, which Gemouca had infused into him, and whose Hatred seem'd rather augmented by Temugin's defeating him, cross'd this Negotiation, and hinder'd its coming to a good Effect. For Sancoun was one of those obstinate Persons, who when they have taken a thing in their heads to believe or do, are not to be convinced of their Error; and therefore he himself carry'd the King's Answer, and told the Ambassador, that the Moguls must not expect to obtain any Peace but by submitting to whatever the King should please to require of them; that as for Temugin, he would neither commune with, nor see him, but with their Swords in their Hands.

So haughty an Answer obliged the Ambassador Arnijoun to retire immediately. He soon arrived at Mogolistan, and render'd an Account of his Negotiations to the Confederate Princes, who were all so displeased at the Grand Can's Insolence, that they renew'd their Protestations to throw off his Yoke, and promised an inviolable Faith to one another, calling Heaven to witness their Oaths, and then proceeded to prepare for War: Temugin, transported to see all things go as he wish'd, disposed himself to answer the Confidence the Allies had placed in him.

7 Oungbeau would really have made peace, but Sancoun oppos'd it with all his might. Mircoonde.

8 Sancoun said, there is betwixt Temugin and me no Reason but the Sword. Ibid.
Genghizcan the Great.

The Year following, being An. Dom. 1200. Sancun, to show that he meant as he said, fail'd not to send some Troops into Mogolistan to ravage the Country, and spread a Terror in the Rebels Minds. But his Designs were frustrated, his Enemies defending themselves bravely. It is true, this Year they did no great matters on either side; nothing considerable past: nevertheless, the M'guls always got the better, and beat every Party that encounter'd them: And Temugin gain'd much Honour by his Conduct.

The Grand Can, enraged with the ill Success of his Arms in Mogolistan, and being stung that these petty Princes should be able to resent him so long, caused Troops to be levied all over his Dominions, and drew together above thirty thousand Men out of the Provinces of Turquestan, Tendouc, and other Places depending on his Kingdom of Gelair. Nevertheless, whilst these new Levies were marching to Cara-crom, to join those of Caracutay, and other standing Troops, he sent to summon the Moguls to surrender before it was too late, threatening to treat them with the utmost rigour if they return'd not to their Duty; promising, that on the contrary, if they would submit and trust to his Clemency, they should receive all the Satisfaction they required, and so prevent the dire Effects of his Anger, and their own inevitable Ruin.

This Concessions of the King of the Keraites was enough to shake the Constancy of the Confederates; but Temugin dispatched Messengers immediately every way, to persuade the Moguls that Ounghean made these fine Promises only to amuse and surprize them, and that they must put no trust in him. He thought it not enough to
to represent to them by his Envoy what he had to say to them on this important Subject; but he called an Assembly at Manquerule, whether he invited all the Cans concern'd. So soon as they were met, he inform'd them of what was then doing at Caracorom, shewing them Letters which he had receiv'd from his Correspondents there, and assured them that what they contain'd had been confirm'd to him by his Spies, which was, that the Grand Cans and his Son had sworn the Ruin of the Confederate Cans, whom they already look'd on as their Slaves and Vassals, and that they were resolv'd to put all to Fire and Sword in the Mogul Countries: They promise us, added he, good Treatment, for no other reason but because they see us with our Swords in our hands, and in a Condition to defend our selves; they will no other but that we were so foolish as to fear them, or so credulous as to believe them; and then, alas, we were undone. Let us not base-ly deliver our selves into our Enemy's hands; believe me, let us bravely despise their Threats and Offers, and fear nothing, whilst we continue in a perfect Union amongst our selves.

Some Cans were at first of opinion to accept Ounghean's Proposals; but others, less ti-morous, nobly oppofed them. And it was at last resolv'd by the whole Assembly, that every Can should bring into the Field as many Men as his Tribe could furnish; that one half of the Troops of the Mercats should remain behind to observe the Merkites, and guard the Frontiers; that the War should be carried on with all imaginable Vigour; and that, in fine, Temugin should be declar'd General of the whole Army.
Genghizcan the Great.

Then they immediately presented to this Prince the Topouz, but he would not accept it but on condition that every Man should promise to be entirely obedient to his Orders, and that he should have full Power to punish those who did not do their Duty. They granted him all he ask'd, and then he receiv'd the Staff of Power. After which, every one return'd to his own Country, and thought of nothing but putting their Troops in a condition to take the Field, and march to the general Rendezvous.

Tho Tengin had no cause to distrust the Fidelity of his own People, yet to be the more secure of them, and to engage them firmer to his Interest, he gave Large Sums to them, and all the rest of his Army. And to shew that he knew how to recompense those that serv'd him, being indebted for his Life to the two Slaves who left Onghcan's Court, and came to his Camp to give him notice of that King's Designs against him, he in publick acknowledged the Obligation he had to them, gave them the Praises they merited, made them considerable Presents; and to honour them the more, declared them Tercans, assign'd them a Revenue for their Maintenance, and exempted them and their Children from all Taxes, with a Power to

---

9 This is a Staff of Authority, a short Truncheon made of a particular Fashion.

1 It was in the Year 1201, when this Resolution was taken.

2 It is a Title that is given amongst the Tartars and Moguls to those who have receiv'd of their Prince some great Privileges and Advantages, which distinguishes them from the rest of his Subjects. Marrakesh.

3 The Tercan is exempt from all Duties; he divides not his Booty with any body, not even with the Prince's Cus-
to take first of the Plunder that should be gotten in the War. He gave them likewise the Privilege not to be obliged to divide the Booty that they should take with the Prince's Receivers and Officers of the Customs. Besides all these Privileges, he permitted them to enter into his Tent whenever they pleased, without being obliged to ask leave of any of his Officers, and declared them exempt from all Punishment whatever Faults they committed, at least if it were not proved that they had committed a Fault more than nine times. He added to all these Favours, that these Privileges should continue to the Descendants of these two Ter- cans, even to the seventh Generation, or, according to the Report of some Authors, to the ninth.

But it was not to these Slaves alone that he shew'd his Gratitude; but he loaded with Benefits all those who had left Oungbeau to follow him, and chose out of them all his general Officers, and honour'd them with his Friendship and Places of Trust.

tom-Officers; he goes into the King's Presence without asking leave; and is pardon'd nine times, let the Fault be what will. Abulfarage.
Genghizcan the Great.

C H A P. IV.

Ounghcans's War with the Moguls. The Death of that King, and of the Prince his Son. Temugin proclaims'd Emperor of the Moguls, Tartars, and other the Northern Nations of Asia.

**Temugin's** Behaviour and Liberality to the Slaves, did him great Service; for it gain'd him the Hearts of a great many of the Soldiers. All the Mogul Cans, except those whom Toubla-Bey and Gemouca had prevail'd upon to enter into Ounghcans's Party, admiring his Generosity, grew more zealous to second him in all his Designs. When all the Confederate Troops were come together, Temugin named his Lieutenant Generals and other Officers; and, contrary to the Custom of the Scythians, who use'd to attack their Enemies in one main Body, he divided his Army into two Wings, and in the Center placed his own Troops as a Body of Reserve; which Custom he ever after continued to use. And considering that Fear often seizes those who are first attack'd, he march'd directly to the Frontiers of the Grand Can's Dominions, where he learn'd that his Army was already in Motion, which he resolved rather to attack than act on the defensive.

Tho the Spring was not yet come, yet the King of the Keraites had already got his Troops into
into the Field. He made them take long Marches so soon as he was inform'd that Temu-
gin was already on his Borders; but the Bag-
gage being very rich, and the Wagons that be-
long'd to his Army heavy laden, and by con-
sequence more troublesome than those of the Mogul;
hinder'd their March; for which reason Temu-
gin's Army advance'd swiftly, and soon arrived at
the Place where they design'd to make a stand,
and wait the Enemy's coming up. It was in
a Plain call'd Tangut, belonging to the Ker-
rates.

Temugin having learn'd in this Place that the
Grand Can was but three Leagues and a half
off from him, halted; and to encourage his
Soldiers, consult'd the Astrologers and Ma-
gicians. Marco Polo reports, that this Prince
order'd them to try his Fate by 3 Wands, to
see which of the two Armies should be victo-
rious.

4 Temugin marches with the Mogul Army; and Oungkam
comes to meet him with a great many Forces. Abulcair.

5 This Experiment of the Canes was then in use among
the Tartars, and is still among the Africans, Turks, and other
Mahometan Nations. The Cojas, or Registers of their Com-
mercies or Pirate Ships, commonly try this Trick before the
fight; and this is what they call, Do the Book. It is true
that they offer us Arrows: Two Men sit on the Ground
overagainst one another, and hold each of them two Arrow
by the Iron Part or Heads; the Ends of the two contrary
Arrows are fixed together one in another by the Needles
where the Bow-strung comes in shooting, so that the two
Arrows together make as it were but two Sticks in a parallel
Line. Then the Coja reads a certain Arabian Prayer. They
pretend that during this Reading, these two pair of Arrows,
two of which represent the Christians, the other the Turks,
shall approach one another, in spite of those that hold them
and after fighting the one Pair shall get above the other.
Thevnes's Travels, lib. 1.
Genghizcan the Great.

This Magical Experiment was perform'd after this manner: The Magicians took a piece of green Cane, which they split in two to make two Sticks, which they set upright on the Ground at some distance from one another, after having writ on the one the Name of Temugin (whom Marco Polo calls Cingis) and on the other Ounghecan (whom he names Umcan); then they told Temugin they would begin and read their Conjunctions, and that during their reading, the two Canes, by the Power of their Idols, should approach near to one another, and begin a Combat; at the Conclusion of which the one should get up upon the other, which should presage that Prince should be Victor whose Name was on the Cane that was uppermost.

The Mogul Army would be witness of this Experiment. The Magicians read their Book; the two Sticks were presently in motion; they approach'd, touch'd and fought, and at last Ounghecan's remain'd undermost. This Prodigy so animated the Moguls and their Commanders, that they march'd boldly against the Enemy.

But the Keraites, who were no less desirous of fighting than they, met them half way. The Grand Can, who commanded in Person, and the Prince his Son, seem'd to promise themselves an entire Victory. The two Armies being come in view of one another in the Plain, strove to place themselves as advantageously as they could on both sides, and were drawn up in order of Battle by their Generals, according to the best of their Skill.

*Cingis commando alli suoi Astrolologi & Incantatori che dovessero dire quale esercito dovesse aver vittoria. Costoro presero una Canna verde, la divisero in due parti per lungo, &c. Marco Polo.*
The History of Mironde, a Persian Author, desirous to represent the vast number of the Combatants which composed those two mighty Armies, makes use of an oriental Hyperbole, and says, the Neighing of the Horses, and the Cries of the Soldiers, obliged Heaven to shut its Ear; and the Air, by the great number of Arrows they shot against one another, seem'd to be a Field of Canes and Reeds.

Temugin before the Fight harangued his Army once again in this manner: He first talked to them of the Value of Liberty, and what a glorious thing it was to be free, and then set before them the Miseries of Slavery: He represented to them, that this was the great Day in which they must make themselves happy or miserable for the rest of their Lives; that therefore they must fight bravely and conquer, or die like Men in the Bed of Honour; that the Grand Can now made them pass for Rebels, and look'd on them as revolted Slaves, but that he hoped, by their obtaining a glorious Victory, they would convince the World of the Wrong that had been done them by their Enemy who had so long usurp'd an Authority over them and their lawful Princes, to which he had no right, and put a Yoke of Slavery on their Necks; which they bravely throwing off, should no longer be his Vassals and Slaves, Names which we scorn longer to bear, and which said he, our Enemies Blood must wash off from us.

Oungcan fail'd not likewise to exhort his Troops to fight, by shewing them, first, that their Enemies were not so numerous as they, nor so well disciplin'd and skilful in the Art of War. * These Rebels, said he, will quickly fly before us; they are not hardy Soldiers.
enur'd to War like you.' (This Prince seem'd to have forgot, that Temugin, and the greatest part of those he talk'd of, had often defended him, and were not ignorant in any part of War, or timorous in Fight.) He had made a longer Speech to his Army, if the Moguls had given him time; but the Prince Caraschar, who commanded the Van-Guard of Temugin's Army, attack'd theirs briskly, which was commanded by Gemouca. The Combate was sharp; the personal Hatred betwixt these two Generals render'd it obstinate and bloody, and Caraschar was overthrown. Then Suida Behader, at the head of the old veteran Troops join'd with the Soumguls, so vigorously charged Oungcan's main Body, that they gave back; and Gemouca advancing to sustain them, after defeating Caraschar, was obliged also to give ground. At the same time Temugin's two Wings of his Army, the one commanded by Prince Hubbe, and the other by Prince Yrca, attack'd the Enemy's two Wings. It is impossible sufficiently to commend the Bravery the Troops show'd on both sides for the space of three Hours. The Keraites fought with so much Courage, that the Victory often seem'd ready to declare itself on their side; tho' in the end the Moguls gain'd it: for Temugin, when he found it was time to advance with his Corps de reserve, where he was with the Princes his Son, fell on with so much Fury, that he overthrew all that opposed him. This Advantage enflam'd the Moguls Courage, and damped the Keraites, who began to give back, and break their Ranks on all sides. Their King, and the Prince his Son, used all their Endeavours to rally them together again, but in vain. At last, they were obliged to be take themselves to flight, after their Army's
An. Dom. 1202.
Heg. 599.

Example, who being fallen into Confusion, fled before the Enemy, who eagerly pursued them, and made so great a Slaughter amongst them, that all the Fields were strew’d with dead Bodies. This Victory greatly enriched the Moguls, who plunder’d the Baggage, and found enough to satisfy their Avarice. They also took abundance of Prisoners, and a great number of Horses.

In fine, this Day, which was fatal to Ounghec, decided Temugin’s Fate, who was then forty eight Years of Age; for it put him into possession of the Kingdom of the Keraites, and all Caracatay: And the vanquish’d King not only lost forty thousand Men kill’d in the Fight, but had the Grief of hearing that all his best Troops which remain’d were gone over to his Enemy. Some Historians report that Ounghec was kill’d in this Battel; but they are mistaken: It is true, he was wounded in the Fight, which Wound obliged him at last to quit the Command of his Army, designing to retire to Caracorom; but seeing himself pursu’d by a Troop of Moguls, he faved himself by flying to his Enemy Tayagan, whose Protection he implored. His retreating thither was much wonder’d at; every body being amaz’d that he should ask Protection of a Can by whom he was hated, and in a Court where there were several great Naiman Lords whom he had ill us’d, who fail’d not to relate to their Prince all the Injuries this now fugitive Prince had done their Country; saying, that they supposed his flying thither was a further Proof of his Malice to them, since it could be with no other design but to draw the Victor’s Anger upon the Naiman to occasion their Ruin, and involve them in his own Misfortunes; which he could never bring about.
Genghizcan the Great.

about, tho he often attempted it, during his Prosperity.

Tayancan, who was naturally ungenerous, and had even more Aversion to the Grand Can than those who persuad'd him to guard himself against him, gave ear to their Discourses, and follow'd the Counsel they all gave him, to put the Grand Can to death. Thus the Can of the Naimans, instead of succouring this ruined King, which had been far more honourable for him, and perhaps more advantageous, caus'd him to be seiz'd. The principal Lords of this Court, resolving to take away this unfortunate Prince's Life, held a great Council, at which their Prince took care not to be present; vainly imagining that he should by this means screen himself from the Reproaches of the other Cans, who might justly blame him for having basely violat'd the Law of Nations and Hospitality. Nay, he even pretend'd to be displeas'd at the Death of his Enemy; but when he saw at his Feet this poor Monarch's Head, which was present'd to him, he could not conceal his Joy, nor contin from insultting him, tho dead, in Words full of Scorn and Spite, which an Author much blames in these Words: 'It is a base Action, says he,' to tear or rend off a dead Lion's Beard. The Tongue in the Head was two or three times put out of the Mouth in Tayancan's Presence, moving as the Head lay cut off. At which some Lords who were skilled in Astrology, when the Can asked them whether this surprizing Motion of the Tongue

7 'Tis a base Action to rend off the Beard of a dead Lion. Abulcair.
8 Rubruquis, a French Author, says, that in this Country Astrology was a Science held in great Estimation.
The History of

prefaged any ill to him or his Kingdom, an-
swer'd, It was their opinion it prefaged that
Temugin should one Day govern the Naimans,
if good Care was not forthwith taken to pre-
vent it.

Sansouin accompany'd the King his Father to
the Borders of the Naimans; but fearing to
hazard both their Persons in one Place, he part-
ed from him, and retired in disguise secretly to
Caracatay, where he lay conceal'd some time, and
waited to hear News of his Father: But when
he was inform'd of his unfortunate Death, he
fled farther off, crossing Turquestan, and stopp'd
not till he came to the Kingdom of Teber, where
he liv'd unknown.

The Kingdom of Teber, of which no doubt
but the Reader will be glad to know some par-
ticular Account, is situated between thirty and
forty Degrees of Latitude, and between a hun-
dred and a hundred and ten Degrees of Longi-
tude, according to the Situation, given it by the
Eastern Geographers. It contains part of the
Region called Turc-Hinde, because it is a part
of Turquestan on the one side, and of India
on the other. Some divide it into two Parts,
calling it the Great and Lesser Teber. The Great
borders on China, the Lesser is situate to the
East of the little Kingdom of Kafchemire, just
behind the Mountains; and they are both but
six Weeks Journey over. This Country is full
of Towns and Villages well inhabited; the
People are so good humour'd and cheerful, that
they breathe nothing but Joy and Pleasure.

* Teber is a great Country whose Capital City bears its
  Name. It is situate between Gerassina and China, and a
  part of India. It makes part of the Country of the Turks.
  Bin Alamardi's Geography.
Genghizcan the Great.

But what is most surprising, is, that there is a Mountain called Jabal Assumum, which inspires all those with Melancholy who come near enough but to smell it, nay, even turns their Tongues black, in such a manner, that they remain black all the rest of their Lives.

'Tis from this Country that red Sulphur is brought, and the finest Tyger-Skins, as also that excellent Musk that is generally called, The Musk of Tebet. It is taken from a Creature much like a wild Goat, and yet in something resembling a Hog. But in a City call'd Schage, there is a sort of Rat whose Navel produces such precious Musk, that it surpasses all other. It is very much sought after, is often very scarce, and generally very dear; and this is the reason that the Tebet Musk is always prefer'd before the Indian and Chines. Here is also found much Civet; and the Rhubarb that grows here is extremely valued.

The Women are handsome tho' tawney, and they have one particular Quality which many People would not dislike, that is, to steal Children from one another to sell, and their Husbands do the same. It is in this Country that the Maids cannot marry before they have had Commerce with some Man; and she who has had the most Lovers is the most advantageously marry'd. The great number of Gallants passes for a Mark of the Merit and fine Qualifications of a Maid; and the Husband values her according to the Presents she has receiv'd from her Lovers, which he looks on as her Por-

1 That is to say, the Mount of Poison.
2 Named in the Arabian Tongue Dabat Almifis.
3 Called Farat Almifis.
tion. Their being thus prostituted while sin-
gle, does not render them vicious after Mar-
riage; but, on the contrary, it seems that they
become more chaste for being debauch’d, it
being very rare to find one who is not faithful
and true to her Husband.

But to return to Sancoun: This Prince, af-
ter having lived some time in the Kingdom of
Tebet, return’d to Turquestan, and staid in the City
of Cashgar, or Casgar *, where he lived, as he
had done elsewhere, without discovering him-
selp to any body. But one Day, having obser’d
some Moguls, whom he had seen at Caracorum
in Temugin’s Train, he imagin’d they were Spies
come to seek after him; and fearing to be ta-
ken, he speedily return’d into the Kingdom of
Tebet, where he had no better Fortune than
Ounghecan his Father; for being seiz’d for a
Spy, he was put to death, An. Dom. 1202.

Temugin was no sooner inform’d of Oung-
hecan’s Death, but without loss of time he con-
tinued to seize the Grand Can’s Dominions as
his Right by Conquest; and thus he soon be-
came Master of all his Treasures and Palaces.
And Sancoun being no where to be found, he
remain’d the peaceable Possessor of all the Ke-
raites Countries. The neighbouring Princes
who fear’d Ounghecan because he was more po-
tent than they, faw with Joy the War the Mo-
guls waged against him, hoping that it might
diminish his Forces, and weaken his Power;
but they little thought his Crown and King-
doms would all fall entirely into Temugin’s

* The Town from whence the Swedes took their Original,
according to M. Sparvenfeld, a Swede.
Genghizcan the Great.

Hands: And thus their Fear did not cease, but changed its Object.

It was about the End of the Year 1202 that this Prince, being forty nine Years of Age, retired into his own Country; where he was receiv'd with the Acclamations, not of his own People and Subjects only, but of all the Confeder- rate Moguls who had been Sharers in this Victory, or because of this his Success were obliged to come and testify their Acknowledgments to him, believing they could never be thankful enough to him for having deliver'd them all from Oungbcan's Tyranny, whom they call'd the Per- secutor of their Nation; and charm'd with Te- mugin's Valour, Wisdom, and Love to them, they prais'd him to the Skies. He fail'd not to make advantage of this Opportunity so pro- pitious to his Designs. He again used his Elo- quence, the Power of which he had experienced, and promis'd the Moguls great Fortunes if they would but zealously second him in what he desired. The People, gain'd by his Rhetoric, and by the great things their Countrymen and Friends who had accompa- nied him in the War related of him every where, resolv'd to chuse him their Grand Can or Cham, that is to say, Emperor of all the Tribes. The Cans who had been the Com-panions of his Victory, finding their Account in advancing him to this great Dignity, anima- ted the other Cans to follow their Example. The Presents Temugin made them, under pre- tence of dividing with them the Riches of the vanquish'd King, and the Fear of being forced to do what was pretended to be necessary for the Honour and Welfare of the Mogul Nations, made them all yield, with a seeming Willing-
The History of Temugin's Request, and agree to his being Emperor.

Messengers were dispatch'd to the absent Cans, to acquaint them with what had been resolved in the great Assembly that was held for this purpose. The Coronation of this Prince was then agreed on; and they thought no Place so proper to perform this Ceremony in as the Province of Yeca-Mogul, at Dilon Idne, where Temugin was born. The People run from all Parts to be Eye-witnesses of this great Ceremony, where the principal Actor soon came, accompanied by all the Cans his Partizans. He placed himself upon a plain Seat, which they had set for him upon an Eminence, from whence he harangued the Assembly with his usual Eloquence. His Speech being ended, they placed him upon a black Felt Carpet, which they had spread on the Ground; and the Person who was order'd to give the Peoples Voice, pronounc'd to him aloud the Peoples Pleasure in this manner: First he told him, That whatever Authority or Power he had given him, was derived from Heaven, and that God would not fail to bless and prosper his Designs if he govern'd his Subjects well and justly; but that, on the contrary, he would render himself miserable if he abused that Power, which the black Felt on which he sat did intimate to him. After this Remonstrance, seven Cans, or Princes, lifted him up with a ceremonious Air, and bare him to the Throne which was prepar'd for him in the midst of the Assembly. Then they proclaim'd him Emperor, and gave him the Title of Grand Can, or Cham, of all the Mogul Nations, even of the Merkites, whom they declared Rebels for not submitting to him. Then they bow'd their knee
Genghiscan the Great.

knees nine times before this their new Emperor, to shew the Obedience they promised to him. The People, after their Example, made him nine Bows, accompanied with Acclamations and Shouts of Joy, to assure their new Emperor that they would absolutely submit, and be obedient in all things whatsoever he should command them to do.

He promised, on his part, to govern them with as much Justice as Mercy, and to defend them against all their Enemies, always to procure their Good and Ease, to acquire Glory and Fame for them, and make their Names known to all the Earth. And having much cause to praise the Soumoguls (who are particularly called Tartars, by reason of the River Tata that waters their Country) he declared in the Mogul Language, that he would add to his Title of Emperor of the Moguls that of Grand Cham of the Tartars, both to do that Nation Honour, and testify to them the Respect he had for them, and how well he was satisfy’d with their Conduct tho they had been once his Enemies.

'Tis from hence that the several Scythian Nations who became Subjects to Temugin were by degrees called by a general Name, either Moguls or Tartars; but the last Name having in the end prevail’d, all Scythia is now called Tartary, both in the West and Southern Parts of Asia.

It is true, the Name Tata, or Tatar, was not altogether unknown in the East and North. It was of long standing amongst the Chinese. Before the Coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and for some time after, they had had War with a Nation who was not known to them but by the Name of Tata. These were, without question, the Soumoguls, and some other Nations; for the Name of Tartars was not known in any other Country before Genghiscan’s time.

It must be observ’d, that the Chinese have no r in their Alphabets, they therefore pronounce Tata instead of Tatar. This
This Ceremony was perform'd during the Reign of Philip Augustus King of France; and was no sooner over, but the Grand Can distributed Presents, first to the great People, and then more Largeffes to the Populace, to show his Liberality. He continued the Festival of his Coronation by magnificent Treats, according to the Custom of those Nations, many Days; and after they were ended, and he had in particular made merry with his Friends, he dismifs'd the People, and thanking his Friends, testified the grateful Sense he had of their Love and Services to him, and assured them of his future Favour and Protection.

Whilst this was transacting, a Brother of Oungban came to offer his Service to Temugin, and his Daughter in Marriage. This Prince was called Hakembo. The Grand Can receiv'd him favourably, and after having spoken handsomely of the deceased King of the Keraites, this Prince's Brother, he gave him the Employ he desired, and accepted of his Daughter with Joy, protesting that he would always have for her and him much Respect. I owe you, said he, a kind Treatment, in acknowledgment of that kind Reception your Brother gave me, and the Affection he shou'd for me in my Misfortunes. In truth, tho I never gave him any just Cause to be angry with me, or in any kind offended or wrong'd Prince Sancoum his Son, but, on the contrary, did them many considerable Services, yet they conspired against my Life, and looked on me as the greatest of their Enemies; yet I never blamed them, but imputed all their Persecutions of me to Gemouca. Their Hatred to me was his Work alone, and I have not a Jot the least Respect for their Memories, tho they fought my
Genghizcan the Great.

my Life, than if they had continued always my Friends.

The Keraite Prince thanked Temugin for his Favours, and took leave, setting out with all Diligence to go where his Employ demanded his Presence. The Grand Can fully design'd to marry his Daughter; but perceiving that the Captain of his Guard, whom he much esteem'd and honour'd with his Friendship, was fallen in love with this Princess, he gave her to him in Marriage, and the Marriage-Feast was kept at his Expence, with much Splendour.

Seeing himself Emperor of so many Nations, he thought less of enjoying peaceably his new Greatness, and tasting the Pleasures of Empire in Repose, than of rendering himself still more worthy of his good Fortune, by new Exploits. His Enemies, jealous of his Greatness, soon furnished him with the Opportunities he wanted to aggrandize himself and People. The first Commotion was in Caracatay. But before I proceed to relate these Wars, it is necessary that I speak a few words of Caracatay.

'Tis a large Country that extends itself from the South to the North from the Chinese Wall even to the antient Mogolistan. It is bounded on the West by Mount Imaus, and on the East by the Ocean and China. It is divided amongst several Princes, and inhabited by several different Nations or sorts of People. It contains the Kingdoms of Tangut, the Naimans, and many others. Some European Geogra-

---

1 Called in the Mogul Tongue Ancou or Avencouh.
2 Some Geographers will have it that even the Calkmucks Country and the Kingdom of Courge, which is the Corea, is a part of it; and Caracatay is also called Khita or Khoutan by the Orientals.
phers have taken it for Cathay, but were deceived for want of knowing that Cathay was China itself.

The Name of Caracatax was given to the Country of Scythia after a furious War which the Scythians had with the Chinese. The Scythians had at the beginning of this War the Advantage of the Chinese, and being puffed up with this good Success, enter'd the Kingdom of China; but having lost one considerable Battel, they were obliged to retire, and return back to their own Country. The King of China, resolving not to lose the Advantage this Victory had given him, caused them to be pursued by two of his Generals, who entirely routed and brought them under his Obedience. He did yet more; for fearing lest the Scythians should revolt, he made these two Generals who had beat them, Cans, or Governours, over them: and they, by his Command, built Forts and strong Towns for Colonies of Chinese Troops, which he sent thither to awe them. These Forces, destin'd to guard the Country, held the People long in subjection; but by degrees their Descendants forgot the Chinese Customs, and using to live as the Scythians, became Scythians themselves: And in the end China had no greater Enemies than they.

When the King of China established these two Generals in the sandy Scythia, he gave it the Name of Caracatax, alluding to the Name of his own Country Cathay; and to signify the Conquest he had made, and shew it was an

---

"These Generals were named Quimming and Quincing. Conquerors are used to do so; and our Kings have always comprehended under the Name of France the Countries they have subdued."
Genghizcan the Great.

acquired Dominion, he added the Epithet Cara, a Word used by the Tartars and Turks to signify black, to distinguish these two Countries from one another: yet in time they have been confounded by People who did not consider the Epithet Cara, which makes the Difference between the two Countries, and that Caracatay is barren and unpleasant, and, on the contrary, Cathay, that is, China, is a fine Country, fruitful, and filled with all sorts of good things.

CHAP. V.

The Moguls War against the Can of the Naimans. Temugin's Expedition against Toudta-Bey, Can of the Merkites. Regulations of the Mogul Army.

Ayancan Prince of the Naimans, one of the most considerable Princes of Caracatay, and Father-in-law to Temugin, was astonished at his Son-in-law's Greatness and good Fortune; which gave him some disquiet, notwithstanding the Union and good Understanding there had been of long time betwixt

4 These Naimans were the People whom the Antients called the Issidon-Scythians, and their Capital City is Issidon in Scythia, to which the Moderns have given the Name of Scucuir.
tween them. And the same Man who had been the Cause of the King of the Keraites Ruin, persuaded Tayancan to declare war against the new Emperor.

Gemouca, a Prince of the Tribe of Jage-rat, after the Battel was fought in the Plain of Tangus, having fled with the rest, thought he could not secure himself any way so well as to offer his Service to the Can of the Naimans, tho he had heard of the Death of Oungbcan the King of the Keraites. Tayancan, who knew him by Report to be a Man of great Abilities, accepted his Offers. Gemouca having gather’d as much of the scatter’d Remains of Oungbhcan’s Army as he could meet with, repair’d to Tayancan’s Court, where he arrived attended by a tolerable number of good Soldiers and almost all the Officers that had escaped the Enemy’s Hands. The Can received him very well, and promised him and his Friends Employments suitable to their Merits. Gemouca, who had a very subtle Wit, and was well skill’d in all the Arts of Courts, soon gain’d so great an Ascendant over Tayancan, that he could persuade him into doing any thing he counsell’d him to, and so prevail’d easily upon him to make war with the new Mogul Emperor, whom he boasted he knew perfectly, having long convers’d with, and studied him. He is, said he, a Man of an unbounded Ambition, and has no other view but to ruin all Princes, and quarrels with

1 Temugin’s old Rival Gemouca went to Tayancan. It is necessary, says he, that Friends should join to attack an Enemy. Abulcarr.
Genghizcan the Great.

them on purpose to invade their Dominions. Nor had he quarrel’d with the Emperor Oungh- can and Prince Sancoun, but because he is one of the most ungrateful and perfidious of all Men living: And at the same time that he was loaded with their Favours, and possefs’d the Honour of their Alliance and Affection, he meditated on nothing but the horrible De- sign of depriving them both of their Empire and Lives.

Tho this Discourse was nothing but pure Calumny and Falshood, and that Tayancan was not ignorant that he who spoke it was a deceitful Sycophant, yet he gave ear to him. The great Power Temugin had over the Moguls, the Conquests he had made of several Provinces of Carauntay, and his being so near him, and so powerful, render’d him uneasy; but above all, Temugin’s warlike Disposition, and his continual exercising his Troops, made Tayancan think him dangerous. Thus, lcs deduced by Gemouca’s Solicitations than by his own Fears and Jealousies, he took up a resolution to go to war with him. For this effect, he ask’d the Assistance of some other Princes, whose Inte- rest it was to put a stop to the new Emperor’s growing Greatness. He sent Ambassadors to Tousta-Bey, and other Cans of the Merkites, who desired no better than to join with him. The Can of Ouyrat, and the Can of Kerit, who was a Relation of Ounghcun, enter’d into this League; and Gemouca engaged the whole Nation of the Jagerats, who soon sent him all their Troops.

Temugin, on the other hand, was inform’d of these Practices by his Correspondents and Spies, and even by Alacou Can of the Trile of Car-

F 3
luc. 6, who sent him word that Tayancan had proposed to him to join their Forces together. A Relation of Alacou carried Temugin the very Letter the Naiman Can had writ, in which were contain'd all the Particulars of the Conspiracy, and the Names of the Cans before-mentioned who were engaged in it.

The Emperor of the Moguls, on this Advice, conven'd his Council, which was compos'd of his Uncle Utegekin, the Prince Caraschar, and some other Persons; he also would have his own eldest Son Prince Jougï, otherwise called Toufchy, assid at the said Council. He had no sooner made known to them the wicked Intentions of the Can of the Naimans, but War was resolved on. Then the Grand Can's Orders were sent to all Parts to his Officers, and new Levies were made. It was in the beginning of the Year 1203. that his Army was called together. So soon as the Emperor arrived, his Tents were set up, and he assign'd the Command of each Troop to such Officers as he thought proper, to whom he gave his Orders.

Then he sent Prince Cubla and Prince Hubbe with their Troops, to discover the Enemies. These two Captains went as far as the Banks of the River Altay, where they learn'd by some Prisoners whom they took in their March, the State of the Enemies: They informed them that Tayancan was preparing to come into the Field; that the Troops of Merkit, Kerit, Oygat, and Jagerat, were already come to the

* Condemir says that this Prince was a great Astrologer, and that he had by his Skill discover'd that Temugin's Planet was turn'd towards the Zenith of Glory, and that on the contrary, Tayancan's declined towards the Nadir of Humiliation.

Nai-
Genghizcan the Great.

Naiman’s Camp; that Gemouca was to command one part of them; and, that it was reported in Tayangan’s Army, that he design’d to meet and fight the Moguls. Cubla and Hubbe being inform’d of all they wanted to know, return’d back with their Troops to the Frontiers, and sent the Emperor word of all they had learn’d. And waiting his Answer and Orders, they intrenched themselves in an advantageous Post; because being far from the main Body of the Army, they fear’d being surpriz’d: yet they often ventur’d to go forth of their Intrenchments to make Inroads into the Enemy’s Country.

However, all that was told these Captains was not true; for Tayangan, following the Advice of his Council, far from going to seek out Temugin, waited his coming. He thought he ought to hearten up his Troops by Rest, rather than tire them with long Marches. He was persuad’d that his Son-in-law would not fail to come and attack him; and he flatter’d himself that Temugin’s Army, after having travel’d so vast a way as the Moguls must necessarily do, and thro’ the Scarcity of Victuals they must suffer in the Desarts they must pass thro’, would easily be overcome by an Army, fresh and in full strength.

One part of what Tayangan imagined came to pass; for Temugin coming up with the main Army, join’d the Troops on the Frontiers which he had sent before. There he stay’d, and refresh’d his Soldiers as well as the Place would permit; and then quitting his own Country, he march’d in good order to the Banks of the River Altay; and no Troops appearing to dispute the Passage over it, he was much surpriz’d, because he did not expect to cross it without
out Opposition. It is certain, he must have suffer'd much if any had resissted, tho ever so few. But Tayancan, altho Gemouca, whom he had made his Lieutenant General, represented to him that it was much better to prevent and meet the Enemy, than to wait their coming; that in so doing he would prevent the Moguls ravaging his Country; that his Soldiers not being so well train'd to War, or so hardy as Temugia's, should be led farther off from their own Country, left the Conveniency of retreating, in a Place so well known to them, should render them more cowardly and apt to fly: Tayancan, as I said, instead of hearkening to his Advice, or making advantage of the Moguls Weariness, by giving them no time to recover, flatter'd himself that their Horse was by this time in a bad Condition, and the farther they came, the less able they would be to fight; and on the contrary, his Troops being in full strength, would easily get the Victory: and so afraid in the Heart of his Country expecting Temugia, who soon arrived.

This Emperor's Army was neither so fatigued or ill fed as his Father-in-law imagined, because he had taken care to provide good store of dry'd Flesh, to serve when the fresh Meat fail'd; besides which, the Officers and great Men had all made Provision of Cammez, and the meaner Persons, Goats Milk dress'd and harden'd; they had also bought abun-

---

7 Mares Milk.
8 This boil'd Milk serves the Tartars for several Uses in their need. They make a Sort of Pottage with it; they put it into a little Barrel with Water, and tie it under their Horse's Belly, whose jogging on makes the hard Milk dissolve in the Water, and so they eat it without any other dressing.
Genghizcan the Great.

dance of Forage in those Countries that had Plenty: In fine, the Imprudence of Teyancan gave time to the Moguls to recover their Fatigue, and well recruit themselves. Teyancan contented himself with sending out Scouts to discover them, when they were near at hand; and when he heard they were coming towards him, and some experienced Captains whom he had sent to view them, convinced him how formidable the Enemy was, he began to repent that he had not follow'd Gemouca's Counsel.

The Can of the Tribe of Jagerat, tho' he saw too well that Teyancan had committed a great Fault in despising his Advice, yet shou'd not the least Discontent, nor appear'd less zealous for the common Cause. He harangued his Officers, speaking to them of Temugin's vast Ambition that excited him to endeavour to reign over all the Cans; as also, that they should reflect how he had already got possession of the greatest part of the Mogul Nations, and many Tribes of the Country of Caracatay: at last he concluded with exhorting them to fight valiantly for their Liberty.

When the Armies were in sight of one another, and ranged in Order of Battel, Prince Teyogi, and one of his Uncles, began the Fight, charging Teyancan's Army with much Vigour; but Cachlu, Teyancan's Son, sustaine'd the Shock with such Courage and Resolution, that his Troops gave no ground. These two young Princes, whom the Love of Glory equally enflamed, used all their Endeavours to shew that neither would yield Precedency to the other, either in Skill or Valour. The mutual Resistance the Van-Guards made on both sides,
The History of

An. Dom. 1203.
Heg. 600.
Mog. The Mouse.

engaged by little and little the other Corps, and both Armies came to blows.

The Fight lasted from the rising to the setting of the Sun, and was as bloody as obstinate. Tayancan perform'd all the Parts of a good General; and Gemouca, spurn'd on by the particular Hatred he bore the Grand Can, signalized himself by a thousand heroick Actions: But Temugin seem'd to have Victory at his beck. The Moguls fought with such Rage and Boldness, that at last they broke the Enemies Ranks, put them to flight, and made terrible slaughter of them. Tayancan was wounded mortally, and died soon after of his Wounds. Cachlac his Son, and Tourta-Bey, fled with all those that escap'd out of the Moguls hands. As for Gemouca, his Rage made him venture too far, for he was taken Prisoner; and after the Battel his Head was struck off, he being look'd on as the principal Cause of all the Bloodshed and Miferies of this War.

After this happy Success, the Kingdom of the Vanquish'd became a Prey to the Conqueror, who brought under his Obedience a vast Tract of Land. The War thus finished, Temugin return'd to Caracorom, where, during the Winter, his Court was filled with Ambassadors, some of whom were sent to congratulate him on his Victories, and others to ask his Protec-

2 The Furnace of the Fight continued glowing from Morning till Evening, says Condemir.

1 Tayancan was kill'd, Cachlac flies, as also the Moguls of Merkit, Ouyzar, and Jagerat, Abulcair, p. 7.

3 After the gaining this famous Victory, Temugin reduc'd to his Obedience the greatest part of the Mogul People, whom he brought into Subjection by his victorious Sword. Condemir, (who places this Event in the Year 1205, but that cannot be.)
Genghizcan the Great.

Almost all the Calmuck Tribes in the Eastern Parts put themselves under his Protection; but on the North some Tribes remain'd, whose Cans, jealous of their Liberty, refused to ask his Favour; and some Mogul Tribes who were farthest out of Temugin's reach, follow'd their Example. Toučta-Bey srove all he could to foment their Hatred against the Emperor. He having once been very great, and a powerful Prince in Mogolistan, could not bear to see the sudden Greatness of the new Emperor, who was but a Mogul Subject once as well as he; and therefore Toučta-Bey was not one of the last who join'd Tayancan. Temugin also looking on him as his worst Enemy, resolv'd to turn his Arms against him; not out of dislike only, but because this Can had so highly injured him, that he had a just pretext to finish his Conquest of Mogolistan.

He past the Winter in regulating the Affairs of those Countries he had conquer'd; and after having given Orders to his Generals to put his Troops in a readiness to march against the Tribes of Merkit, who were now join'd by some Tanjouts, and Prince Cachluc Tayancan's Son, he set out in the beginning of the Spring of the Year 1204. at the head of a powerful Army.

3 Toučta-Bey was not insensible what Thoughts and Reflexions Temugin must have of his Conduct; yet flattering himself that notwithstanding the ill Fortune he had had, he should one
time or other be more successful, was not un-
provided, but also made great Preparations
for War: Yet when he heard that his imperious
Enemy approach’d his Capital City Cachin with
so great an Army, the like of which was never
seen before in Mogolistan, his Heart failed, and
he with his eldest Son fled 4 to Boiruc, Tayukan’s
Brother, to whom Cachin was already fled for
shelter. The Grand Can by this means found
none to oppose him but some Fugitives who
were flying from the Danger.

The City of Cachin endeavour’d to make
some defence, and seem’d resolved to stand a
long Siege; but notwithstanding they made
a vigorous Resistance at first, yet they were in
a little time obliged to surrender, and Tew-
mugin put all to the Sword who had opposed
him. After which he made an Oath of Fidel-
ity to be administer’d, not only to those to
whom he committed the Charge of the Fort-
tress, and all the Tribe of Cachin, but even to
all others of the People who were of the Tribe
of the Merkits; and all the Cans whom he par-
don’d, swore to obey him.

After having given all necessary Orders in
the Merkits Country, his new acquired Domi-
nions, he return’d to his Capital; where he was
no sooner arrived, but having consider’d the
vast number of his Conquests, he judged it
proper to prevent Disorder and Confusion, by

4 In the Spring Genghiskan marched against Tousta Bey,
who did not stay his coming to him, but fled to Boiruc. Ab-
bulcar, p. 7.

5 When he came before Cachin, he besieged the Castle,
and having taken it in a short time, he razed it, and put
all those to the Sword who resifted him. Mirconde.
regulating his Empire. For this Cause he called a general Diet, which he order'd to be held on Nowrouz, that is to say, the first Day of the Spring of the Year 1205, the same Day that the Sun enters into Aries. He sent Messengers to the Princes his Sons who were far off, and to the other Princes of the Blood; he also sent to the Cans, Emirs, and all the great Officers to whom he had given the Government of the Countries he had conquer'd, and, in fine, to all the great Lords, either Moguls or Tartars.

In the mean time, not to continue idle, he resolved to establish good Orders in the Army which he had with him. He divided the Soldiers into several Tomans; at the Head of each Toman he placed a chief Officer or General, under whom he appointed ten Officers, who each commanded a Hezare; and every one of these ten Officers had ten other Officers under him, each of these commanded a Sede; and the Centurion had under him ten lesser Officers, each of which commanded a Dehe. The Generals of these Tomans were to act under the Command of some one of the Grand Can's Sons. This was the manner in which Temujin divided his Troops into Corps; after which, he disposed of these Employments to such Men as were most capable

---

6 He called a Diet in the Winter, and early in the Spring Genghizcan ascended the Throne. Abulcair.
7 These were Corps or Battalions of ten thousand Men.
8 A Regiment of a thousand Men.
9 A Company of a hundred Men.
10 A little Body of Soldiers composed of ten Men.
11 He divided the Troops that had served him against Onghecan into Tomans, Hezares, Sedes, and Dehes, and made these Employments hereditary to the Sons of every Officer. Mirconde.
The Description of the General Diet of the Moguls, called in their Language Couriltay. The Establishment of the Yaffa, that is to say, the Mogul Laws. Temugin changes his Name for that of Genghizcan.

When the Princes of the Blood, the Nevians, Cans, Emirs, and other Lords who were to compose the General Diet, were arrived at the Place the Mogul Emperor had appointed, and that the first Day of the Spring was come, they drest themselves all in white. The Grand Can drest like the rest, came to the Assembly. Then he sat down upon his Throne in the midst of the Princes of the Blood, with his Crown upon his Head, all the Cans and other Lords with the Continuation of his Prosperity and Health, which was follow’d with Shouts of Joy, and loud Acclamations of all the People who were present at the Assembly.

3 Temugin order’d his Sons, the Emirs, Nevians, and all the great Men of Mogolistan, to assemble; and the Turcomans call this sort of Assembly Couriltay. Condemir.
4 All the Assembly made Vows for his Prosperity. Id.
Genghizcan the Great.

bly. After which, not contented to confirm the Mogul Empire alone to him and his Suc-
cestors, they added all those Kingdoms and Na-
tions he had subdued, and declared even all
the Descendants of those vanquished Princes
deprieved of all Right or Title to any of those
Dominions. 3 When he had thanked them all
for the Marks of Love and Respect they shou'd
him, being sensible that the chief Duty of a
Prince is to establish good Laws, he declared
to them that he thought to add to the antient
Laws of the Land some new ones which he
desired, and commanded that they would ob-
serve.

The Laws of Genghizcan 4.

By the First Law it is ordain'd to be-
lieve that there is but one God the Creator
of Heaven and Earth 7, who alone gives
Life and Death, Riches and Poverty, who
grants and denies whatsoever he pleases, and
who has over all things an absolute Power.
It seems that Tenmugia had not published this
Law 5, but to shew what Religion he was of;
for

3 After the Salutations they began to read the Yassa. Abulcair.
4 The Laws in the Mogul Language are called Yassa, and
sometimes Tafac. Some Authors give them the Name of
Altoura, but it is very improperly; because this Word Al-
toura ought not to be used but for the Law of Mosis. A-
bulcair, p. 7.
5 To adore one God alone was the first Law. Mirconde.
6 Tho this Law had been long observ'd by the Tartars
in its Purity, and is at this Day by a great many of them;
yet Superstition had by little and little introduced Idolatry
into their Religion; tho the Superstitious did not think it to be
contrary to the Lawgiver's Intention; to save which, tho's of

...
for far from ordaining any Punishment or Persecution against those who were not of his Sect, he forbid to disturb or molest any Person on account of Religion, and desired that every one should be left at liberty to profess that which pleased him best, on condition that he believed there was but one God. Some of his own Children, as also some of the Princes of his Blood were Christians, and others made profession of Judaism or Mahometanism, or else were like him, Deists; for his Sect was more followed in Tartary than any other, tho there were also a great many Idolaters.

II. He ordained by another Law, that the Heads of Sects, the Religious, the Devotees, the Criers of the Mosques, and those that walk the Dead, should be exempted from all publick Offices as well as the Physicians.

III. He forbade, under pain of Death, that any Prince or other Person whatsoever, should ever presume to cause himself to be proclaimed Grand Can or Emperor, without having first been duly elected by the Princes, Cans, Emirs,

the Tartars who were neither Christians nor Mahometans introduced a Distinction between a celestial God and a terrestrial. They always ador’d the first, yet the second fail’d not to find a Place in their Houses under the Form of an Idol, or Statue cover’d with Felt, and named Naizgay. They accompanied this with others, which they said were the Images of his Wife and Children; and they address’d themselves to these Images when they had any domestick Wants. Rubruquis.

"Dicono essere il Dio alto sublime e celeste al quale ogni giorno col turribulo e incenso non domandano altro se non buon intelligenza e sanita. Ne hanno poi un altro che chiamano Naizgay che a modo di una stantina coperta in feltro." - Marco Polo.
and the other Mogul Lords, lawfully assembled in a general Diet.

IV. The Heads of Nations were by a particular Law forbidden to use all Titles of Honour, which they affected to have, in imitation of the Mahometans. He also forbids that any should give to the Emperor who succeeded him, any Title but that of Caan, with two aa. He desired that for the time to come all his Subjects should call him by the plain Title of Can; which was ever after practised by all that spoke to him: 9 But when any Person wrote to him, they always added some other of his Titles to that of Can.

V. He ordain'd that Peace should never be made with any King, Prince, or People, till such time as they were entirely subdu'd.

VI. The dividing of the Troops into tens, hundreds, thousands, and ten thousands, was also made a standing Order, as a thing very commodious in raising an Army with more speed, and to make Detachments with Ease and Order.

VII. That when there was a Necessity of taking the Field, the Soldiers should receive their Arms from the Officers Hands, with whom they should be left at the end of the

9 As we in Europe use only the plain Title of King; and not like the Turks, who neither speak nor write to their Sovereign without joining with his Name some pompous Title, as that of most happy, most powerful, invincible, or, the Disposer of Crowns, &c.
An. Dom. 1205.
Heg. 602.
Mog. The Leopard.

**The History of**

Campaign. That they should be obliged to keep their Arms clean, and in good Condition, and to show them to their Commanders when ever they were getting ready to give battle.

VIII. It was forbidden, on pain of Death, to pil- lage the Enemy before the General had grant- ed leave: But it was likewise ordain’d that the meanest Soldier should have the same Ad- vantage as the Officer, and remain Master of the Booty he should be found possest of, on condition he paid to the Can’s Receiver the Duties or Share specify’d by the Laws.

IX. Temugin being sensible that continual Exercise was necessary for his Soldiers, to keep them in good order; and Hunting appearing to him the most proper Employment to exercise his Troops, he ordain’d that every Winter the hunting of Beasts should be performed in the manner following.

Mirconde. X. That from the Month which with us is March, to that which answers to our October, no Person should take Stags, Deer, Roe-bucks, Hares, wild Asles, nor some certain Birds, to the end that the Court and Soldiers might find sufficient Game during the Winter, in the Hunt- ings they were obliged to make.

* In brief, they show’d to their Generals both Edge and Point, and were obliged by this Law to carry all their Arms so soon as the War was finish’d, into the King’s Store-houses, from whence they fetched them in the Winter for Hunting, which they always exercised themselves withal when no war-like Occasion prevent’d to use them. Fadiallah.

XI. It
XI. It was likewise forbid to cut the Throats of the Beasts a Man should kill: He must first the Legs, rip up the Belly, put in his Hand, and pluck out the Heart.

XII. The Ordinance that the Blood and Entrails of Beasts should be permitted to be eaten, was made in his time, and put amongst his Laws; whereas it was forbidden the Moguls, before then, to eat the Blood or Inwards of Beasts. But as he was one day returning from an Expedition, Provisions fell short for the Soldiers, and they were almost faint with Hunger: then meeting with a great Quantity of Beasts Inwards newly kill’d by People who had been hunting in a great Party, Hunger constrain’d them to eat them; nay the Emperor himself eat with them: and from that Moment the Prince, considering how useful this Food might be to his Troops on the like occasion, resolved to give Liberty to all his Subjects to eat them, and afterwards made it a Law.

XIII. The Privileges and Immunities granted to the Tercans was regulated in the manner already related.

XIV. To banish Idleness out of his Dominions, he obliged all his Subjects to serve the Publick in some kind or other. Those who went not to the Wars, were obliged at certain Seasons of the Year to work so many Days on the publick Structures, or do some publick Work for the State, and one Day in every Week employ themselves in the Service of the Emperor in particular.
XV. The Law against Thieving was, That he who stole any thing of considerable value, as an Ox, or other thing equal to that in Price, should be punished with Death, and their Bodies cut asunder in the middle with a Hanger. That those whose Theft was not of value enough to merit Death, should receive so many Blows with a Cudgel, either more or less, in proportion to the Value of the thing stolen. The number of these Blows were generally seven, seventeen, twenty seven, thirty seven, and so on to seven hundred; but this Punishment might be bought off by paying nine times the Value of the thing stolen. The Exactness with which this Law was observ'd, secured all the Moguls and Tartars who were Subjects to the Grand Can, from robbing.

XVI. It was forbidden all his Subjects throughout his Dominions to take any Person for his domestick Servant who was of his own Nation, to the end that they might all addict themselves to War, and be obliged to take care of the Captives they should take, whom they must preserve for their own Service. He likewise published two Ordinances: by the one it was forbidden, on pain of Death, to all Moguls and Tartars to give Meat or Drink to another Person's Slave, as also to lodge or clothe one, without Permission from his Master; and the other Ordinance obliged under the same Penalty, all Persons that should meet in the way with a fugitive Slave, to seize and bring him back to his Master.

XVII. By the Law concerning Marriages it was ordain'd that the Man should buy his Wife,
Genghizcan the Great.

Wife, and that he should not marry with any Maid to whom he was a kin in the first or second Degree; but in all other Degrees it was permitted: so that a Man might marry two own Sisters. Polygamy was permitted, and the free Use of their Women Slaves; which was at last the occasion of that great Liberty, that every Man took as many Wives and Slaves as he could maintain. * The Management of the Man's Fortune, amongst the Tartars, belongs to the Women: They buy and sell as they think fit. The Husbands wholly employ themselves with Hunting and War, and trouble themselves with nothing else. The Children who are born of the Slaves are legitimate, as well as those born of the Wives; but the Wives' Children, and especially those born of the first Wife, are the most respected by the Father, who first advances them. And this Advantage not injuring the rest, occasions no Disorder in the Family, who generally live in a perfect Union and Amity.

XVIII. Another Law condemn'd all Adulterers to die, and it was permitted a Man to kill them when surprized in the Act. The Inhabitants of Caiindu murmur'd against this Law, because they had a Custom amongst them, to testify their Respect and Love to their Friends, by offering their Wives to them when they came to see them, and regale them with their Company. They presented several Petitions to the Emperor, desiring they might not be deprived of this Privilege and Means to treat

* Le donne sono alli mariti di poca speza, anzi di gran guadagno & utile per li trasfigli, et esserciti. Marcopolo.
their Guests. This Prince, yielding to their
Impunities, left them to their Shame, and
granted what they desired. But to the end
the Modesty of his other Subjects might not
be offended, by his permitting so vile a Cus-
tom, which he thought contrary to Reason and
Honour, he at the same time declared that he
look'd on these People as infamous.

XIX. To preserve Amity amongst his Sub-
jects, he regulated Alliances, and extended the
Ties of Relation by Marriage very far. He
permitted two Families to unite, tho' they had
no Children living: it sufficed that the one had
had a Son, and the other a Daughter, tho' both
dead; they might write a Contract of Mar-
riage, and perform the Ceremony in their
Names; and they were reputed married, tho'
dead, and the Families really ally'd to one an-
other by this Marriage.

This Custom is still in use amongst the Tar-
tars at this day, but Superstition has added
more Circumstances to it: They throw the
Contract of Marriage into the Fire, after hav-
ing drawn some Figures on it to represent the
Persons pretended to be so marry'd, and some
Forms of Beasts; and are persuaded that all
this is carried by the Smoke to their Children,
who thereupon marry in the other World.

XX. Thunder, in antient Mogolistan and the
adjacent Countries, was so dreaded by the Mo-
gul's, because it did often much Mischief, that
so soon as ever they heard it begin they all
threw themselves desperately into the Rivers
and Lakes, and were often drown'd: Temugin
finding this extraordinary Fear caused him to
lose many of his best Soldiers, even when he
had
Genghiscan the Great.

had most need of them, strictly forbad, under a severe Penalty, any Persons to bathe or wash themselves upon any Pretence whatever; nay, they were not permitted to wash their Clothes in running Waters during the time it thunder'd, the People being thereby made to believe that the Exhalations they caused to break forth in disturbing the Waters, occasion'd the Thunder, which would not do them half so much harm, if they withdrew far from any Water. They immediately submitted to this Law, which the Tartars, who are not Mahometans, do still observe. But for those that are Mahometans, they look upon it as a superstitious Custom, which contradicts one of the principal Points of their Religion, which gives its Professors full Liberty to wash in any Place where they find Water; nay, they are even persuaded that without such Washing there are no hopes of Salvation for them.

XXI. Spies, false Witnesses, Sodomites, and Sorcerers, were condemned to be put to death.

XXII. He publish'd most severe Ordinances against Governours who fail'd of doing their Duty, but principally those who commanded in far distant Countries. In whatever Place they were, Death was their Punishment if their Conduct was blameable; but if their Fault was but slight, they must come in Person to the Grand Cæsar, and justify themselves. And this Prince was in this Case a very severe Judge.

Many other Laws were published which are not specify'd in the Authors I have translated. I am not ignorant that in the Levant there is found a Collection of Laws entitled *Tasā Genghiscani*;
The History of

An. Dom. 1205.
Heg. 603.
Mog. The Leopard.

ghizcan; but no Person has as yet brought a particular Account or Copy of them into France, and therefore we cannot fully satisfy the Reader's Curiosity.

The Laws we have recited, and which were doubtless the principal ones, remain'd in full Vigour during Temugin's Reign and his Successors. Tamerlain himself, who was born a hundred and eleven Years after this Prince, caused them to be observed throughout all his Empire; and the Crim Tartars, as well as others, to this day religiously observe them. It must be confess'd they could not be broken without incurring very great Penalties; which alone was enough to make them continue long in force, and without question preserved them so long.

One Author assures us that the Grand Can invented them all himself, without consulting any Books, or the Example of former Kings, and that they all were made by his own Wisdom: But other Authors pretend that they were only copy'd from those which the Orientalists heretofore attributed to the Invention of Turk, the Son of Japheth, the Son of Noah.

Temugin confirm'd to his Friends the Commands he had given them; he even made their Employments more advantageous than before. And having more Designs in his Thoughts than he communicated to his Mogul Subjects, beside the Methods he had already made use of to gain their Hearts, he had recourse to Revelations, telling them that God had assur'd him that he should become Master of the World, but that it was his Pleasure that he should change his Name, and that they

That is to say, the Laws of Genghizcan.
Genghizcan the Great.

should call him Genghizcan. He added, that they ought not to doubt of the Accomplishment of this Divine Promise, because they had seen that which had been made him in the same manner some Years before so happily fulfilled, in his so gloriously delivering them from Oungb- can's Tyranny.

Other Authors relate this Revelation to have been pretended to be reveal'd by another Person, and tell the Story thus: They say there was a Man, one of the first Rank amongst the Moguls, who after having wander'd stark naked in the Deserts for some time, enter'd into the Assembly, and declar'd aloud, that he came commissoned by God to find out the Son of Pifouca, to advertis[e] him to take the Name of Genghizcan, that is to say, the Can of Cans, and to assure him that he should be Emperor of the whole Earth. This Deceiver made a florid Discourse upon the Glory and Honour this Prince should acquire under this new Name. And to make himself be heard with greater Attention, he had the Boldness to aver that he only related God's own Words. The Prophets, says a Turkish Poet, who foretold nothing but what was possible, were always applauded. In fine, Temugin, whom we shall henceforward call Genghizcan, appear'd to be in a condition able to make good the Prophecy by Force of Arms; and the People readily gave credit to it. An- other Author assures us, with much Appea-
ranc’ of Truth, that this Prince secretly hired
this Imposter to act this Cheat.

To conclude, a Diet was called towards
the end of the Year 1205. Genghizcan, accord-
ing to his wonted Customs, gave Presents to
every Body, and nothing but Prayers and ar-
dent Wishes for his Prosperity were to be heard.
His Friends the Mogul Lords, who were privy
to the Secret of this pretended Revelation,
supported him strongly in all things; so that
the Report was soon spread over all Mogulistan
and Tartary, and was so strongly credited, that
they look’d upon all the rest of the World as
if it belong’d of right to the Grand Can their
Emperor.

C H A P. VII.

The Death of Prince Boyruc. Genghiz-
can’s Expedition against Toucta-Bey, and
the Success of it. Caftchuc’s Flight to
Gurcan the King of Turquestan, who
gives him his Daughter in Marriage. A
Description of the Yugures, and their
Religion.

T H I S Prophecy was very useful to Gen-
ghizcan, for the Moguls breath’d nothing
but War; nay they even thought it a Crime in
those Princes who refiltes, whom they endeav-
our’d to deprive of their Kingdoms. Boyruc,
Brother to the deceased Can of the Naimans,
to whom Caftchuc his Nephew and Toucta-Bey
were fled, was the first Victim to this Prediction.

This Prince, being informed of the Moguls Resolution, had made all the Preparation possible to receive them: but it signified little, tho’ Tousta-Bey assisted him with his Troops of Merkites; for after a very slight resistance Boyrucc fled, but was taken in the Chafe by a party of Moguls, and brought a Prisoner into their Camp, where he was put to death. And this so much daunted his People, that his Army dispersed. Cachbluc and Tousta-Bey, after having given Orders to their Soldiers whither to repair, betook themselves to flight, and retired to the Frontiers of their Territories at Ardich, where they designed to get together some Troops which had not been able to join the Army before the Fight.

In the mean time Genghizcan, not being far from the Country of Tangut, marched in the year 1206 with a Strong Detachment into that Country to revenge himself upon Schidafcoun who was the Can of it, and who had secretly lent succours to his Enemies; and there he cunningly surprized Campion the capital City of Tangut: which so astonished Schidafcoun, that he immediately submitted, and made use of the great Lords of that Country to intercede for his Pardon with the Emperor, to whom they went loaded with Presents. The Conqueror pardon’d the Can, and restored him to his Kingdom with the same Power as before, on condition that he should every year pay him a certain Tribute, and permit a Garison of Moguls to remain in the Fortresses of Campion. And thus the Grand Can, being satisfied with the immense Riches he had found in that City, returned back to his Army.
It is in the City of Campion that the Caravans of Merchants stop, which come from the West, and often from the South, to trade with China; because they are forbidden to go further; and here they sometimes sojourn a long time, which gives an opportunity to the Inhabitants to enrich themselves greatly. Here are a great many learned Men who study the Sciences, which they call Schimia, Limia, and Simia. The first treats of Physick, Philosophy, Chymistry, and the Philosophers Stone; the second of Astronomy, and natural Magick; and the third of Theology, and Cabalistry, which contains the Knowledge of good and bad Angels, and teaches the Operations which belong to these Sciences.

Expedition against Genghizcan almost at the same time conquer'd the Countries of Crequir and Cachin, which last Name formerly the Country of Tangut bore. In 1207. he learnt that Cachlic and Toucta-Bey had got together all their Forces in the Country of Ardish in the Tribe of Merkit. He gave them the least time he could possible to fortify themselves, and marched against them in the midst of the Winter. These Princes amazed at his sudden Arrival, and finding their Army not strong enough to stand against him, retired farther off, and went and encamped even under the Fortresses of Ardish.

But their Enemy, notwithstanding the badness of the Ways and rigour of the Season, soon appeared before the Place, and forced them, maugre all the Precautions they had taken, to come to an Engagement with him. The Battle did not last long; for the Moguls, as if affur'd of the Victory, fell with such Fury on their Enemies, who were inferior to them both in Courage and Number, that they soon put them
Genghizcan the Great.

An. Dom. 1208.
Heg. 605.
Mog. The Serpent.

93
to flight. Toute-Bey was killed in the Action.
As for Caschluu, he was so cunning as to get out of
the Croud, and with some expert Soldiers escape
to Turquestan, where he had the good fortune
to be shelter'd by Gurcan, one of the most
powerful Princes of Touran', that is to say, of
the Tartars Country which is beyond the River
Gibbon, reaching to the Borders of Caracatay.
King Gurcan touched with his Misfortunes, re-
ceived him kindly, and conceived so tender a
Friendship for this young Prince, that he gave
him his Daughter in Marriage to comfort him
in all his Troubles.

All these Conquests and happy Successes raised
Genghizcan to so high a pitch of Greatness,
that many sovereign Princes sent to ask his
Protection, and among the rest Arslan Can Prince
of the Carluques in Caracatay: but there hap-
pened to Genghizcan something yet more advan-
tageous, which compleated his good Fortune;
and that was the Discontent of a Prince of
Turquestan named Idicout².

He was Can of the Nygures; and tho a very Misconce-
powerful Prince, yet was Tributary to Gurcan
King of Turquestan, who generally kept among
Fadallah, the Nygures a kind of Intendant of that Pro-
vince, to be watchful for his Interest, and to
gather the Tributes which that People were
obliged to pay him. He who at this juncture

¹ Some call this Country Touran, because it was heretofore
the Portion of Tour the Son of Peridoun, King of Persia, of
the first Dynasty named Pischdians. Thus by the word
Iran we must understand all Persia, and all the Countries sit-
tuate beyond the River Gibbon, otherwise called Oxus. Fadallah,
p. 326.
² Idicout in the Mogul Language signifies the Prince then
reigning. Abulcair, p. 3. Abulfarage.
The History of

An. Dom. 1208.
Heg. 605.
Mog. The Serpent.

held this Employment there, was called Schouakem. This Man, being naturally covetous and hafty, besides the Money and Wares which he levied as due to his Master, extorted more for himself; insomuch that the Tugures finding themselves oppressed, complained of his Abuses to their Prince: he forthwith spoke to Schouakem, but he could get no Reparation or reasonable Answer from him; nay he even answer'd to the Remonstrances he made to him with Threats. The Prince was so enraged at his Insolence, that to be revenged he caused him to be assassinated, and forthwith sent two of his chief Officers to Genghizcan to inform him of what had past, and to ask his Protection, because after this Act upon which he had been obliged to perform, he fear'd the Resentments of Gurcan. These Messengers overtook the Mogul Emperor in the Country of Tangut, where he was then gone to reduce to his Obedience Schidiscou, who with some other Cans had revolted from him, amongst whom was the Can of Crequir, whose Country he entirely ruined.

The Mogul Emperor, glad of an opportunity to make King Gurcan uneasy, who was never a Friend to him, and had now made an Alliance with Caskhuc his Enemy, received these Envoys from Idicou much better than he would otherwise have done. He hearken'd to them, and made them such an Answer as they wished; and when they returned back, he named two fit Persons to accompany them, whom he charged to assure the Can of his Friendship and Protection against Gurcan.

This civil and generous Procedure charm'd the Can of the Tugures, who strait took all that he had most precious and valuable in his Treasures, and went to Genghizcan in person to offer
Genghizcan the Great.

him his service; which he did with all the Zeal imaginable, and all the Respect his Quality would admit. This Condescension render'd this Prince so agreeable to the Grand Can, that he received him with all the Testimonies of Affection that he could desire. The Affurances Idicou gave him of his Zeal were not contradicted by his Actions; for he afterwards serv'd the Mogul Emperor effectually, who, as an acknowledgment of the Services he did him, gave him one of his Daughters in Marriage, and ever after looked on him as one of his Children. King Gurcan, who upon the news of Schouakem's being assassinated was transported with Rage, and threatened Idicou with Fire and Sword, could not execute his Threats before he heard that this Prince was become Genghizcan's Son-in-law; and the fear of drawing the Moguls Army upon himself stifled his Rage.

The Religion of the Yugures has not been perfectly known to Historians: some have writ that they were Idolaters; others that they were Christians, but Nestorians; and others that they were Mahometans; because several amongst them made profession of all these Religions. Their Priests, whom they call'd Lama, had their Heads and Beards quite shaved; their Superiours obliged them to observe Chastity, and to serve in the Temples; they had to cover their Heads a kind of Mitre, and for their Habit a yellow or red Tunic, close-bodied as a Cassock, and gilt about the Waist; over this Tunic they wore a Cloak cut after the manner of a Christian Deacon's Cope. When the Lama's are in their Temples, they are seated on Benches over against one another, holding their Books in their hands: they are always bare-headed,
and instead of singing they read to themselves softly, and generally keep silence. Those who report them to be Idolaters, have never declared in what particulars they were so. The Idols they had are no sufficient proof of it, since in the Conversation Rubruquis had with them they assured him that they adored but one God; and that tho’ they had Images, it was only to put them in mind of those they represented, and not to adore them. Which might make one conclude, that they then made profession of Genghizcan’s Religion, with a small mixture of the Superstitions which they had in common with the Moguls.

The Moguls were indebted to the Yugures for the Art of Writing they now use, which was wanting before their Union with this People. Whether they found the manner of the Yugures writing more convenient than their own, we know not; but they took to it, and have used it ever since.

The Yugures in antient times had that Name conferred upon them, even by the mouth of Oguz himself: he called them Yugures, that is to say, United. He has always passed amongst them for a great Prophet; and the Turks of the last Ages, that is to say, the Ottomans, who by the title of Ogustians which they bear value themselves as being his Descendants, say that when he was but a year old he spoke, and gave himself the Name of Oguz; but at eighteen God

---

3 The Letter which Mangoucaan the Son of Genghizcan, Emperor of the Moguls, writ to St. Lewis King of France in 1254, was in the Mogul Language, but in the Yugurian Characters, and the Lines were writ from the top to the bottom, and multiplied from the left to the right. Rubruquis.
Genghizcan the Great.

illuminated his Understanding; and whereas all Mankind were at that time Idolaters, he brought them out of their Errors, and made them worship only the one true God; which so much displeased his Relations, that they resolved to ruin him: but with the Assistance of some other Persons whom he had converted, he resisted them so vigorously, that his Father was killed by an Arrow in the Fight, and his Uncles put to flight. This is what Fadlallah reports of Oguz 4.

4 The Son of Caracan; Caracan the Son of Mogolcan; Mogolcan the Son of Alinge-Can, the fourth King of the Oriental Turks, of the Portery of Turk the Son of Japhet, the Son of Noah. From this Mogolcan the Moguls are descended; as are the Tartars from Tatarcan the Son of Alinge.

CHAP. VIII.

Genghizcan's first War against the Northern Parts of China, called Cathay; and the Success of it. His Return into his own Country. His Expedition to the Desert of Capchac, otherwise called Decht.

ALTHO Genghizcan, when he was on his return to Caracorom, had resolved not to renew the War for some time, yet he neglected not to raise Recruits, and strengthen his Army, to let his Enemies see that he was always
in a Condition to be fear'd; and that whilst he was in peace he applied himself, according to the Resolutions taken in the last Diet, to regulate the Affairs of his Kingdoms, and secure the best he was able those Countries he had conquer'd. All things look'd now as if he design'd to live in Repose, and taste the Sweets of that peaceful Estate which by such vast Fatigues he had obtain'd: but the Love of Arms, the darling Passion of his Soul, permitted him not to rest; and he thought of nothing else but how to find a Pretext to fall out with the Chinese, against whom in particular he had form'd some designs.

The present State of Affairs, all being now in peace, affording him no means to quarrel, he fought amongst the Transactions of past Ages for something fit to urge against them; and calling to mind the Injuries the Kings of China had heretofore done to his Ancestors, nay to his own Father and People, he conferred with his Nevians and other Princes of his Court, continually entertaining them with Discourses of the Injuries and Wrongs their Fathers had suffer'd by the Chinese. This was the Cause, said he, that our Country was look'd upon with so much Scorn, and despis'd by all the Nations of Asia. In fine, he excited them to revenge, by urging, that they had no other way to vindicate their Honour, and make

---

5 He call'd to mind his Father's Wrongs, and sighing, recit'd the Injustice of the King of China. Abulcair, p. 9.
6 He recounted to his Courtiers the Injuries the King of China had done their Ancestors. Mirconde.
7 He said, that since the great God had given him the Victory over all his Enemies, he had reason to expect that he would do the same for him over the Chinese.
themselves famous to Posterity. Neither did he forget to remind them of the Promise God had made to him, to assist and render him victorious over all his Enemies.

The Mogul Princes and Lords fail'd not to applaud their Emperor's Design; whether it was out of Complaisance, or that they found it agreeable to Reason and Justice, is not the question. A Council was call'd to consult on Ways and Means how to bring this great Enterprize to pass; and it was resolv'd that first of all an Ambassador should be sent to Altounian King of China to demand Satisfaction for all the Damages and Injuries done to the Moguls by his Predecessors, with Orders that in case he refused to comply, War should be declar'd against him. For this purpose they chose Jafer, an old Courtier, a Man perfectly skill'd in State-Affairs, and sent him away in the Winter-Season. Jafer being arrived at Cambalac, which was the old City of Pequin, one of the Capital Cities of Cathay,^8 and the antient Asson of the Seres, had Audience of the King, whom he accidentally found in this City, for he was not used to reside there but only in the Summer. This Ambassador made a long Harangue, which he began with expatiating on his Master's

^8 The Country of Cathay which is here spoke of, is China it self, and not Grand Tartary, as it was long thought to be by us Europeans. The Eastern Geographers have made it known by the Limits they have given it in their Maps, and their Historians have declared it in express Words. Besides, it is now plainly discover'd that the Name of Cathay particularly belong'd to the seven Northern Provinces of this great Kingdom; and that the Southern Parts, which contain'd the nine other Provinces, were called Mangi: But these Southern Parts were not conquer'd by Genghiscan, but by the Moguls his Successors, An. Dom. 1268. Heg. 667.
Greatness, his Elevation to the Empire of the Moguls and Tartars, and the choice God had made of him to govern the World: he afterwards demanded reparation of the King for all the Damages and Injuries which his Predecessors had done the Moguls; telling him that if he refused to comply with these Demands, he had Orders to declare War against him, and to assure him that Genghizcan, at the Head of a most powerful Army, would come and drive him out of his Kingdom, and establish one of his own Children on his Throne.

Jaffer's Discourse appear'd very surprizing to the King of China, who was much astonish'd that the Mogul Emperor should form such a Design, and venture to attack and begin a War against a Nation whom he had reason to fear, considering the great Damages and Losses he himself confess'd his Nation had sustain'd by them. The King complain'd to the Ambassador, saying, Your Master treats me as if he thought me a Turk or a Mogul; and with this Answer he sent him back: Go tell Genghizcan that altho' I cannot hinder him from making war with me, yet I will meet him with an Army that shall make him repent his Rashness. Jaffer returned with all diligence to Caracorum, and gave his Master an account of his Negotiation, and the Observations he had made, pursuant to the Orders he had given him.

Genghizcan having receiv'd this Answer from the King of China, continued to make Preparations for the War. So soon as the Season permitted him to take the Field, he divided his Army into two Bodies; the most considerable he took along with him, and the other he gave the Command of to three of his Sons, Jougy, Zagatay, and Olay. These three Princes march'd to-
Genghizcan the Great.

towards Courage, or Corea; they did no Injury to the Cailmackes* thro whose Country they past, because this Nation, which was situate on the Confines of Caracatay, had already submitted to Genghizcan: but when they were come to the Borders of Courage, where there were but a few Troops left, the rest being all gone to join the King of China, they made terrible Devastations both in the Towns and Villages wherever they came, as also in the open Country, carrying away all the Horses and Cattel they found.

The Emperor of the Moguls did no less Milchief on his side with his Army: for after having strengthen'd it with some Troops which waited to join him near the Til, a River of Caracatay, he enter'd China at the great Gate in the Wall, which Alacous, of whom we have before made mention, caus'd to be open'd. This Alacous was Can of the Kingdom of Ancout, to whose Care heretofore the Emperors of China had committed this Gate and Wall. This Prince was at this time displeased with Altouncean, and held secret intelligence with Gen-

* A Kingdom situated on the Confines of China on the North, having the Sea on the East. This Country contain'd about seven hundred thousand Souls, and had been almost always govern'd by a King of their own Nation, who sometimes were likewise Monarchs even of China itself: but the King of China in his turn was also revenged, having made himself Master of Courage. Fadlallah, p. 241.

* The Cailmackes are a Nation to the Eastward, not to be confounded with that of the Cailmackes who live in the West of Asia towards the Volga.

* The Chinese built this Wall in past Ages, betwixt the Mountains, to hinder the Turks and Moguls from making Inroads into this great Kingdom. This Wall was call'd Avencomb in the Mogul Tongue, and Sedd Yadgoudge or Madgouche in the Arabian, which signifies Gog and Magog's Bank.
ghizcan, whom he was very useful to on this Occasion. He did not only open a way for the Moguls into China, but gave them some of his own Officers to be their Guides.

All the Cities which made no resistance, but opened their Gates, and furnished Provisions to Genghizcan, were by that generous Prince spared: but those that oppos'd him were all plunder'd, as likewise several considerable Castles, out of which he took all the Riches that were there deposited for security: And all this he did whilst he waited for the coming up of the Army which the young Princes commanded.

On the other side, the King of China join'd to his Army the Troops of Courage, and putting himself at the Head of these united Forces, march'd directly towards the Moguls; but when he was come within a few Days Journey of them, his Soldiers being much fatigued, stay'd to rest, and for their Security he caused all the Carts to be placed round the Army; then they made a large deep Ditch before them. His Troops stay'd not so long in this Camp as they could have wish'd; for being soon inform'd that Genghizcan was coming to attack them, they decamp'd to go and meet him.

So soon as the two Armies were in sight of one another, they ranged themselves in order of Battel, and fell to Blows. The Combat was bloody. The King of China lost thirty thousand Men, and the Mogul Emperor had a great many Officers kill'd, and more Soldiers than the Enemy. The latter retired with all the Spoils he had gotten by the way of the Province of Pequin, in which he had some Intelligence. The Chinese did not venture to follow him, because they were no less fatigued than the Moguls, and had great need of Repose. For this reason,
Genghizcan the Great.

reflecting only on the great loss of Soldiers they had just felt, and fearing lest Genghizcan should besiege their Capital City, they resolved to make Peace with him, in order to get him out of China, which the War had already reduced to a miserable Condition.

Altounuan therefore sent an Ambassador to Genghizcan to propose a Peace, with his Daughter Cubcou Catune in Marriage, promising to lend this Prince's to him under the Conduct of one of the greatest Lords in his Court, and Fadallah, with all the Splendor and Attendance suiting p. 249. an Emperor's Daughter and Wife. The Mogul Emperor, pleas'd with the condescending Offers of an Enemy whom he found he could not vanquish, accepted the Proposals he made him, and married the Princess of China so soon as she arrived in his Camp; and, accompanied with the Princes his Sons, retired with her to Caracorom.

But he remain'd not inactive any longer than was absolutely necessary to recruit his Army, for two Reasons: first, because he would not suffer the Soldiers to be idle; and next, because he had form'd a great Design in his own mind. He meditated how to conquer all the Western Countries of Tartary for his eldest Son, and flatter'd himself that he should succeed in this Undertaking, because of the Animosities that were amongst the Tartar Cans. He first disposed a Part of his Troops in the Countries he had subdued, to keep them quiet, and prevent their revolting; and then with the rest of his Army he set out on the way to the vast Country, called the Plains of Capschac. His eldest Son, as being the Person the most interested, fail'd not to accompany him in this Expedition.
The Country of Capischac is of a vast Extent, and is accounted the most considerable part of Tartary. It reaches from East to West from Turquestan even to the River Volga, and all along the Borders of the antient Bulgaria, and the antient Russia, and from the Volga to the Country of Crim, where the People dwell who are called the Little or Crim Tartars. Its greatest Length from North to South is from the Caspian Sea to the great sandy Desarts, or rather to the Frozen or North Sea.

This Country has but few Towns. Its Soil, if we except the great Desarts on the North Side, is excellent, abounding in all sorts of Grain, Pasturage and Cattel. A better Air cannot be found, nor better Water. The Women are handfomer there than in any other part of Tartary. The Men are courageous, and Lovers of War. They are divided into Tribes, many of which are at present composed of Moguls and Turks. The Towns being few, and the open Countries very large, every Tribe transport themselves frequently from one Place to another, seeking every Winter in the Southern Parts for Subsistence for themselves and Beasts, and in Summer visiting the Northern Parts of their Country.

Altho' every Tribe has its particular Prince or Can, which governs it; yet this Part of Tartary, ever since the Moguls subdued it, has always had a King, or Grand Can, to

---

2 This Country is also call'd Decht Capischac, and Decht Bess-che. Decht signifies large level barren Countries; and Bess is the Name of a Grandson of Genghiscan, who succeeded his Brother Batucan in the Kingdom of Capischac, to which he gave his Name, and was the first of the Mogul Cans of Capischac, who made profession of the Mahometan Faith. whom
whom the others did Homage. This Country
in past Ages was overstocked with People,
and from thence came the Huns, the Getes or
Goths, the Gepides, the Vandals, the Alains, the
Swedes, and other Nations who have render'd
themselves but too famous in the World by the
Disorders they committed.

Seray is the Capital City of Capschac, situate
on the Banks of the River Sencla, which
discharges itself into the Volga. Batu Can laid
the Foundation of this City, and Bereke Can his
Brother finished it. The three finest Rivers in
the Country of Capschac, are the Volga, the Jaye,
and the Irtish.

But let us return to Genghizcan. By the Vic-
tory he had formerly gain'd over Ounghe Can he
thought he had a right over several Tribes of
Caspchac who lived in subjection to this van-
quish'd King; and for this reason he marched his
Troops to that side of the Country. No sooner
did he appear on their Frontiers, but these Tribes
submitted to him; as did others who inhabi-
ted the Country of Getes, situate in Capschac,
on the Borders of Mogolistan: which all toget-
er in a short time compos'd a vast Army.

These Nations, and some others, of whom His-
torians have made no mention, having join'd
him, Genghizcan gave the Command of one half
of them to Prince Jangi Can; call'd also Touchy,
his eldest Son, leaving him in this Country with
many Mogul Officers to govern them, and re-
turn'd to Mogolistan with the other half, which
made an Army great enough for any Under-
taking.

Jangi Can, after the Departure of the Em-
peror his Father, made some new Conquests,
which gave much cause of Jealousy to several
Nations of the Western Tartars. These Peo-
ple
The History of

people combined against him; but he defeated them in several Skirmishes, and particularly the Comans, the ancient Bulgarians, Vandalcs, and Hungarians, who heretofore inhabited the Country of the Huns, Vandalcs, and other Nations, which for along time have not been distinguishing'd but by the common Name of Tartars.

He render'd himself Master of the Countries of Dach Capschac, Sagine, Bulgaria, Russia, Alasian, Tanka, and other Kingdoms and Provinces. Bin Abdallah.

CHAP. IX.

Genghizcan's second War with China, and the taking of Pequin the Capital City of the Northern China, or Cathay.

Genghizcan, as we have before observ'd, had given his Protection to the Princes Arfan and Idicout; the first was Can of the Car-lucks, the last, Can of the Tugures. After having concluded with him what number of Soldiers they should raise for his Service, these Princes retired into their own Countries, with several Mogul Officers who were order'd to convoy them home.

These two Princes omitted nothing to procure good Troops, and each of them rais'd a Toman, with which they return'd to Genghizcan's

That is to say, ten thousand Men.
Genghis Can the Great.

Genghis Can's Court, after he was come back from Capuchan. Their Arrival much rejoiced the Emperor, because they had brought him very fine Troops, which he wanted to strengthen the Army he was resolv'd to send to China, on Advice given him of some Threats uttered by Altounan against the Moguls: Besides, he had now a favourable Opportunity; for the King of China being displeased with the People of some Provinces of Caracatay, had given order to raze their Countries; and these People being resolved to oppose him, had sent Deputies to Caracorom to beg the Emperor's Protection. There arrived at the same time an Envoy from a particular Can of their Nation, to inform him that by means of some Rebels he had got possession of a considerable Fortress which open'd to him an Entrance into China. This Can, after having put a good Garison into this Place, came himself to Genghis Can, to engage him to go against Altounan.

The Mogul could not withstand his Importunities. He receiv'd him favourably, treated and consulted with him about proper Measures to render this War successful. Then he sent back this Prince laden with rich Presents, and promised either to follow him himself, or to send his chief General immediately after him, at the Head of a numerous Army, of which the Troops of the Carbucks and Yugares should make a part. Accordingly the Army was soon in a condition to march; but Genghis Can could not command it in Person, by reason

The King of China having ill-treated the People of Caracatay, Genghis Can revenged them, and carried the War even to Peguin, which was called Can-Baler, that is to say, the Royal City. Abulcair.
of an Indisposition that seized him. Samouca Behadeur, the eldest of his Generals, commanded in Chief; and all the Cans, Princes, Nevians, and Emirs who could get leave of the Emperor to go, went on this Expedition, each striving to manifest how zealous he was for the Service of his Prince.

Mirconde. These Troops were no sooner arrived at the Place appointed, but the Fortress that had been surprized was put into the Hands of a Mogul Officer; and so soon as they had rested, and were in a Condition to enter upon Action, they seiz’d, almost without any Opposition, upon the Provinces of Caracatay that were the last of those belonging to Altouncan. Then they quickly enter’d with ease into China by means of the Intelligence the Rebel Can held in that Country.

At the same time, Moucli Gouyane, one of the most able Mogul Generals, marched to the Country of Courge with a Body of Troops, to hinder the Forces in that Kingdom from going to aid the King of China; and this Officer seiz’d several Places according to the Orders given him. Yet this hinder’d not Altouncan from advancing his Army against that commanded by Samouca Behadeur. This King, as well as all his Soldiers, were transported that they were to fight an Army not commanded by Genghiscan, flattering themselves that they should gain an easy Victory. They briskly attack’d Samouca, and made his advanced Guard give way; but the Moguls, resolving to conquer or die, fought with so much Valour and Resolution, that the Chinese were in the end obliged to betake themselves to flight, and to shut themselves up in their Cities that they
they might be skreen'd from the Fury of their Enemies.

Altho the King of China had put abundance of Troops into Pequin, the Moguls, instigated by the Chinese Rebels that accompanied them, resolv'd to lay siege to this City: They even tried to take it by Assault; but the Prince of China, to whom the King his Father had entrusted the Management of the first War, defended it so vigorously, that all the Besiegers' Efforts prov'd in vain. It is impossible to tell how many brave Actions were perform'd on both sides during this Siege; by reason that the Fate of China seeming to depend on the good or ill Fortune of this its Capital City, the bravest Chinese and greatest Lords of the Empire were enter'd into it, to share the Honour of a long and brave Defence.

The great number of Troops that were in Mirconde, this City took away from the Besiegers all hopes of taking it by open Force, therefore they resolved to starve it out; and the Famine became so great in Pequin, that the Men chose rather to eat one another than to yield. Notwithstanding the Chinese's Bravery avail'd them nothing, for the City was taken by a Stratagem; which being reported to the King of China, he conceived such Displeasure that he poison'd himself.

---

6 They besieged Pequin. Abulcair.
7 The King of China gave the Command of Pequin to his own Son, and caus'd an infinite number of Troops and Officers to enter with him into that City.
8 Altouman flying with his People, wept, and conceived so great Displeasure that he poison'd himself. Abulcair, p. 10.
The History of

Mironde and Abulcair report the taking of Pequin thus, in general Terms; but Carpin gives a more ample Relation of it: He says,

That the Besiegers suffer'd so horrible a Famine, that they were oblig'd to decimate the Men, and out of every ten kill one to feed the other nine: That the Besieged defended themselves so valiantly with their Arrows and Engines, that when the Stones came to fail the Engineers, they melted down their Gold and Silver, which was in great Abundance in that Place, and used it to shoot against their Enemies; but at last, the Moguls having receiv'd a Supply of Provisions, and finding they were no nearer taking the City than they were the first Day, undermined it, and made a way under ground which reached to the middle of the City, and in the night assail'd the Chinese, who surpriz'd with a Stratagem so new and strange, loft all Courage, and were oblig'd to surrender the City to the Moguls. He adds, that the King of China, believing this Place impregnable, had shut himself in it, and was kill'd with his Son; that the Moguls and Tatars who were enter'd into the City open'd the Gates to those without, and gave no Quarter to any they met with; and, that they plunder'd it of all that was precious or valuable, and afterwards divided the Booty according to Genghizcan's Law.

* Et cum diu pugnasset, & cum bello vincere minime posset, unam magnam viam sub terrâ ab exercitu usque ad medium civitatem, &c. Carpin.

Let
Genghizcan the Great.

Let this be true or false, 'tis certain that after the taking of Pequin a Courier was dispatched to carry the News to the Mogul Emperor, who immediately nominated Officers to manage the Finances and Revenues properly belonging to Altounian in this Northern Part of China, which he annexed to his own Revenue. The taking of Pequin which happen'd An. Dom. 1213. Heg. 610. render'd Genghizcan Master of the greatest part of the Northern China, or Cathay. He gave the Government of this City to General Mouchy Gouvane, with Orders to finish the Conquest of China, which this Officer accomplisht in two Years: he even also conquer'd the Kingdom of Corea or Corea.

1 Pequin taken An. 1210. and according to the Orientals Account 1213.

2 An. Dom. 1213. Heg. 610. eight Months before that famous Victory which Philip Augustus King of France gain'd over the Emperor at Bourges in Flanders, who brought near two hundred thousand Men into the Field; and over the King of England and the Count of Flanders. Father Martin, a Jesuit.
Genghizcan's War against the rest of his Enemies in Caracatay, Mogolistan, and Turquestan. The Perfidy of Prince Caschlug to his Father-in-Law Gurcan. The Moguls War against Caschlug. The Death of that Prince. Genghizcan's Alliance with the King of Carizme.

It should seem that the Conquest of this half of China, would oblige the Mogul Emperor to fix the Seat of his Empire at Pequin, in order to keep with less Trouble the Possession of China, by his Presence there, and to facilitate the Conquest of the other half, if an opportunity presented; but he had Designs in view more considerable than that of rendering himself Master of so great an Empire. He therefore was contented with sending Governours thither, and continued to keep his Court at Caracorom, both to have an eye upon Tartary, and to watch the Motions of the Cans the Successors of Toubia-Bey, who still had Forces in Merkit, which was a part of Mogolistan; and on Caschlug the Son of Tayancan, who he well knew did hate him. He was sensible these two Princes were able to give him trouble, particularly Caschlug, if he could prevail with Gurcan to declare War against him.

Altho all these fortunate Successes had rendered Genghizcan's Power very formidable, yet there
there ceased not to reign in some of the Moguls Minds an Inclination to revolt; and Timur Bey's Hatred to the Emperor seem'd to survive in his whole Family and Nation, tho' he was dead. His three Sons, and Brother Coudoucan, preferred that Aversion to Genghizcan even to death; nay, they were so audacious as to raise Troops, and excite some other Tribes, amongst whom were those of Tomat on the Frontiers of China, to revolt: In fine, they kindled in several Places so great a Flame, that Genghizcan was obliged to send Troops to quench it.

Suida Behadeur march'd against the Rebel Cans of Merkit; and after having plunder'd the greatest part of the Province where they were encamp'd, he forced them to a Battel, in which he defeated them; and by the Death of these Cans, which happen'd within the same Year 1214, procur'd to the Tribe of Merkit that Calm and Repose which the rest of the Mogul Nations enjoy'd. As for the People of the Tribe of Tomat, Baba Neviani who was sent against them, treated them in so cruel a manner, that the Emperor himself was moved with Pity when he receiv'd the Account of it, and order'd that care should be taken to breed up and well educate the Children of those whose Parents had had the ill Fortune to perish in the terrible Slaughter this General had made, and to marry their Wives and Daughters.

Prince Caschlac was much more to be Misdread than the Cans of Merkit and Tomat, had he but known how to manage the King of Turquestan his Father-in-Law, who was so powerful a Prince, that he often assum'd the Title of Padishah. Turquestan was then one of the
The History of

the largest parts of Tartary; it had on the South Tebet and India, where the new Moguls are, on the North Caracatay, on the East China and some Parts of Caracatay, on the West Transoxiana and Capschac: and during some time all Tartary was called the Country of the Turks.

Those who knew Caschlu, did not approve the choice Gurcan had made of him for his Daughter. He was unworthy to be a Prince. He was neither good-natur’d nor grateful, and had neither Honour nor Generosity. And notwithstanding the Obligations he had to his Father-in-Law, the many Favours he had received of him, and the Love he ought to have born him; yet he ceas’d not daily to do him ill Offices, and excite Commotions amongst his Subjects, nay, to forward the Revolt of the Governours of his Provinces, and even enter into a League himself with Mehemed King of Carizme, Gurcan’s greatest Enemy.

In fine, Caschlu retired from his Father-in-Law’s Court, and with some malecontented seditious Persons whom he had seduc’d, form’d a considerable Body of Men, which in a short time was much augmented by the scatter’d Remains of the Army of the King of the Naiman his Father: and whilst Mehemed, as they had agreed, invaded Gurcan’s Kingdom on the West, he went to the East, and ravaged and plunder’d his Father-in-law’s Provinces; who detesting his Ingratitude, resolv’d to be revenged on him. This King, tho he was far advanced in Years, put himself at the head of a considerable Ar-

\[Caschlu was an Idolater. Abulcair, p. 9.\]
my, and had still Vigour and Courage enough to conquer his Son-in-Law in the Country of Conakege.

4 We must not omit to mention one Particularity which Bin-Aias relates of this Country: He says that in the Country of Conakege in Turquestan there is a sort of Wood which they make use of to build Houses, and is of such a Nature that Fire cannot burn it; and a sort of Stone so bright, or luminous, that the Inhabitants are lighted by it in the Night.

In the mean time the King of Curizme made Conquests in Turquestan on the Borders of Transoxiana. He seized on almost all the Countries that belonged to Gurcan. This Prince marched against him, but had not the same Success that he had had against Caschbluc, for he narrowly escaped being made a Prisoner. The Weakness attending his Age gave opportunity to several great Lords of his Kingdom to form seditious Plots against him. His Kingdoms fell all into great Disorders, of which he could not possibly expect to live to see an end. His Son-in-Law returned to give him a second Battel, in which Caschbluc had the better. He took Gurcan, and in appearance treated him with respect; but he render'd himself Master of all his Kingdom and Treasure, and repaid with such base Ingratitude all the Obligations and Favours he had receiv'd from him, that Gurcan within two Years after died with Grief.

Caschbluc presently after this Battel besieged the City of Caschgar, where the King used to

* Bin-Aias in his Book entitled Naschac Alazhar.
The History of

reside; which City refused to acknowledge any other Sovereign but Gurcan's Son as the rightful Heir of the Kingdom. The Inhabitants defended it vigorously against Caschlgar, and the Siege lasted long; but the City was at last taken, and he made the Inhabitants feel the utmost Rigour of his Tyranny.

The City of Caschlgar was situate in the forty fourth Degree of Latitude, and in ninety five Degrees and twenty Minutes of Longitude. It was then the Capital of the Country which Gurcan posses'd in Turquestan. It had produc'd several Men famous for Learning. It was sometime call'd Ourdaykent, that is to say, the Royal City. And when Marcepolo was in that Country, at Caschlgar, this City, says he, was subject to the Grand Can Guaran. It was from this City that the Swedish took their Original.

The principal Religion which the Inhabitants profes'd was Mahometanism. The Historians had also Churches. And the same Marco Polo acquaints us that this was a City of great Trade, because it was in the Road which all the Merchants pass'd through who went to China. At this time the Country of Caschlgar is govern'd by a King of their own

---

5 Caschlgar the Capital of Turquestan, &c. Abulfeda, P. 235.
6 The Caractachyans so called their King Gurcan, that is to say, the Can of Cans. Mirconde.
7 M. Sparvenfeld, who was Master of the Ceremonies to Ambassadors at the King of Sweden's Court, being at Paris in 1691, assures the Author that he had read in the ancient Annals of Sweden, that the Swedes took their Original from the City of Caschlgar in Turquestan.
Genghizcan the Great.

in particular, and the Name of their Capit-
tal City is Hyrcan, which is in the same Place
as Cashgar was, to which one of its Princes
would give his Name. It is reckon'd there are
a hundred Mosques in this City. The Country
produces all things necessary for Life, as also
the finest aromatic Plants; and in one of the
Mountains there is a Mine of Silver which
brings a great Revenue to the Prince.

Cotan, a City in Yugura, situate on the Con-
finies of Turquestan towards the East, in forty
two Degrees of Latitude, had the same Fate as
Cashgar. And Cashblue in the end subdued the
Country and City of Almaleg, situate in the
same Degree as Cashgar, which belonged to a
Turkish Prince, who was at that time absent.
He surprized the Governor a hunting, and
kill'd him; after which he got possession of so
many other Countries, that it seem'd by his
Successes as if Fortune had prepared for him
a great and lasting Felicity.

The Mogul Emperor, mighty as he was, was
alarm'd at this Prince's Success; whom he ha-
ted as much as he was hated of him; but be-
ing very prudent, he would do nothing precipi-
tately. He therefore sent a Lord of his
Court to Sultan Mehemed King of Carizme, to
endeavour to draw him from Cashblue's Inter-
est, whom he called the Naiman Prince. The
Envoy succeed'd in his Negotiation without
much trouble. Mehemed, who was also grown
uneasy at Cashblue's good Fortune, and had
already some Cause to be displease'd with this
Prince, promised to give him no Assistance;
hoping indeed that Genghizcan and Cashblue
might ruin one another, or at least be both
weaken'd, and that he in the end should be a

1 3

Gainer
Gainer by the Disorders which a War between them would occasion.

In the mean time Caschluç did a great deal of Mischief in the Countries into which he carried his Arms, and ill-treated all those who were not Idolaters. 'Tis said, that in the Kingdom of Cotan, which he became Master of, he caused to be nailed to the Door of a Collège, an Imam, or Mahometan Priest, named Aladin, who reprehended him for blasphemous Expressions which he utter'd against Mahometanism.

The Report of the Cruelties of this Prince was spread abroad every where; and Genghizcan being secured of the King of Carizme, made an advantageous use of the Complaints that were reported of Caschluç. He gave a kind Reception to all the Envoys who came from the People on every side, to entreat him to deliver them from this Tyrant. He readily promised to succour them; and for this effect he gave Orders to Hubbe Nevian, one of his Generals, to go and make war with him as a Persecutor of Mankind.

Hubbe departed in the Spring of the Year 1216. with that Army which the Emperor had on the Frontiers of Caracatac, and enter'd into Turquestan by the side of Caschgar. Caschluç had Advice of his coming, and immediately put himself at the Head of his Troops, and marched against him, resolving to use all his Efforts to beat the Moguls, this once at least; but he was so unfortunate as to lose the Battel. Af-

7 Genghizcan sent Hubbe with several Tomans of Troops, or Battalions of ten thousand Men each. Mironda.
Genghizcan the Great.

ter which, he retir'd to Cashgar; and finding that he could not prevail with the King of Carizme to act for him, he grew mad with Despair. All the great Expectations he had conceiv'd vanish'd, and he concluded he had no other course to take but to fly. Many of his Followers accompanied him in his Flight, but they were vigorously pursu'd by the Moguls, who put to the Sword all the Naimans they could overtake.

Hubbe Nevian seized upon Cashgar, and caused it to be published Liberty of Conscience, which the Usurper had forbidden. Prince Cash-

luc at first escaped the Enemies Pursuit; but at last he was taken as he was a hunting amongst the Mountains of Beshkischan, where he pass'd for an Inhabitant of that Country. The Moguls knew him again, and cut off his Head, and brought it to Prince Hubbe, who sent it to the Grand Can his Master, who by this Prince's Death was put into possession of all the Countries he had usurped, and the Riches he had pillaged. This War ended in the Year 1217, when Genghizcan was about sixty-four Years of Age.

This Emperor having nothing more to fear either from the East, West, or Northern Parts of Asia, endeavou'rd to cultivate a sincere Friendship with the King of Carizme. He therefore towards the latter end of this Year 1217, sent three Ambassadors to him with Presents, and a Letter which import'd that the Possession of so many Countries

---

* God has given me the Possession of all the East, even to the Frontiers of Carizme; of China, Mogolistan, Turquistan, and all the Mogul Tribes. Mirconde. which
which he had reduced to his Obedience, left him nothing more to wish for than the Friendship of his Neighbours, and therefore he had sent to ask his; to the end that their People might trade together with Safety, and find in a perfect Union with one another, that Repose and Plenty which are the chief Blessings that can be wished for in all Kingdoms. The Mogul Ambassadors had Orders to assure Mehemed of the good Intention and Friendship of their Master, but in such a manner as should let him know that Genghis can thought himself more puissant than he was. They neglected not to follow their Instructions in every Particular. And the King of Carizme, in the Audience he gave them, after having let them magnify their Master's Greatness, fail'd not, in his turn, to boast of his own Power, Armies, and the Largeness of his Empire; in short, he deliver'd himself with a great deal of Haughtiness.

Nevertheless, there being amongst the Ambassadors one who was a Native of Carizme, Mehemed had him introduced into his Palace in the night, without the knowledge of his Colleagues. He first made him a Present of a rich Diamond; after which he conjur'd him to tell him the Truth, and then demanded to know the State of Genghis can's Affairs, and whether it was true that he had made such great Conquests in China as was reported. The Ambassador satisfy'd all his Questions, and added that he counsel'd him to ally himself with his Master; but perceiving the King took it amiss that he should pretend to advise him, he thought of nothing more than how to flatter and win him; which he did
Genghizcan the Great.

so well, that the Result of this secret Con-
versation was the setting a Treaty of Peace
on foot.

The three Ambassadors agreed upon the
Articles with the Commissioners of the King
of Carizme. Then they ask'd their Audience
of leave, and return'd with Presents both for
their Master and themselves. Several Mer-
chants of Carizme, loaden with the finest Mer-
chandizes of that Country, accompanied them,
and went to traffick in Genghizcan's Dominions;
who no longer fearing any Enemy, now be-
gan to reign in Peace.

The End of the First Book.
THE HISTORY OF GENGHIZCAN the Great, THE First EMPEROR of the Antient Moguls and Tartars.

The Second Book.
The Argument.

Abridgment of the History of the Sultans Seljukides, the Knowledge of which is necessary for the understanding that of the Kings of Carizme. A ruinous War betwixt the Moguls and the Carizmians, occasion'd by the Carizmians assassinating the Mogul Ambassadors and Merchants. Genghizcan invades and enters the Kingdom of Carizme, and makes himself Master of it. Genghizcan's Wives and Children. An Account of several Battels and considerableSieges.
BOOK II.

CHAP. I.


ENGHIZCAN was sixty three years old when he made this Peace with Sultan Mebemed King of Carizme: and this Treaty was very exactly observed on both sides at the beginning; and more than a year past before either of these Princes gave the least occasion of Complaint to each other. Their mutual Civilities seem’d, on the contrary, to secure their People that their Friendship would be of long Continuance. But two great neighbouring Princes can-
cannot live long without some Jealousy, because their different Interests and Designs will continually occasion them to distrust each other: The King of Carizme could not see Genghiscan's Greatness, and the universal Veneration the People had for him all over Asia, without regret; especially when he came to reflect that there was not a Prince amongst all the Moguls and Tartars, whether in the North, the West, or East Parts, who did not pay him Homage; that he gave Laws to the proudest Princes, even to those who had most oppos'd his Elevation; that the Cans of Turquestan, and, in a word, all the Potentates round about, fought the Friendship of this Mogul Prince, and flighted his: All these Considerations destroy'd the Union that was between them.

After two Years of Peace, the King of Carizme in returning from his Expedition against Gazna, of which he render'd himself Master in 1217. used the Moguls with less Respect than before; and his Subjects committed such Acts of Hostility as obliged Genghiscan to complain of them to their King. Yet these Outrages, which were the Subject of these Complaints, were not the Cause of breaking the Peace: It was the Murder of the Mogul Merchants, as the Sequel will shew.

The King of Carizme being one of the principal Persons in this History, and Monarch of a vast Empire, it is methinks proper to say something of his Family, and to tell by what means he arrived at that excessive pitch of Greatness in which Genghiscan found him. We shall not here make mention of the Slaves who were the first Authors of it, but begin with their Masters, who were the Seljukide Princes, whose Family this King had destroy'd, and who
who had been the most illustrious and most powerful Sultans of Asia. The Seljukides took their Name and Original from Seljouc the Son of Dacae. This Seljouc was by Birth a Turk, who after having been a long time a General in the Army of Wabarcan King of Transoxiana, was kill'd at the Age of a hundred and seven Years in a Battle, in which he was engaged fighting against that Prince, who would have put him to Death, because he fear'd him. He had four Children, Michael or Michael, Moses firmed Bigou, Jonas, and Israel. Michael was the most considerable of them all, and he had also four Sons, to wit, Toqroblay, Jacar, Jasfer, and Avljan.

From this Family sprang three Branches, the eldest and powerfulllest of which was that of Toqroblay. This Prince made himself Master of the great Empire of the Califs, and establisht himself in Bagdad, A.D. 1055. Heg. 447. where he and his Descendants continued to reign to the fourteenth Generation. The second Branch was that of Jasfer-Bey, who was Sovereign in Quirman, and other Countries towards the Persian Sea and India, but it did not continue so long as the other Branch. The Sultans of Iconia made the third Branch. Cutilumisch, the Son of Israel, and Nephew of Toqroblay, establisht himself in Asia Minor, about Ann. Dom. 1050. Heg. 442. And those Sultans, tho' far less puissant than those of the elder Branch,

---

* This Seljouc was in repute at the time that Hugh Capet mounted the French Throne. Bin Abdallatifs.
* These Princes contended with the French in the Holy Wars.
* Some European Historians call him Cutilu Moses.
yet lasted much longer; for they did not end till after the Establishment of the Ottoman Turks, who began to reign in the Year 1299; whereas the Seljukides of the eldest Branch came to an end in the Year 1193.

Michael the Father of Togrulbey had acquired a mighty Reputation by the great Actions he had done against the Princes of Gazna; but his Son rendered himself yet more famous by the Conquest he gain'd over those of Corassane. Even the Califf himself ask'd his Assistance against a Rebel named Bazzaciri, who had taken Bagdad, and was enter'd into the Capital City of the Mahometan Empire with the Egyptian Banners. Togrul reveng'd the Califf, freed him from the Bonds in which Bazzaciri had bound him, and put the Traitor to death. He once again deliver'd his Prince from Boide the Latt, and re-establish'd him with Honour on his Throne the second time.

These fortunate Turnes served as Steps to Togrul to ascend to the greatest Dignities. The Califf, to reward his Services, married his Sister, and gave her as a Dowry a hundred thousand Crowns of Gold. He clothed him in royal Robes, and created him Sultan, An. Dom. 1056. Heg. 448. Publick Prayers were made for him, as for the Califf, in the Mosques. In fine, Togrul dispos'd of all Employments in the Army, and all the Posts in the Empire, as also of the Revenues. He govern'd the State, tho' he bore but the Title of Sultan under the Califf,

---

* Whilist Philip the Fair reigned in France.
* He was called Caime.
* A Prince of the Family of Bowya, who had been the first Usurpers of the Power of Califfs under the Name of Sultans.
Genghizcan the Great.

and in quality of Captain of his Court, and Grand Chamberlain of his Palace.

In the Year 1603. he married the Califf's Daughter; but dying the same Year without Issue, his Nephew Alubarstan, the Son of Jacer, succeeded him, and sustained with no less Honour than he had done, the Dignity of Sultan, which the Califf invested him withal. Alubarstan took the Grecian Emperor Diogenes An. Dom. Prisoner, and imposed on him for his Ransom a yearly Tribute of a Million of Crowns of Gold. After Alubarstan, Gelattddin his Son, whose Sirname was Malecsba, reign'd. This was he who conquer'd Syria by his Lieutenants, and in his own Person several other Countries in the East. He was the greatest of all the Seljukides. His Empire reach'd from the farthest Parts of the Country of the Turks even to Jerusalem, and to the Confines of Arabia Felix.

These first Seljukide Princes, being naturally inclined to do great Actions, such as spoke their Goodness and Generosity, made Sovereign Princes of several of their Subjects; which gave occasion to a Poet to say that many Sultans were risen from the Dust of their Feet. Mehemed the King of Carizme, who occasion'd us to make mention of these Princes, was of the number of these Sultans last spoke of. Touschtekin, the first of his Family, was made Governor of Carizme by the Sultan Malecsba. This Touschtekin was lame, he had a great deal of Wit, and was, before his Advancement to

---

1 Bin Abdallatif calls this Grecian Emperor Armanous.
2 'Tis to him that the celebrated Epocha is attributed, which is call'd Gelaleene, of which the Persians make use in their Astronomical Computations.
The History of

this Post, no more than a Slave to Pelcaykin Governor of this Country. His Master dying, Malescha gave him his Place, and he did not repay his Benefactor with Ingratitude. But his Son Coutbeddin had not the same Sense of the Obligations his Father had to Malescha: the Quality of a Governor only could not content his Ambition.

The Sultan Malescha died, and his four Sons could not agree after his Death. The Empire was torn by Civil Wars, and these Princes by their Division disjoined this great Empire, of which their Predecessors had made an entire vast Monarchy. It well may be said that the Empire of the Seljukide Sultans ended in Gelleddin Malescha, altho nine Princes of the same Race reigned after him, without reckoning Bercaruc his immediate Successor. All these Disorders were the Cause that Jerusalem was taken, when under the Fatimite Caliphs of Egypt, and gave opportunity for the other good Successes of the Holy War which the French with some other European Nations undertook in the Reign of Philip I. of France.

Besides these private Differences which continually arose betwixt these Seljukide Princes, there was daily some Dispute or other to decide with the Kings of Carizme, who seem'd to think no more of what they owed them. Coutbeddin, proud of the great Riches his Father had amassed'd for him, and making advantage of the Misunderstandings among the Sultans, took with impunity the Name of King. He died An.


* 'Twas this Sultan Bercaruc who sent under the Command of Querbonca that powerful Army which he had rais'd in Persia, and which was defeated by the French after the taking of Antioch, which it came to succour.

Dom.
Genghizcan the Great.

Dom. 1127. Heg. 522. His Successors not only kept possession of their new Dominion of Carizme, but even conquer’d that of Transoxiana which belong’d to their Benefactors, as also the greatest part of the Provinces of the Persian Empire. Taquisch the sixth King of Carizme, and the Father of Sultan Mehemed, push’d things yet farther; for it was he that by the Death of Togrul Arslan, the last Sultan of the Seljukides, extinguished this powerful Family. He caused the Body of this Prince to be fasten’d to a Gibbet in the City of Rey, and sent his Head to the Califf of Bagdad, as if he gloried in outdoing all his Ancestors in Ingratitude.

But Heaven was not slow to punish these Crimes; for the Moguls came soon after to revenge the Seljukides: and it was in the Reign of Sultan Courbeddin Mehemed, the Son of this Murderer of Togrul Arslan, that due Punishment fell upon them.

Mehemed generally used to have a Drum beat at the Gate of his Palace five times a day at the Hours of Prayer, according to the Custom of other Mahometan Princes; but after he had conquer’d Corassana and some other Countries, he became so proud, that to be distinguish’d from all others, and in contempt even of his own Religion, he caused this Custom to be changed, or rather this Ceremony, and would persuade his Officers that he proposed to imitate A-

---

1 Vid. Nisawi in the Life of Geladaddin, taken from Mirconde, Jowini, and other Authors.
2 Four Verses were composed upon the Death of Togrul Arslan, the Sense of which was this; Yesterday thy Head wanted but little of touching the Sky, to day thy Cartafe is separated from thy Head many Leagues.
lexander, he order'd the Captain of his Guards to let the Drum be beat no more only Morning and Evening: But he augmented the number of the Drums even to twenty seven; and besides their being beat with Drum-sticks which were all over set with precious Stones, they were beat by twenty seven Cans or Sovereign Princes.

This Custom of Alexander is not mention'd in any History but in that of Sultan Gelaeddin.

CHAP. II.

An Envoy sent to Genghizcan from the Califf of Bagdad, to ruin the Interest of Sultan Mehemed King of Caizme.

GOOD Fortune often makes Men insolent, and excessive Greatness sometimes becomes prejudicial to those who possess it. Mehemed having cut off the Heads of above a hundred Princes to make himself Master of their Treasures and Dominions, saw himself, by their Deaths, render'd the most powerful Monarch of all the Mahometan Parts of Asia; and was now so great, that he imagin'd nothing was able to oppose him. His Predecessors had given Laws to the Califfs, altho the Califfs who were the Successors of Mahomet, had a right to be always their Sovereigns; yet Force often changing the Fortune of the Great, the Sultans in contempt of their Laws and Religion, overruled the Califfs, who finding themselves not in a condition to oppose the Violence done them, smother'd
Genghizcan the Great.

The Sultan Mehemed would oblige the Califf Nasser to grant him the Privileges which the other Sultans had enjoy’d under the preceding Califfs; and principally that of establishing his Seat in Bagdad, to govern, and be named in the publick Prayers as he was. But Nasser believing himself strong enough, boldly refus’d to comply with his Demands, causing Cady Magededdin, the Sultan’s Ambassador, to be told in the Divan that his Master’s Demands were unreasonable and unjust: and the Cady citing as a Precedent, that the like Privileges were granted on the first Establishment of the Seljukides; it was answer’d, that these Princes when they were first called to those Honours, and particularly Togrulbey, had done such great Services to the State, that the Califfs thought themselves obliged to grant them, as a Reward and Acknowledgement, the Honour of living, nay even commanding in Bagdad as absolute; but that the present Califf Nasser having no War, and by consequence no need of any Person’s Assistance, the Sultan did ill to desire to reign in a City which was the Patrimony of the Emperors of the Mussulmen, and where almost all the Califfs his Predecessors lay buried. The Cady was sent back with this Answer; and the Califf sent with him an Ambassador, who had orders to represent to the Sultan all the Reasons Nasser had to refuse him the Privileges he had.

* The Sultans walked on foot before the Califf, and held the Bridle of his Mule. Almakin’s History of the Saracens.
had demanded. Mehemed receiv’d the Califf’s Ambassador very honourably, but he abated nothing of his Demands. He even gave this Prince in the Sequel all manner of occasions to complain: Nay, sometime before Genghis-can’s Rupture with him, he call’d a general Assembly of the Muftys, Cadys, Moula’s, Imans, Checs, and other Lawyers, to depose him. He caus’d another Califf to be name’d, and brought into the Field a great Army, with design to go and take Naﬀer by force in his Capital. This Army indeed was almost quite destroy’d by the Frost, Snow, and extraordinary Rains of a severe Winter, and he was obliged to return to his own Kingdom: However, the Califf fearing to be in the end reduc’d to Extremities by this Prince, sought all means possible to deliver himself out of his Hands; and could find but one, of which he would not have made use, had he prefer’d the Mahometans Interest before his own. He knew Genghis-can’s Victories, and was not ignorant how potent he was; he therefore resolv’d to make an Alliance with this Prince, and to excite him to declare War with Mehemed, whilst he himself attack’d him on the South side.

The Califf call’d his Council, which was composed of the great Officers of the Empire, in whom he placed most Confidence. He represented to them the Insolence with which Mehemed treated him, and what he had to fear from the Powerfulness of this Sultan, who was able to subdue all the Empire, if the course of his ambitious Designs were not put a stop to: In fine, he declared to them that as Genghis-can was, in a condition to revenge him on this Tyrant, and deliver him from this potent Enemy; he did design to treat with this Mogul Prince, and
Genghizcan the Great.

and to employ on this Negotiation a Mahometan named Mahmoud Ilhage, who was Visiter to this Grand Can. The Califf's Council were divided upon this Proposal: some approved of Nasser's Sentiments; but others, and the most prudent, were no ways of opinion to have recourse to Genghizcan. If we are resolved, said they, to make war with the Sultan, who is a Mussulman, we ought to seek for means that will not hurt our Religion; and not to bring in, contrary to our Laws, the Enemies of God into the Country of the Faithful, who may occasion the Ruin of the Mussulmen and the Empire.

The Califf's Zeal for his Religion could not make him change his Sentiments: He answer'd, that a Mahometan Tyrant was worse than one who was an Infidel; that it only became Cowards to abandon the Care of their Preservation to avoid the Pains of watching; that since they saw themselves threatened with apparent Ruin, they must attempt any thing to prevent it; that, besides, Genghizcan did not hate the Mahometan Religion, since he suffer'd Mahometans to live in his Dominions, nay, that even one of his chief Ministers was a Mussulman; and moreover, that they had nothing to fear as to the Moguls in that respect, since it must be many Years before they could enter into those Countries which were really the Mahometan. In fine, Nasser's Opinion prevail'd, and it was resolved that a wife Man should be sent into Mogolistan. And as it was necessa-

ry that this Design should be kept secret, and the Envoy being obliged to pass cross the Sultan's Dominions, they could not give him any Letter or Paper to carry, or any thing that might discover him if surprized; it was therefore
for proposed to write upon his bare Head: and this Expedient was approvd of. They instructed him in his布指nts, caufed his Head to be shaved, and thereon wrote his Creden-
tials in few words, which they drew in Violet Colour, call'd by them Nil's, having formed the Letters with the Point of a Needle, as they are used to do to the Pilgrims at Jerusalem. Then they immediately order'd him to depart, and make all the haste he was able, but above all, not to tarry in any Place on the way, till he was arriv'd at Genghizcan's Court.

The Envoy had the good Fortune to get safe to the Visir Mahmoud Ilvage with thole that accompany'd him; and he affur'd this Minifter of his Master's Esteem and Affection. Mahmoud receiv'd him very well, and inform'd the Grand Can of his Arrival. This Prince would have had him received publickly with the usual Ceremonies; but the Envoy desired to be excused from appearing in publick, because of the Secrecy which the Affair he came about required. A private Audience was then given him, in which he made known to the Grand Can the Subject of his Embaffy; but presenting no Credentials, and Genghizcan seeming doubtful of him, he said, if he would order the Hair which was grown upon his Head since his departure from Bagdad to be cut off, they should fee that he had spoke nothing but what was true. They cut off his Hair, the Writing appear'd, and they saw that the Calif promis'd to make war with the King of Carizme, if Genghizcan would attack him on his

---

That is, Indian Blue.
side in that part of his Dominions that border'd on his.

The Mogul Emperor, to whom the Sultan's Greatness fail'd not to give some Umbrage, did not absolutely reject the Califf's Proposal; but he would give no positive Answer to the Envoy. It is unknown whether it was the Design of better regulating his own Affairs which with-held him, or that the Sweetness of the Rest he now enjoy'd after the Fatigues of his past Wars allur'd him, or that the Shame of breaking so soon the Peace he had so lately made with the Sultan hinder'd him from laying hold of this Opportunity to humble the Pride of Mehemed. He told the Envoy he was feebly touch'd with the ill Treatment the Califf had receiv'd, but that the Treaty he had just concluded with the King of Carizme did not at this time permit him to make war with him; yet notwithstanding, his Master need only have a little patience, for that the Sultan's restless Spirit would not suffer him to let things rest long in the Pforture they now were: and that, in brief, he might assure the Califf, that on the first occasion he should have to fall out with Mehemed, he would not fail to declare war against him.

The Envoy return'd to Bagdad with this Answer.

The Mahometan Historians have very much blamed this Negotiation of the Califf Nasir, because the Consequence of it was unfortunate. And altho it does not appear that this Prince did ever give any Assistance to Genghizcan; yet his having but excited him to make war with Mehemed was sufficient to draw upon him the Reproach of all the Mahometans.
One Persian Author, after having much condemn'd this Step of the Califf, compares him to three devout Pilgrims, of whom a Fable is related which is much talked of in the Countries of the Levant; and in reality the Application is good. One Day, says he, three devout Pilgrims travelling together, perceived in the Fields some rotten Bones; they stopped to consider them, they disputed, and neither of the three could agree to what kind of Animal it was these Bones belong'd. They therefore resolved to pray to God that the Animal might return to Life, and agreed to make their Prayers one after the other. The first had not finish'd his Prayer before a great Wind rose and brought the scatter'd Bones together. Heaven heard the Prayer of the second also, and the Bones were cover'd with Veins, Nerves, and Flesh. And the Prayer of the third compleated the Miracle: Life enter'd into the Machine, which began to stir; and they immediately beheld a Lion strong and terrible, who getting upon his feet, came and devour'd the three devout Pilgrims who had made so many Prayers for him.

A remarkable Fable of three devout Pilgrims, from Mr. Condé.
Genghizcan the Great.

C H A P. III.

Of five great Queens, the Wives of Genghizcan; and of his four principal or darling Sons.

THO Genghizcan declined War for the present, yet he called the Princes of all Nations to his Court. He rewarded all those who had served him in his past Wars, caref'st those who had not, and endeavoured to gain by Kindness and Presents the Love of those turbulent Spirits whom he had reason to fear; in fine, he treated all People, Moguls, Tartars, Turks, and Chinese, in such a manner, that he was no less belov'd of the People he had conquer'd than of his own natural Subjects.

He likewise made several Regulations in his own Family, and particularly in relation to the Princesses his Wives, who were very numerous. One Historian makes mention of near Fadallah, five hundred, besides his Concubines; and he says, that amongst all these Ladies there were five who had a greater Share of his Esteem than all the rest, and who consequently had much more Power over him: Guzisuren, the Daughter of the Can of the Naimans, who was Genghizcan's first Wife; Purta Cogine, Daughter to the Can of Congorat; Oboulgine, the Daughter of...
of Oungban King of the Keraites, some call her by another Name 9; Cubcoucatun, the Daughter of the King of China; and Coulaucautan, the Daughter of Dairason a Mogul Can of the Merkite Nation. This last Lady was an extraordinary Beauty.

He had a prodigious number of Children, but he made a great difference betwixt his Sons. He had but four who had Sovereign Power and Command in his Wars and Dominions. These four Princes had all great Employments; and there is so little mention made of his other Sons, that it seems as if he had had no more than them. Some Authors have given a reason for this Proceeding. They say that the Moguls, particularly the Princes, did not esteem their Children but in proportion to the Nobility of their Mothers; but Genghis’s Conduct does contradict this Opinion, since Purta Cougine, the Mother of these four Princes who were so highly prefer’d before the rest, was but the Daughter of a petty Prince or Can of the Konovati, and Genghis had Children born of Princesses who were the Daughters of Kings, and lived in his Court as private Persons. Not that these Children were absolutely deprived of all Authority, for they were all Princes and Cans like the rest of their Brothers; but their Fortune was limited to petty Governments or Lordships. The greatest part of them were settled in Mogolistan, where the Emperor their Father gave them for their Portions several Provinces in the Eastern Parts; as also to his Brothers, amongst whom Prince Ulsakin was

9 Abulcair is mistaken, when he says that Purta Cougine was the Daughter of Oungban King of the Keraites.
Genghizcan the Great.
distinguished from the rest by the great Em-
ployments he gave him, and above all by being
Governour of the Kingdom of China, which
was entrusted to him by Genghizcan during his
War with the King of Carizme. Jangi Cašar,
his second Brother, had also considerable Pre-
ferments, and was one of the Generals of his
Army.

Touschican, by some called Jangi, was the
eldest of Purta Cungine's Sons, the second was na-
meg Zagataycan, the third Octaycan, and the
fourth Tulican. The Emperor their Father,
after having studied their Tempers and Inclina-
tions, which much pleased him, resolved to
make them his chief Ministers, and to confer
upon them the most important Posts in the Em-
pire. He made Touschican Master-Huntsman
of the Empire. This was the most considerable
Post, because of the Huntings with which the
Moguls were indispensably obliged to exercise
themselves. He chose his second Son to be Chief
Judge, and gave him the Title of the Direc-
tor of the Law.*, and he order'd that all the
Courts of Justice in his Empire should be de-
pendant on his. It was Zagataycan who ordain-
ed the Punishments inflicted on those who did
not observe and keep the Laws, and took care
to preserve them uncorrupted. Prince Octaycan
had the Post of chief Counsellor: He shov'd
so great Prudence and Wisdom, that Genghizcan
judg'd him worthy of that Place, and under-
took nothing of moment without consulting

* Zagatay was the chief Director of the Laws; he had them
all put into Order in writing, was the Depositary of them, and
caus'd those to be punisht who transgresst'd them. Mireonde.
The celebrated Laws amongst the Tartars were called Tafs
Genghizcan.

him.
him. The warlike Affairs were committed to Tulican's Care, the youngest of the four; the Generals depended on him, and receiv'd the Grand Can's Orders from him.

CHAP. IV.

The King of Carizme's Conduct towards the Moguls. The Mogul Merchants go to Carizme.

Genghizcan was employ'd in regulating his Family, when he was inform'd that the Sultan Mehemed began to be weary of the good Understanding and peaceable way of living they had both enjoy'd, and that in contempt of the Treaty of Peace made between them, he committed Acts of Hostility. The King of Carizme not believing the Moguls so valiant as they really were, tho' he was not ignorant of the Conquests they had made, all which he attributed less to their Bravery than the Cowardice of the People they had vanquish'd; he hence concluded that the Mabomezans, being us'd to triumph over their Enemies, would not suffer themselves to be vanquish'd by the Moguls: These Considerations made him determine to break with Genghizcan. For this reason he sometimes sent Parties of his Soldiers into the Countries belonging to the Moguls, without leave from the Officers who commanded there; and sometimes when they pass'd with Permission, they abus'd the People, as if War
Genghizcan the Great.

War had been declar'd between them. Nay, sometimes the Sultan's Soldiers made Inroads into the Mogul Turquestan, and carried away all they could lay hands of. At last he seized of a Province that had belonged to Caschlac, which the Grand Can pretended to have a right to by the Law of Arms; and one day, by Mehermed's Order his Soldiers attack'd the Mogul Troops that guarded the Frontiers of the Country of Ardjesh, and forced them, tho' against their Wills, to fight.

They, in short, did more than enough to irri- tate a Prince, who often said, to inform the World to what a degree he was fenible of In- juries, that the Anger of Kings was like Fire, which had need but of little Wind to make a great Conflagration. Yet all these Injuries were not sufficient to provoke Genghizcan to resolve upon a War: Nay, he would not even make reprisals; but, on the contrary, imagin'd that he could gain the Sultan's Affection by his Civility, and was resolv'd to make the Union between them stronger than ever. It is true, several weighty Reasons inclined him to it; first the Commerce that he had resolved to establish between the two Nations, as well for Gold Stuffis, Silver, and Silk, as also for other things of which he knew his Subjects had need, and the Advantage of which he was not igno- rant of; besides, the Moguls were naturally clownish, and he thought their being frequent- ed by, and often conversing with Strangers, would polish and improve them. We must add to these Considerations, that he had a great desire to know the Disposition and Nature of the People of the Southern Parts of Asia, of which he had as yet but very little knowledge; and that he hoped to learn it of those who came
came thither to trade, or those he sent along with them, at their return to get information. All these Reasons made him resolve to treat anew with the Sultan Mehemed, and to send an Ambassador accompanied with several Mogul Merchants, as also with those of Carizme, who had lived in his Dominions for five or six Years past. He order'd his Wives, the Princes his Sons, and also the great Lords, each of them to send some one of their People with these Merchants, to buy in foreign Countries as they past, whatever they could meet with that was fine or proper for them.

All these things were done according to the Emperor's Defer. Every great Person made a considerable Provision of Balifhs, or Purfes full of Gold and Silver ¹, and gave it the Officer he chose out of his Family to go the Journey. The Balifh of Gold was worth seventy five Dinars of Gold ², and the Dinar is much about the Value of a French Crown of Gold, as it went in those days. As to the Balifh of Silver, it must be valued according to the Difference there is betwixt these two Metals in Weight and Value; and, in fine, a Balifh is what is at present called all over Turkey a Purfe.

All the Officers of the Princes and great Lords set out, accompanied with a hundred and fifty Mogul Merchants, the greatest part of whom were Mahometans; there were also some who were Christians. ³ There went to head them

¹ A Balifh is a Purfe of five hundred Crowns.
² A Dinar is a Ducat of Gold.
³ The four principal Merchants were named Omercoja, Ahemal, Fereddin, and Animeddin.
four of the principal ones, who had more experience than the others, to whom the Emperor particularly recommended the Management of Trading. And the better to provide for the Security of their Journey, the Carajas, or Guards of the Roads, already established in the Empire for the Safety of Passengers, were doubled. All these Troops of Merchants marched under the Protection of an Ambassador, who carried with him Presents, and a Credential Letter, to propose a new Treaty, with Orders to acquaint the Sultan, that the Emperor sent him back the Merchants of Carizme who came to trade in his Kingdoms; that he dismiss them well pleased and well-attended; that he hoped his Subjects would find with him all sorts of Protection, and that they would return to Mogolistan without receiving any ill Treatment, since he had sent them with design to perpetuate that Union and Friendship which now reign'd between them.

The Mogul Merchants past thro' the Mogolistan, Caracata, Turquestan, with the Freedom due to the Ambassador whom they accompanied; and arrived safely in the Kingdom of Carizme, as far as the City of Otrar, which the Arabs call Farab. It was situate on the other side of the River Sibun, at the farthest Extremity to the Westward of Turquestan; and its Territory on the East Side was bounded by the Country of Afschach. *Otrar was a Place of great Trade betwixt the Turks and Mahometans, and there were in it many Men of great Abilities and Skill in Traffick.

---

* Called in the Persian Language Rabdars.
* Situate in 44 Degrees of Latitude.
The History of

The Governor of this City was named Gayercan, or Najal-Can; his Mother was Aunt to Mehemed, and he by consequence was Cousin to the Sultan; for which reason some have given him the Quality of Emir or Prince. He receiv'd the Moguls at first with the Hoschqeldy or Sofageldy, that is to say, with assuring them they should receive all the good Treatment that Strangers could hope for from a People with whom they were at peace. The Mogul Ambassador acquainted him with the Subject of his Embassy, and the Orders he had to make all possible haste to the Sultan's Court, who was at that time in Yrac Agemi, that is to say, the Persian Hircania. Gayercan told him he was going to write to Mehemed, and that as soon as ever he had received this Prince's Orders, he would not fail to conduct him with all his Moguls to the Court. In the mean time all the Merchants who were Natives of Carizme retired to Transoxiana, every one to his own Home and Town whereunto he belonged.

CHAP. V.

The Mogul Merchants are assassinates, and the Peace broken.

Abulfage.

The Mogul Ambassador, deceiv'd by the civil Treatment the Governor gave him, was too open in speaking of the Money which the Merchants had brought with them. Gayercan, who came not behind any Governor in point
point of Covetousness, was transported to find to good an opportunity to enrich himself. He wrote to the Sultan in a subtile manner, telling him there were just arrived in Ottrar People from Genghizcan, who said they were Merchants, and a Man who call'd himself an Ambassador, but that he much suspected them; that they were very inquisitive to inform themselves of the Strength of the Places and Forces in that Country, with an Exactness that appear'd to him to proceed from some farther Design than Curiosity only; in a word, that he believ'd them to be Spies, and that he was of opinion they should not have liberty given them to view the Countries, because it seem'd to him that their Master had only sent them to discover the most safe and easy way for him to invade the Sultan by.

This Letter made a great Impression on Mehemed. He sent Orders to the Governour to watch the Moguls, and to do in this Conjuncture whatsoever his Prudence suggested to him. Gayecon, charm'd with receiving an Answer which so favour'd the Design he studied to bring about, resolve'd to murder the Mogul Merchants immediately, and even the Ambassador himself, whom he invited with all the Merchants to his Palace, pretending that he would inform them of the Sultan's Answer which he had received. He told him, that the King of Carizme had order'd him to treat the Moguls for some days, and then to conduct them to his Court. Thus this Governour drew them all to his Palace, where he had prepar'd a great Entertainment; but having them in his power, he caus'd them to be secretly murder'd one after another, and seiz'd on all their Treasure. They were in number four hundred
dread and fifty Persons. Gayercan persuaded himself that Genghizcan would never come to the knowledge of this cruel Assasination; or that if this Prince should get information of it, and resolve to revenge himself by force of Arms, Mehemed would be pleased, who desired nothing more than to enter into a War with the Grand Can. Notwithstanding all possible Precautions used by the Governour to conceal his Crime, God so order'd it, that he was discover'd; for one of the Moguls found a way to get out of the Palace, by making one of the Officers a considerable Present for saving his Life. He soon reached the Frontiers of Turquestan, and from thence fled to Mogolistan with all diligence.

The Emperor was no sooner inform'd by this Merchant of what had happen'd at Otrar, but he swore to be revenged. He that hour dispatched away three Ambassadors to the King of Carizme, to make complaint of so cruel an Action, and to ask him the reason why he had broken the Treaty of Peace, and what Crime the Moguls had committed; that Gayercan had caused them to be assassinated contrary to the Law of Nations, an inviolable Right establish'd amongst Kings as a means to communicate to each other their Designs, and to maintain a mutual Friendship. He charged them, besides, to represent to the Sultan, that the greatest part of the Merchants and the other Moguls whom he had massacred at Otrar, profess the Mahometan Religion; and what render'd the Murder of them yet more vile and inexcusable, was, that the Carizmean Merchants who had come to traffick in his own Country, had been kindly treated, and receiv'd no Injury: That if this villainous Assassination had been
been committed without his Knowledge and Consent, he ought forthwith to clear himself by delivering up the Author to be punish'd; on the contrary, if he approved this Action of Gayercan, he had Orders to declare War against him.

The Mogul Ambassadors being arrived at Mehemed's Court, without passing near Otrar, demanded Audience, and obtained it. They declared the Subject of their Embassy, and spoke so plainly, that the King of Carizone, instead of disavowing his Kinfman's Crime, cut off their Heads. It was thus the proud Sultan received the Mogul Ambassadors, without reflecting on the Misfortunes that would attend his Cruelty, which all the Mahometans did in the end feel the Effect of.

The Historian Abyfzarage tells us that Genghizcan was so touched with this barbarous Proceeding of Mehemed, that he wept, and could take no Rest till he had got all things in readiness to revenge him. He went, says this Author, to the top of a Hill, where uncovering his Head, he pray'd God to prosper his Undertakings against a faithless Prince whom he was going to punish; and he remain'd in this Place three Nights and Days without taking any Sustenance. In the middle of the third Night a Monk clothed in black appear'd to him in a Dream, and warn'd him to fear nothing, for that he should be successful in all his Undertakings. The Emperor when he awoke was struck with this Dream. He returned to his Palace, and related this Vision to his Wife Oboulgine, Oungbcan's Daughter. This Prince, after having heard him very attentively, affir'd him that this Monk whom he had seen in his Sleep, and described to her, was a Bishop who sometimes used to come and visit
visit her Father, the late King of the Keraites, and was used to give him his Blessing. Abulfazar adds, that Genghizcan inquired of the Christian Yugures who dwelt in his Court, if they had not a Bishop amongst them; they answered, Yes, and sent to the Bishop of Mardenba, who wore a black Mitre: That when he came to him, the Grand Can said, that in truth this Bishop had the same fashion'd Habit that the Monk had on who appear'd to him, but not the same Face: That the Bishop answer'd him, that the Person whom his Majesty had seen was certainly one of the Christian Saints: That from this time the Emperor had always a Love for the Christians, and treated them very honourably: And, that he fail'd not to publish this Vision to the Soldiery, who were more confirm'd by it in the Opinion they had already conceived that this Prince had a Communication with God.

It is not surprizing that Genghizcan should employ the Fiction of a Dream to animate his Soldiers; since many Heroes before him have had recourse to the same Expedient. Alexander the Great, for example, desirous to revenge himself upon the Tyrians, (who had likewise put his Ambassador to death) made his Army believe that Hercules had appear'd to him, and took him by the Hand to introduce him into the City of Tyre. What makes me not credit the Arabian Historian, is, that he gives Genghizcan an effeminate Character, in representing him irresolute, and shedding Tears. All the other Authors represent him in a manner much more becoming a Hero: They say, that he was in a Rage when they brought him the News of the Ambassadors Deaths, and immediately resolved to enter with Fire and Sword into
Genghizcan the Great.

the Sultan's Dominions; that he caused the
Princes his Children, his Nevians, Emirs, and
all the other great Lords of his Court, to come
into his Presence, not to consult with them a-
about what he had to do, but to inform them
of the Persidy and Insolence of the King of
Carizme.

It is related in Abulcair's History, that when
he recounted to them the Story of the Mer-
chants being assassinated at Otrar by the Sultan's
Consent, he set forth their Deaths in such dif-
mal Colours, that he filled all their Hearts with
Grief and Anger; and that he represented the
Murder of the Ambassadors with such Fire, that
it inspired nothing but Vengeance and Fury.
After having spoke of Mehemed's Crimes, he
made mention of the other Acts of Hostility
committed in Turquestan by this Prince's Lieu-
tenants, the Complaints of the Califf Nasser,
the Death of Schec MageedDEbin great Judge of
the Mahometan Empire, who had been most un-
justly condemn'd. He finished his Discourse
with reflecting how faithfully he on his part
had observed the Treaty of Peace with the Sul-
tan: which so sensibly touched his Auditors,
that looking upon the King of Carizme as a
Monster, they all offer'd to risque their Lives
and Fortunes to revenge the Affront done to
their Emperor and Nation. This Refentment of
the Courtiers spread it self soon amongst the
People; and there was not a Soldier who did
not shew his Impatience to go against so de-
testable an Enemy.
CHAP. VI.

Preparations for War against the King of Carizme. The State of Asia at the time of the Moguls Irruption.

GEnghizCan seeing his Subjects thus incensed against his Enemy, like a wise Man improv'd this favourable Opportunity of executing his Designs; and knowing that Delays are always prejudicial in warlike Affairs, he commanded Prince Tuli to lose no time in getting the Army ready. Tuli sent Orders to the Generals in all Parts, to let them know the Emperor's Pleasure. The chief Officers repaired to Court, and were present in the last great Council that was held to consult on the Operations of the War which was going to be undertaken. After this, they return'd to their several Posts, in order to bring their Troops to the Place appointed for the general Rendezvous. An Express was sent to Prince Touachi, who was at that time in Caspia, to warn him to be there at the time prefix'd.

After the Grand Can had set on foot the number of Troops that he thought fit to draw out of his own Empire, he wrote to the foreign Princes, both those who were in Friendship with him, and those who paid him Tribute. He acquainted them with the Reasons he had to complain of the King of Carizme, and the Resolution he had taken to be revenged of him by
by the Sword for the Contempt that Prince had shown of his Friendship. He invited them all to partake of the Laurels he promised himself to gain, and desired them to join him immediately with their Troops.

In the mean time, to prevent the Troubles that might arise in the Empire during his Absence, he everywhere established wise and experienced Governours, and principally in China and Mogolistan. He also ordain'd that Levies should be made, both to send to him during his Expedition, as also to keep his conquer'd Subjects in awe who might be inclined to rebel; and, in fine, he drew out of China, Cara-catay, and Mogolistan, all those great Men whom he thought able to give him any disturbance, either by their Credit with the People, or by their active Spirits: and thus under pretence of doing them Honour, or giving them Employments, he clear'd his Provinces of all the seditious Ringleaders of the People. He also made some new Laws, which he thought necessary for the regulating his Soldiery: He forbid, under pain of Death, the Moguls to take themselves to flight without fighting, what Danger soever there might be in resisting. As all the Divisions and Commands in his Army run upon the number Ten, he established a Law, importing, that if of ten Commanders whose Troops were joined together in one Body, one of the Officers or Troops should offer to break their Ranks and fly, without the whole Body's joining in it, they should be kill'd upon the spot without delay. He also made it Death for any out of ten, who seeing their Companions engaged in fight, did not go to assist them; or who being present at the taking of one of their Comrades Prisoner, did not endeavour to free him.
him. He appointed the proper Arms which each
Soldier should carry; the chief of which was
the Sabre, the Bow and Quiver full of Arrows,
and the Battle-Axe, with some Ropes: The Of-
cicers were to have Helmets and Breast-plates
either of Leather or Iron, or an entire Armour
or Coat of Mail; and it was not forbidden
the private Soldiers to wear Armour if they
were able to buy it. Those who were rich
were obliged to arm their Horses in such a
manner, that their Enemies Arrows could not
wound them. It was also ordain’d that the
Soldiers, whether in Sieges or other martial
Enterprizes, should do nothing but what was
pursumant to the Tenour of the Laws; and that
if any were found to act otherwise, they should
be punish’d with the utmost Severity.

To these Regulations the Emperor added one
more: He commanded that if he died in this
War which he was now going to undertake,
the Books in which the Laws were written
should be brought and read in the Presence of
his Children in the midst of the Assembly, when
they elected a Grand Can, to the end that the
Election might be made according to the Laws,
and that the new Can might regulate his Con-
duct by them in all that concern’d him.

When all these Preparations for War were
completed, Genghizcan came with the Princes
his Sons, and the rest of his Court, to the
Place where he had assigned his Generals to
meet; and there he found his Army assembled,
the finest Sight he had ever seen. And a His-
torian, to describe their Strength and Number,
makes the Spies whom the King of Curizme
had sent to view them, speak thus: They are,
say they to the Sultan, all compleat Men, vi-
gorous, and look like Wrestlers; they breathe
nothing
nothing but War and Blood, and shou'd so great
an Impatience to fight, that the Generals can
scare moderate it: yet tho' they appear thus
fiery, they keep themselves within the bounds
of a strict Obedience to Command, and are
tirely devoted to their Prince; they are
contented with any sort of Food, and are not
curious in the choice of Beasts to eat, like
Mussulmen, so that they are subsisted without
much trouble; and they not only eat Swines-
Fleth, but feed upon Wolves, Bears, and Dogs,
when they have no other Meat, making no dif-
tinction betwixt what was lawful to eat, and
what was forbidden; and the Necessity of sup-
porting Life takes from them all that Dislike
which the Mahometans have for many sorts of
Animals: As to their number, (they concluded)
Genghiscan's Troops seem'd like the Grass-hop-
pers, impossible to be number'd.

In reality, this Prince making a review of Abulcair,
his Army, found it to consist of seven hundred p. 11.
thousand Men. This is not surprizing, when
we consider the great Extent of the Countries
Genghiscan had subdued, and reflect, that be-
sides his own Troops, he had all his Friends
and Tributaries, and even those of the Sultan's
Enemies, which were joined with the Empe-
or's, and therefore his Army might be as nu-
merous as is reported. And it is not an unex-
ampled thing in Asia for a Prince to have such
a mighty Army: That of Darius was com-
pos'd of seven hundred and fifty thousand
Men, as is credibly reported, when he made
war against Alexander. But let that be as it
will, the Grand Can marched with his Army,
and advanced towards Sultan Mehemed, Ann.
Dom. 1218. And since it is from the Date of
this Expedition that the great Irruption of the
Mo-
The History of

Moguls and Tartars into the Southern Parts of Asia is reckon'd to commence, it is fit to observe the State this Part of the World was in at that time.

The Indians were govern'd by many Kings, the most powerful of whom was the King of the Patans. The Southern China, which was called Mangi, had its particular Monarch; and the Northern, that is to say, Cathay, was under the Moguls, as were also both the Tartarys, the East and North, with a great part of the West, and of Turquestan. The Sultan Mehemed possess'd also several Parts of Turquestan and all Transoxiana; besides which, he was Master of the best part of the Empire of Persia, call'd by the Persians Iran; and all the Coraffane, all the Frontiers of India, the Country of the Medes, which was called Azerbijana, and the Persian Hircania otherwise call'd Irac Agemi, were dependent upon him. The antient Persia, call'd Fars, of which Schiraz was the Capital, and several other Provinces, lived under his Government. In a word, the Sovereigns of the antient Empires of Persia, and the Medes and Parthians, were almost all become subject to him, and paid him Tribute.

Georgia and the Countries adjacent had their own particular Princes who were independent. As for the great Armenia, its King paid Tribute to the King of Carizme. The Califf Nasser reign'd in Bagdad over Chaldea, otherwise called Irac Araby, over a part of Mesopotamia, the three Arabia's, and some other Countries of Persia. The Atabéque Princes of Mousel, improperly call'd Niniveh, the Descendents of the great Noureddin Prince of Syria, possess'd almost all the rest of Mesopotamia; but the Civil Wars, caused by the Minority of Nassereddin.
Genghizcan the Great.

din and by Ambition, held these Princes in Arms one against another. At this time the Successors of Saladin were also very powerful, one part of Syria had submitted to them, and Egypt acknowledged them for Sovereigns.

The Sultans of Iconia, of the third Branch of the Seljuvides, govern'd in Asia Minor, or Anatolia, which the Orientals call Biladerroom, that is to say, the Country of the new Romans: 2 Azzeddin Keicaus reign'd there. The Scepter of the Empire of Constantinople, which as yet bore sway in some Parts of Asia, was at this time in the Hands of the French, who had made themselves Master of it, An. Dom. 1293.

Heg. 601.

The Christians Affairs in Palestine were at this time in a very ill posture; they had left the Kingdom and City of Jerusalem, which, with many others, were taken from them by Saladin, An. Dom. 1187. Heg. 583. and there remain'd in their hands but some few Places, as the City of Acre or Ptolemais, which Philip Augustus King of France, aided by Richard King of England, had conquer'd, according to the account of William of Tyre, in 1191, or 1192, as also the City of Tyrus, Caesarea, and Tripoli in Syria. This was pretty near the State of Affairs in Asia at the time of the Moguls Irruption in 1218, and 1219. whilst Lewis the Son of Philip Augustus, according to Calvisius, was employ'd against the Albigenses.

---

* Almalekel Kamel, Saladin's Nephew, began then to reign.

The History of

C H A P. VII.

Genghizcan’s Arrival in the Dominions of the Sultan of Carizme. The Battel of Caracou.

Historians do not precisely mention the Places by which the Moguls entered into the King of Carizme’s Dominions. They do not so much as mention in what Month of the Year he left Mogolistan. They only assure us, that he marched by Caracatay and Turquestan in the Year of the Hare, which was A.D. 1218, Heg. 615, and that his Troops enter’d into the Province of Farab, of which the City of Otrar was the Capital, near the River of Alschashe, otherwise called the Sibou or Jaxartes, situate in the forty fourth Degree of Latitude. Genghizcan was then sixty five Years of Age.

In the mean while, the Sultan of Carizme, who had by his Spies learn’d the Moguls Preparations for War, was not idle: He had caused several considerable Levies to be made, and had neglected nothing that could procure him a powerful Army, notwithstanding the Contempt he had before shewn for these his Enemies. And Ferabur, a Town in the Territory of Bocara, situate in thirty eight Degrees and forty Minutes of Latitude, in the Confinces of the Dominions of the antient Carizme, being one of the most easy Passages to enter by from
from Corassane into Transoxiana, the Sultan made choice of it to be the Place of the general Ren- dezvous. The Troops of Corassane, of Balc or the Bactrians, of Persia, the Borders of India, and other Parts of Iran, who obey'd the Sultan of Carizme, repair'd thither. These he join'd with those of Touran, who were under the Command of Gelaleddin the Son of Mehemed: and then the Sultan went and view'd his Army, taking upon himself the Command of the Troops of Iran; and when all the Army was come together, they were found to be four hundred thousand fighting Men.

Tho this Army was very great, yet it was far inferior in number to that of the Moguls. Some Carizmean Generals, on the Spies report, took the Liberty to represent to the Sultan the Inequality of the Armies; but this Prince was too proud to hearken to their Remonstrances: 'Do you fear the Moguls, said he; Abulcair, and do you not well know, that if they have more Men than we, yet to ballance that we have more Courage than they? The Moguls are but Moguls, that is to say, Enemies whom we have no reason to fear. If they have gain'd some Advantages, and vanquish'd some Nations, they were only Pagans who were unskil'd in the Art of War; but now they are going to deal with Mahometans who are well versed in Arms, who have conquer'd Persia and all the rest of Iran, and whom no Nation or People has as yet been able to conquer; Men who have triumph'd over the most warlike Nations in all Asia:

*Abulcair makes mention but of three hundred thousand Soldiers.

*There-
Therefore resolve to execute my Orders; and bravely second me, and be assur'd that these rash Men shall soon know to their own cost, the Difference between you and those cowardly People they have conquer'd. Let my Troops march in four Bodies, to the end they may the better subsist, and take the Road to the Country of Alschashe, whither I will soon come to put my self at the head of them.'

The King of Carizme's Generals obey'd, and the Army was conducted thither in so good Order, that nothing was wanting. This Prince kept his Word, he past the River of Jaxartes; with his Troops, and led them to Otrar, not doubting but that the Mogul Emperor had a design upon that City, both because of the bloody Scene that had been acted there, and by reason it would open him a free Passage into the very Heart of the Kingdom of Carizme. In short, he found the Moguls in a Place called Caracou. The two Armies immediately prepared to fight, and in a little time the Squadrons and Battalions on both sides appear'd ranged in Order of Battel. Then the great Trumpet Kerrena, which was fifteen Foot long, was founded; the Brass Timbrels call'd Cuss, the Drums, Fifes, and other warlike Instruments, play'd, sounding the Charge. The Carizmeans, who were all Mahometans, implor'd the Assiilance of their false Prophet; and the Moguls trusting to their good Fortune, and the Conduct of their Emperor, promised themselves a compleat Victory.

*Jaxartes was called Sibon by the Orientals.*
Genghizcan the Great.

Jougi Cassar, Genghizcan's second Brother, commanded the Mangalay. He advanced towards the first Ranks of the Enemies, who immediately detached some Troops to charge him, but this Prince defeated them. Then Gelaled-din the Sultan's Son began the general Fight, and charged Prince Toufschi, who was at the head of the first Body of Moguls; their Troops joined, and after a very long and sharp Dispute, Gelaled-din got the better. Then the Carizmeans thought themselves secure of the Victory, and nothing was heard in their Army but Shouts of Joy. But Genghizcan, not much surprized at their Success, sent other Troops under the Command of Tulinan, to support Toufschi, whilst he at the Head of the main Body of his Army with his Son Zagatay fell upon the Sultan, who very ill-treated his Left Wing. This Shock was terrible. The Carizmeans, animated by the Example of their King, who fought with extraordinary Bravery, maintain'd the Advantage they had gotten as long as they were able; yet notwithstanding the Resolution with which the Sultan fought, he saw himself at last forced to quit the Field of Battel, and began to give back, when the Prince his Son, after having beat the other Troops sent against him, made haste to rejoin him, and renew'd the Fight. The Mabometans took fresh Courage, and return'd to the Charge with more Fury than before. Gelaled-din did on this occasion most surprizing things, and the very com-

---

"Mangalay" is sometimes taken for the Van-Guard, sometimes for the forlorn Hope, and sometimes for the Scouts.
mon Soldiers’ and Officers made appear their extraordinary Valour.

On the other hand, the Moguls did no ways fail of their usual Bravery, and never behav’d themselves more valiantly than on this Occasion; and having now to do with Men as courageous as themselves, there was a dreadful Slaughter on both sides, and the Victory remain’d doubtful a long time: but at last, the Mogul Emperor, who had still a great Body of Reserve under the Conduc of his Son Ostäy, bid him march and charge the Enemy in the Flank. Ostäy executed his Orders with much Courage; and these fresh Troops made a terrible Havock. In the mean time, the Cariz.me’s suttain’d this last Attack with great Firmness. They fought till it was Night; then each Party retired to their Camps, and gather’d up their wounded as well as they could. After this, they fortify’d themselves on both sides all they could, to avoid being surpriz’d, and with design to renew the Fight the Day following. But when the King of Carizme came to examine the State of his Troops, and found they were diminisht by more than a hundred and sixty thousand Men kill’d and wounded, he thought no more of renewing the Fight. And what the Spies reported quite took from him all Inclination to it; for they all said, that the Mogul Army, tho’ so ill-treated, were still much superior to his in number: He therefore thought only how to put himself into such a condition as might secure him from being soon attack’d. He entrench’d himself so, that Genghizean did not think fit to venture it, nor was so rash as to undertake to force his Camp.
Genghizcan the Great.

During this short Suspension of Arms, the Sultan not daring to risque a second Battel, the loss of which would have entirely been the Ruin of his Kingdom, resolvd to distribute his Army into the most considerable Places of Strength, and to provide for the Safety of the rest the best he could. He then sent Garisons into his best Cities, and kept with him only a flying Camp, to be ready to march where there was the most urgent Occasion. He gave all the rest of his Troops to Prince Gelaleddin, who did not approve of this his Design; and, contrary to his Commands, retired to Carrasana, where he encreased his Army with all the Troops he could get together. And in truth, in thus dividing his Forces, the King of Carizme yielded the Victory to his Enemy, who seeing himself Master of the Field, sent his two Sons the Princes Ostay and Zagatay, to besiege Orrar with two hundred thousand Men. Prince Toufchi went farther off, towards the West, between the Jaxartes and Capshbac, to observe what past there, and wait his Father's Orders. Elae Nevan was his Lieutenant General, and a hundred thousand Men were under his Command. Besides this, many Mogul Cap-

---

1 This Battel was fought in the Beginning of the Year 1219, Heg. 616. on the Borders of the Country of the Getae. One Historian says that it was in the Kingdom of Carizme; but that does not contradict the other, because that in that time all the Countries from beyond the River Jaxartes to the Oxus, whatever particular Names they had, were looked upon as a Part of the Kingdom of Carizme, because they belonged to the Sultan Mehemed.

2 Abulfarage, in his History of the Dynasties, mentions the Siege of Orrar in the Year 1213, but he is mistaken, for it was in 1219, according to the Account given by the best Authors.
tains went with their Troops into Turquestan, and into other Countries towards the East, and did much mischief there.

Yet there still remain’d with Genghis can more than two hundred thousand Men, which he used for his own Expeditions. It was with these Troops, accompanied with Prince Tuli, he marched to Bocara and Samarcande, not only to hinder the Succours that might get together and be sent to the Places which were besieged, but to besiege those two Cities, and reduce them to his Obedience.

CHAP. VIII.
The Siege of Otrar.

Soon as the Princes Octay and Zagatay had received their Orders from the Grand Can their Father to besiege Otrar, they marched their Troops and sat down before that Place, having first got Provisions, and all other things necessary for a Siege which they with reason judged would last long. Some of the Inhabitants of that City being taken and brought before them, inform’d them, that, besides the Strength of the Walls, a great number of Troops garrison’d it; that ten thousand Horse, commanded by Caricatus Captain of
the Guards to the Sultan, were a few Days before got into it; and, that the Governour had before his coming caused fifty thousand fighting Men to come into that City: They added, that there was in Orar so great a Plenty of all sorts of Ammunition and Provisions, that the Besieged could not want any thing for a long time; and that Gayercan had turn’d out all the uselefs Mouths.

Oray and Zagatay sent word to the Grand Abulcair, Can what Condition the Place was in that they were going to besiege, which obliged the Emperor to go in Person and view the Place. Being come there, he set up his Pavilion before the Walls, took a view of the Outworks, and having well examined them every where, gave these Princes his Advice, or rather his Commands, what to do; and then he went for Transoxiana, where he had great Designs to execute. After his Departure the Princes first fixt the Quarters for the Army round about the City; and then fortifying themselves, order’d out some Troops to guard their Convoys of Provisions. In a word, they used all means imaginable to render themselves soon Musters of the Place.

Gayercan on his side took all the Measures possible to defend himself. He employ’d the Inhabitants and Soldiers in fortifying their Walls still more than they were before, raised new Towers to incommode the Besiegers, and regulated the Quantity of Victuals that he would permit them to consume every day.

---

*Abulfarage says, five thousand Men; but this is a Fault in the Printing, for he meant fifty thousand, according to the Report of other Authors.*
The History of

The Moguls began the Siege with bringing up their Battering Rams, and other Engines, particularly those which could defend and screen the Men who were employ'd to fill up the Town-Ditch. Gaycaru used all his Efforts to hinder them. He gave Orders that frequent Sallies should be made upon them, and shot an infinite number of Arrows from the Top of the Walls; and the Besieged made so good use of their burning Darts, that they often burnt the Moguls Engines, who were not able for a long time to fill up the Ditch: yet at last they accomplished it, and the Mahometans were obliged to place all their Hopes in the Strength of their Walls, and the Valour of those who defended them.

Abulcair, p. 15.

When the Ground was level'd, and the Outworks were no longer a Hindrance to the Moguls, the Princes caused a great number of Engines and Battering Rams to be play'd against the City, to beat down the Walls; but the Besieged made frequent Sallies, and most times with good Success, often burning the Besiegers Engines, or rending them useless by slinging against them Stones and other things from the top of the Towers: so that the Mogul Princes seeing many Months were past, without having made any considerable Progress, and that they had already lost a great many Men, resolved to do nothing more without the Advice of their most experienced Captains; to the end, that if by any Misfortune the Siege did not succeed according to the Emperor's Expectation, they might not bear the blame alone. They therefore call'd a Council of War, to deliberate what was to be done in order to reduce the Place; and of all the different ways that were propos'd Mironde: fed, that of reducing it by Famine was the most
most approv'd, and had the Majority of Voices: for almost all the Officers judged that this was the surest Way, and the most likely to succeed. Yet the two Princes, tho' they were of the same opinion, dared not to attempt it without having first acquainted the Emperor. They sent away Couriers to him immediately, to inform him of their Design. Genghizcan return'd them no other Answer, but only that they must fight. So soon as Oskay and Zagatay had learn'd Abulcair, and made known to the Officers the Grand Can's Pleasure, they put all things in a readiness blindly to obey his Orders, and with more Ardour than they had shown, even when they first began the Siege; so that it seem'd that this Prince's Orders had given them new Vigour, and illuminated their Understandings. The Besieged in a short time saw the State of their Affairs quite changed. In less than a Month all their Towers and Batteries were thrown down, their Engines broke, Breaches made in their Walls; and they were reduced to retire and defend themselves behind their inward Works, which were in truth no less strong than their first.

Yet this Change of Affairs did not despirit Mirconde. their Governor. He was a Man of Wit and Courage, and inspired the Besieged with so great an Aversion for the Enemies, as being Idolaters, that the Inhabitants and Garison resolved to suffer the last Extremities rather than to yield: So that the Moguls, to please Genghizcan, for four Months used their utmost Efforts to take the Place, but could not. Gayer-Fadlallah.

can, who expected nothing but Death if the Town fell into their hands, every day invented new ways to prolong the Siege; yet he had by this time lost the best Part of his Troops,

M 4
and there was no likelihood that it could hold out much longer. Caricaas was so sensible of it, that he several times press'd him to capitulate, to save their own Lives, and those of the other Mahometans who yet remain'd in the City: but Gayercan was not ignorant that whatever Treaty he could make, the Enemies would not observe it in what related to himself, and so refused to yield, resolving to hold it out to his last Breath. Caricaas, whom no Reasons obliged to abandon himself to Despair, would not consent to quit his Hopes of saving his Life; and therefore secretly represented to the Officers who were under his Command, that the Governour being desperate, sought nothing more than to perish himself, and to sacrifice all the Garrison and People along with him; that it was best for them to find some way to get out of the City, whose Ruin was inevitable; and that it was Madness to strive to defend it any longer; that they would do a commendable Action in preserving their Troops, to go and succour their Prince and Country in some other Place, instead of losing them with Gayercan, who was guided only by his Despair; that they need not fear any Person would accuse them of Cowardise, since the Courage with which they had defended the Place till now, was sufficient to set them above the like Re-proaches.

All the Friends of Caricaas approved his Proposition; and the time was fix'd upon when they should go out of the City; and it was agreed they should all repair to that Quarter where the Gate of Dervazey Souffy was, which was in the power of the Officers of Caricaas. Accordingly they went out at this Gate in the Night, having sent Advice of their coming
coming to the Mogul Generals, who had them conducted to their Camp. But they were not received there as they expected: The Princes, after having question’d them concerning the State of the City, refused them the Passport they desired, and told them, that the Moguls had so great an Aversion for People who were false to their Prince, that they punished them wherever they met with them. Caryacas endeavoured to justify himself, but his Reasons were not heard, and he was put to death on the spot, as well as all the other Carizmean Officers. They likewise put some Soldiers to death, and all the rest were made Slaves.

This Defection did not intimidate the Besieged; they fought with the same Bravery as before. Even Gayercan improved this Opportunity to animate his Soldiers, and went about to make a Speech to them on this Subject; but they made him sensible he had no need to excite them to do their Duty, that he should find they were all disposed to die like brave Men, and not as Cowards like their Companions; in fine, they all vow’d to perish in defence of the City, and to shew themselves faithful to their Religion and Prince.

In the mean time, the Moguls having learn’d from Caryacas where the weakest Part of the Town was, made so good advantage of his Information, that after having given a fierce Assault, and made a considerable Breach, they briskly enter’d thro it into the City, and put abundance of the People to the Sword; yet it was some time before they could get to be Masters of the City: for there yet remain’d twenty thousand Men with the Governour, and they had fortify’d every Place they could, having call’d up Intrenchments in all the narrow Streets,
The History of

Streets, which gave the Besiegers more trouble than the Castle itself, tho' it was very well fortify'd: besides this, Gayerean kept the gates of the Troops in a strong Hold, from whence he could send them to the Places where was most need. Nothing was more brisk than the Besiegers Attacks, nor more obstinate than the Resilience of the Besieged. During a whole Month they fought on both sides with an undaunted Bravery. At last the Castle was carry'd; but the narrow Places that were fortify'd held out longer, in which fifty Men were able to sustain an Attack against a much greater number of Assailants, whose being so numerous did not avail them, but exposed them to the Arrows of the Besieged, by which they daily lost a great many People. The City became full of dead Bodies. The Houses were beaten down in such a manner that every one strove to hide himself in the Ruins, to fight under Cover, which still retarded the taking of Otrar.

Abulcair, Genghizcan, to whom the Princes daily sent Couriers to inform him of what past, amazed at their making so long a Defence, forbid his Soldiers killing Gayerean, that he might have the punishing of him himself; for he did not think so wicked a Man merited so honourable a Death as to die in Fight. This Order cost a great many Moguls their Lives; for being commanded to spare the Governour, they were obliged to pick out those they would aim to kill: whereas the Carizmeans having nothing to take care of, kill'd a great many more of the Enemies than they lost of their own People. The Besiegers however still bringing up fresh Troops to relieve those who were tired, at length found an end of their Enemies, and Numbers carried the Day. Gayerean re-
remain'd with two Men only, yet would not think himself conquer'd; but like a dying Person, who exerts all the Strength he has left to struggle with Death, he took fresh Courage: and retiring up to a Terrass-Walk belonging to his Palace, with his two Companions, whom the same Fury animated, from thence rolled down great Stones upon the Moguls who came near, and they tumbling down upon their Comrades who follow'd them, dragg'd them down with them. At last Gayercan, after having kill'd a great number of his Enemies, lost his two Companions, and remain'd alone against the Moguls, who having at length surrounded him, seiz'd him, loaded him with Chains, and carried him to the Princes, who found as much Constancy of Soul in him then, as he had shewn Courage before. They sent him under a strong Guard to the Grand Can, to dispose of him as he pleased. The Emperor after having reproach'd him as the Cause of so many Misfortunes to his Countrymen, caused him to be put to death at Samarcande in the Palace of Ghuc-Serai.

The Siege of Orrar had last five Months. They razed the Castle, but they rebuilt the City Walls; and then they permitted the old Men, Women, and Children, who had been turned out by Gayercan, to return into it with the Country People who had retired from the City. And it was forbid under severe Penal-

---

Cum autem occisi essent duo ipsius Socii, ipse solus mae-nus pugnavit lateribus quos illi puella e parietibus desump-tos porrigebant, quos cum amplius accipe re non pesset circun-dederunt ipsum Mogulenses. Abulfarag, p. 287.

Qua in expugnandâ quinque mensium spatium insulârìbus. I6, p. 286.
ties, to the Garifon which was left there, any ways to disquiet or molest the Inhabitants.

After the Princes Oktay and Zagatay had established such Orders as they thought fit in the Country of Farab, they sent away twenty thousand Men to their Brother Touschican, as the Emperor had commanded. After which they past the Fakartes to enter into Transoxiana, and join'd themselves and Forces to the Imperial Army.

C H A P. IX.

The Sieges of the Cities of Saganac, Uz kend, Alchafche, Fenaket or Toncat, by Touschican.

During the Siege of Otrar, Genghiscan got Information after what manner the King of Carizme had disposed his Forces: and now knew, that besides the sixty thousand Men he had detached for that City, he had sent five thousand to Jonde to strengthen that Garifon; and that the Governour of the Country kept ten or twelve thousand Men at Saganac and Uzkend; that there were as many more at Toncat, which some call Fenaket, twenty thousand at Bocara, a hundred thousand at Samarcande, and in the City of Carizme and other Places proportionable: the Sultan thinking to secure these Cities by sending strong Garifons into them. The Grand Can on this Information, resolved to besiege the Places that were of most Importance, and nearest the River Fakartes, to the end he might.
Genghizcan the Great.

might leave no Place behind him that could give him any trouble when he was gone farther off, and employ'd in some other Siege.

Jaxartes is a River in Tartary, which the Orientals, as we have already taken notice, called Sibon; and besides its particular Name, it likewise took that of the Territories it ran thro, as of the Country of Alschasche, and likewise of the Country of Cogende, where it was call'd the River Cogende, and so changed its Name in other Countries thro which it paff. It had chiefly two Sources, which it sprung from in Mount Imaus, from whence it took its course towards the Weft, winding by the Countries of Ergane, Cogende, Alschasche, Ferab, and some others, to pass into the Caspian Sea, where it discharged itself with great Violence. This is the River which Alexander the Great, according to Quintus Curtius, believed to be the Tanais, and which he crossed over upon a Bridge of Boats to go against the Scythians who molested him, being in fear that he would accommodate them, by means of the City he had caufed to be built on the Banks of this River, by him named Alexandria.

Genghizcan having entrusted the Management of this Expedition to Prince Touschi, he sent him Orders, so soon as he was inform'd of the reducing of Otrar, to besiege the Cities of Saganac, Fandeh, and the others of which they must become Masters before they could undertake the Conquest of Transoxiana. At the same time he sent to him Elac Nevian, a moft experienced Captain, to serve him as Lieutenant General, with Orders to take with him twenty thousand Men of the Troops that had been at the Siege of Otrar, to the end that Touschi might
might have two Armies, and so be in a condi-
tion not to fear any thing.

Toufchi began his Expedition with the Siege
of Sagamac; and the Emperor having forbid
him to use Force in those Places which he could
reduce by fair means, he endeavour'd to gain
the Inhabitants of this City, by persuading
them to avoid the Miseries that a Siege is al-
ways attended with. For this purpose he chose
an Officer, in whom he placed much Confi-
dence, and who had been long known to the
People of that Country, by having had Com-
merce with them in times past. This Officer,
who was called Hagi Hassan, did not forget to
take Measures for his own Security before he
enter'd this City, and the Governour first gave
him his Word that he should be kindly received.
When he was come into the City, he desired
that the principal Inhabitants should meet to-
gether with the Governour, that he might
make known to them the Purport of his Com-
mision, which was granted him; the most
considerable Persons of the City repair'd to
the Place appointed, follow'd by a great many
of the People.

Hassan first represented to them in pompous
Terms the Greatness of his Master Genghizean,
the Conquests he had gain'd, the great Adva-
thages they would reap by being his Friends,
and the Dangers they would expose themselves
to in drawing his Hatred upon them. He like-
wise assured them of the sweet Temper and
Generosity of Prince Toufchy his General, from
whom he came to offer them the Emperor's
Friendship; and assure'd them they should be
treated with all the Gentleness imaginable,
if they would put the City into his Hands.
Genghizcan the Great.

He had not time to say any more. The Proposal of yielding up the City to displeased them all, that they interrupted him. The chief Officers whose Tempers were naturally haughty, and who did not desire to change their Master, rudely stopp’d his Mouth, and caused a great Tumult, the People seconding them; nay, even the Garrison join’d with them, and they said a thousand abusive things to the Prince’s Envoy. The Disorder was so great, that the unfortunate Haffan was torn to pieces by the enraged Populace.

The News of this barbarous Action much afflicted Touschi, who detested the Inhumanity of this People. He excited his Soldiers to revenge it, and made them swear that they would never sheath their Swords till the City was in their power, and they had punished the traitorous Murderers. The Siege was undertaken with incredible Alacrity. They attack’d the City with great Fury, and the Besieged defended it with equal Bravery; and knowing they could not hope for any Mercy, they fought as Men who were desperate. But notwithstanding their Valour and Obstinacy the Place was taken, and the Moguls plunder’d it, and kill’d all the Officers and Soldiers which Garrison’d it; nor did they spare the principal Inhabitants, and more than one half of them paid with their Blood for Hagi Haffan’s Murder. The City had been razed to the ground if they had not had occasion to keep it, in order to prosecute the War; and only the necessity of preserving it for their own use, caused them to pardon the rest of the Inhabitants. But as a publick Testimony of Respect to the Officer’s Memory, who, contrary to the Law of Arms, was torn to pieces, Prince Touschi caused a most
The History of

magnificent Mausoleum to be erected in the most eminent Place in the City, and order'd most pompous Funeral Rites to be perform'd according to the Custom of the Mahometans, because Hassan made Profession of their Religion, being of the Sect of Schafais. After which, Toufchi left in Saganac a Garison to awe them, and led his Army, laden with the Spoils they had gotten there, into the Province of Fer-gane.

He had lost before Saganac abundance of Men more than such a Place was worth; but he was obliged to revenge Hassan's Death. And this punishing these People so severely produced a good Effect, because several Towns in that Country fearing to share the same Fate, took great care not to irritate the Conqueror, but yielded without any Resistance. "Uzquend itself, a Place which would for some time have put a stop to the Moguls Conquests, did not think fit to stand a Trial with them: and the Inhabitants opposed the Garison who pretended to defend it, and in spite of the Governor, sent Deputies to the Prince, who was then two Days Journey from the City, not doubting but their submitting themselves would please him; and in truth things answer'd their Expectation. The Governor finding himself not able to resist all the Inhabitants of the City, and the Moguls together, went out of it, and the greatest part of the Garison follow'd him. They hasten'd their March, for fear of being seized if they were followed, and they

* The Sect of Schafais was one of the four pretended Orthodox Sects, by the Mahometans called Sunnis.

* Uzquend, or Urquend, was situate in the forty fourth Degree of Latitude.
Genghizcan the Great. 177

An. Dom. 1219.
Heg. 616.
Mog. The Crocodile.

took the Road of Toucct, otherwise called Fenaket, whither they retired. Their retreat-
ing deliver'd Uxquend from all the Misfor-
tunes of War; because Tougbican had regard
to the Inhabitants Submission, and receiv'd
their Deputies very favourably. He only took
out of the City some Provisions and other Ne-
cesaries for his Army, without suffering the
least Injury to be done them, and punish'd ev-
ev Soldier that dared to take anything by force.
He would not even suffer his Troops to make
any long stay in the Neighbourhood of Uxquend,
out of Complaisance, but marched directly to
Alfsbach, where all those who were willing to
show their Love to the Sultan join'd the Ga-

erion. All these People together defended that
City so bravely, that it was not taken without
a great Effusion of Blood.

Alfsbach was a very beautiful City, and every House had a Garden well water'd. It

was situate near the River Jaxartes, at four
Days Journey from the City of Cogende. So
soon as Tougbican had reduced it, he marched
his Army towards Junde, a City situate on the
Borders of Turquestan, and at a small distance
from the River Jaxartes. Several learned Men
having lived in this Place, have render'd it fa-
mous. It was out of this City, and some o-
thers in this same Country, (according to Mir-
conde's report) that twenty Scythian Ambassa-
dors went to meet Alexander, hearing the Fame
of his great Victories; and reproach'd him of
being too ambitious, praying him if he were
a God to shew it by doing good to Men, and
if but a Man, to reflect on the Uncertainty of
his own Condition, instead of proceeding far-
ther with design to rob them of their Goods
and Quiet. The Governour who commanded
N
in Junde at this time was called Cutlac-Cam. This City and all the Country belong’d to him in property; for which reason he bore the Title of Can. He inherited this small Sovereignty from his Father, who had voluntarily submitted to the Sultan of Carizme. He was possessed of great Riches, and had promised to make a brave defence if he was attacked; but, far from keeping his Word, he did but hear the M'guls were coming, and immediately thought of nothing but how to save himself and his Treasure. He past over the River into a Desert, and thence retired near as far as the City of Carizme, which the Miseries of the War had not yet reached.

Misconde.

Those who stay’d in Junde, willing to retrieve the Honour of their Country, resolve’d rather to perish than abandon the Place without striving to defend it. They made Provision of all things necessary to sustain a Siege, and put themselves into a condition to oppose their Enemies. Tousbican sent a Captain to them, named Gitmur, to promise them all kind of good Treatment, if they would open their Gates to him. Gitmur obtained a Conference, and represented to them, first, the Murder committed on the Body of Hassan at Siganac, and the cruel Revenge it had drawn upon that People; then he proposed to them in a most intriguing manner, to submit themselves to the Grand Can, and avoid his Displeasure. Some part of the People who heard him, hearkened to his Proposals, and consented to receive the Prince into the City; but others, who were the major Part, were not of that Opinion, and it wanted but little that Gitmur had been treated like Hassan: And he had certainly lost his Life, notwithstanding his Eloquence and good Behaviour,
Genghizcan the Great.

haviour, if those People who approved his Proposals, had not helped him to make his escape. This Officer returned to Touschi; and after having informed him of the ill Success of his Negotiation, he gave him an account of the State of the Place, as far as he had been able to discover. He had observed the Strength of the Walls and Towers of Junde in such a manner, that he judged it would cost a great deal of time to take the Place by Force, and that they should lose abundance of Men. He therefore proposed to Prince Touschi this Stratagem, to cause Bridges to be laid over Part of the Ditch, which was full of Water, saying that he might more easily scale the Walls at that Part of the Ditch where the Enemies thought themselves most secure. He shewed to him the Places he thought most proper for the execution of this Enterprize, and assured him they should surprize the Besieged as they desired. The Prince did not altogether disapprove the Captain's Notions, but having prepared a store of Engines and Machines of all sorts for a Storm, he wished he could have made use of them; for this reason he offer'd many Objections to Gitmur's Proposal: to all which he answer'd so fully, that at last Touschi yielded to agree to whatever should be resolved in a Council of War, which was held that same Day. Every one spoke his Opinion on this occasion, and Gitmur communicated his Design; but the Lieutenant General of the Army having another in his Head, spoke against the Captain's, rejected the Thought of rendring themselves Masters of the Town by Surprize, when they could have it a nobler way, and endeavor'd to persuade them that it was easy to take it by open Force. But not-
The History of

withstanding the Reasons he alleged to support his Opinion, all the Council better liked the Stratagem which Gitmur proposed; and it was resolved that to amuse the Besieged, three false Attacks should be made, and all the Engines set a playing on that side of the Town which he thought the weakest, and that they should seem to abandon that which was best fortify’d. Thus they hoped that these Attacks would draw all the Forces in the Town to that side, and during that time they might without being molested scale the Walls on the other. They agreed upon the Time and Manner, and named the Troops that should be employ’d in executing this Enterprize, and the Battalions that should support them: In fine, it was determined that so soon as the Bridges were laid, they should fasten on the Wall two Ladders of light Wood to begin the Scalado, and a certain number of Soldiers mount the Walls to fasten more Ladders.

Gitmur, who was a good Engineer, built the Bridges himself as he thought fit; and when all things were ready, they began the Attacks a little before night with great Shouts, and the Sound of Timbrels, Drums, and other warlike Instruments. Whilst the Mogul Engineers caused the great Engines to be brought up against the City, their Soldiers kill’d with their Slings, or drove from the Walls the Besieged who appear’d on them to hinder their Approaches. So soon as the battering Rams and the other Engines began to play, all the Garfon ran to the Attack, and abandon’d their other Posts. Gitmur on his side so soon as it was Night caused his Bridges to be laid cross the Ditch with all diligence, and the Men he had chosen to scale the Walls, pass’d over, and
and raised the two Ladders, one of which he immediately mounted himself to animate his Soldiers, who following, soon fasten’d to great a number of Ladders, that the Troops enter’d the Town, and advancing to the Gate they design’d to secure, seiz’d the Centinel and Soldiers who guarded it; and making themselves Masters of it with little Noise, open’d it, and let in several Troops of the Moguls, who took possession of the principal Places. The Besieged were no sooner informed that one of the Gates was surpriz’d, but they were seiz’d with Fear, and abandon’d the Care of the Places attacked, every one thinking of nothing but where to hide himself.

Thus was the City of Junde taken without any Loss on either Side; for the Moguls meeting with no Resistance, did not destroy any body: which was very extraordinary in such a Conjunction. They spared the Inhabitants, because they had not kill’d the Moguls; and they put but two or three to death, who had abused Girmur in the Conference he had had with the People. But if they put not the People to the Sword, in return they plunder’d them of all their Goods. They commanded them on pain of death to leave the City, and to retire to a neighbouring Plain. They obey’d this Order with much haste; Men and Women, Old and Young, all ran to the Place. The Masters and Slaves stood undistinguished together, waiting what their Enemies should do with them; imagining they had drove them out of the City with no other design than to massacre them all together with more Cruelty. But there was no harm done them, only Commissaries were order’d to take an account of the number of the Citizens. After which, they
they left a strong Garrison in the City, and permitted the Inhabitants to return to their Houses, where they found what the Moguls had left them, which was only what they could not carry away. A Mogul Officer, named Alaوج, who was a Mahometan, was made Governor of the Place.

Touschican, after the Reduction of this Place, divided his Army into two Bodies, giving fifty thousand Men to Elac Nevian, to go and subdue the Countries of Ilac, Alschafsche, and Cogende; and he ordered the rest of the Troops to keep the open Country, and facilitate the taking of Cogende, which he had received Orders to besiege by the said Lieutenant-General. Elac Nevian being provided of all things of which he stood in need to perform this Expedition, marched into Ilac; and to justify the Prudence of the Emperor his Master in the choice he had made of him, he resolved to use all the Prudence and Skill he was capable of. As an earnest of which, he first marched his Army with such speed, that the People of Ilac and Alschafsche believed them far off from their Country, when they were surprized with hearing they were arrived in it: on which they surrendered many Places to them without fighting, which might have made some resistance, and retarded the Siege of Cogende.

Tomcat, which Abulcaur calls Darahym, was the most considerable Town of all those which the General Elac Nevian took before he went to Cogende; therefore he was forced to besiege it to make it surrender. It was si-

* That is to say, the Palace of the Sciences, because of the Academy of Arts and Sciences that was founded there.
Genghizcan the Great.

uate in forty three Degrees of Latitude, and was dependent on Altshasche. It served to secure the Frontiers of the Province of Ilac, and was a Rendezvous for the Merchants of these two Countries who trafficked chiefly in this place. The Mogul Officer judging that this Town could furnish Cogende with great Succours in case he neglected to take it, and that on the contrary it would be of great Service for his own Army if he took it, laid Stores in it, resolved to besiege it in form, if he could not reduce it any other way. This City was rather a Place of Pleasure than Strength. The purling Brooks water’d almost every Street. The Suburbs and Country-Seats were all well supplied with Water; and an infinite number of Gardens full of Fruit-Trees render’d it a charming Place to abide in. It was full of murmuring Fountains, all environ’d with many the most delightful Walks in the World. In fine, it was a common Saying, that God never made a more delicious Dwelling than that City. Its Situation near a River, its Walls and Castle had always defended it against the Turquesian Rovers and Bands. Its Inhabitants were not frightened at the Moguls Approach. The Bey who govern’d it was so bold as to refuse to surrender it on their Summons. He was called Ilenco-Melic, and was the natural Lord of the Place. in Rouzet The Garison was compos’d of Turks, Natives of the Country, called Cangouli, a People who had the Reputation of being very brave.

The Governour put great Confidence in them, and answer’d fiercely when the Moguls summon’d him to open the Gates; but upon the first Attack he retired into the Castle with the chief of the Inhabitants. Elac Nevian caused the Engines to be got ready, and gave many Assaulds
Assaults to the City. The Besieged vigorously resisted for three days; but the fourth, maimed their Opposition, he made a Breach in the Walls: at which the Inhabitants were so affrighted, fearing to be forced, that they desired leave to capitulate, and did all they could to obtain honourable Terms. But the Mogul General rejected all their Proposals, and obliged them to surrender at discretion.

When the Moguls saw themselves Matters of this Place, they made all the Inhabitants go out of it, that they might with more ease plunder their Houses. And the General Elac Nevian thinking he had reason to be displeased with the Garrison, put them to the Sword. As for Ilenco Melic, he had not the same Fate; for he found means to escape before the Cattle surredger'd. The Moguls, after having built a considerable Magazine for warlike Stores there, marched towards the Country of Cogende, which was a Part of Feriane, or at least border'd upon it.

The Can to whom the City of Cogende belonged, well discerning that Elac Nevian had not undertaken the Siege of Tongat, but in order to come to him with more Advantage, stood upon his guard. He had order'd to be brought into Cogende all sorts of Stores, both of Ammunition and Food. And so soon as he had Advice that the Moguls were marching that way, he caused the Bridges to be broken down with all speed, the Roads every where to be spoiled, and all the Corn, Fruits, and Cattle in the Countries adjacent to be carried away, with design to take from the Enemies all

* Genghiscan was at this time about sixty six Years old.
means of subsistence, and to put them at least to a great deal of Trouble, if he was not able to prevent their besieging him. All the Inhabitants of the open Towns and Villages, upon the report of the Moguls Arrival, abandon'd their Hovses, and sought where to secure themselves. Those who could get into Cogende, took refuge there, as being the Capital of that Province, and the only Place that was capable of making any Defence. They carried into it all sorts of Provisions, so that there wanted nothing necessary either for fighting, or maintaining those who were shut up in the Place.

C H A P. X.

The Siege of Cogende, and the History of Timur Melic.

The City of Cogende was situate in about forty one Degrees and twenty five Minutes of Latitude. It was large and well fortify'd. It extended itself along the Banks of the River Jaxartes, in a fertile and beautiful Country, which rendered its Situation exceeding pleasant. Besides, it was within seven Days Journey of Samarcande, and had the Advantage of trading in Musk and other odoriferous

Alfaras in Abulfeda, p. 232. says, in forty one Degrees twenty five Minutes. Ulugbeg places it in forty one Degrees fifty five Minutes; Albironni in forty Degrees fifty Minutes.
ferous things. The fine Gardens, Excellence of the Fruits, and particularly the Bravery of its Inhabitants, made it a Place highly esteem’d. It had for its Sovereign Prince Timur Melic, who was a Can that pay’d Tribute to the Sultan of Carizme, with whom he lived in perfect Amity.

Abulcair, Touschican kept at some distance with his Army, to hinder the Garisons of several Places from getting together to disturb Elac Nevian, to whom it was besides necessary to leave all the Provisions that remain’d in the Country of Cogende, this General having but few Magazines there to subsist his Army. So soon as the Moguls were come before Cogende, they fortify’d their Camp on that side the River where they encamp’d, and began to get ready all their Engines. Elac Nevian knew very well that this Place was hard to be taken, and had got Information what kind of Man Timur Melic was. In truth, this Prince was not to be ranked with common Captains; he naturally loved War, and had often given Instances of it among his Neighbours. He had several times commanded the Sultan’s Armies, and had acquired a very great Reputation.

He was perfectly skill’d in the Military Art, and had all the Qualifications of a compleat General. He was just, liberal, familiar, and severe enough to make his Soldiers fear and obey him. All these good Qualities, supported with a dauntless Courage in all Dangers, have caused the best Eastern Historians to make mention of this Prince with great respect:

---

*His Valour was so extraordinary, that Ruslan, Sam, and Asfandiar had blush’d before him. Misconde, p. 255*
Genghizcan the Great.

They compare his Valour to that of the Rus
tans, the Afsendiars, and the Sams, who were
the antient Heroes of the Turks and Persians.
In reality, he well deserved to be rank'd as a
Competitor with all these great Men.

So soon as he was besieged, he applied
himself seriously to assign proper Employments
to all those who were shut up with him in
this City: He let none be idle. He order'd
the Engines to be placed where they were most
useful. He caufed twelve Barks with Oars to
be built, to serve them against the Besiegers,
and afterwards made many more. He ap-
pointed the Places where each Officer should
poll himself, proposed Rewards to the Soldiers,
and decreed Punishments for those who fail'd
of doing their duty. The Mogul General on his
side, before he began the Attacks, harangued
his Army. He promised to his Officers and
common Soldiers to give a faithful account to
the Grand Can of all the brave Actions they
should perform. And when he had thus anima-
ted them with his Eloquence, he order'd them
to build a Bridge of Communication a little
below the City, which they executed with Suc-
cess by the Assistance of their Engines, with
standing all the Efforts of their Enemies to
oppose them. Then having divided his Army in
to two Bodies, he sent the weakest beyond the
River under the Command of his Lieutenant,
and retain'd the best Troops to make vigorous
Attacks. And altho' Historians do not relate
all the brave Actions perform'd during this
Siege, no doubt but on both sides Exploits
were done worthy to be eternally remem-
ber'd. They say that Elac exposed himself to
a thousand Dangers to render his Attempts suc-
cessful; that he caufed whole Millstones to be
shot
The History of

An. Dom. 1219.
Heg. 616.
Mog. The Crocodile.

Shot against the City; that the Battering Rams shook the Walls whilst he was present; and that he himself fought sometimes only to animate his Soldiers.

As for Timur Melic, we cannot relate all he did either to burn or break the Moguls Engines, assisted by his People and Brigantines. He sent six of his Barks on each side of the River. They were full of Soldiers who fought desperately, and shot into the Moguls Camp so great a quantity of Stones, Darts, and Arrows, that they killed and wounded abundance of Men. This successful way of fighting augmented their Courage; and the Besiegers not being able to encompass the City by reason of a large Morass which hinder'd them, there came by that means from time to time small Supplies of Men into the City; so that Timur Melic flatter'd himself that he should be able at last to weary out the Moguls; but there arrived in their Camp fresh Troops sent by Prince Touschican Elac redoubled his Assaults, and so fatigued the Garifon, that they despaired of refitting him much longer. Yet Timur Melic had recourse to a Stratagem which much retarded the taking of Cogende. He had caused to be built some time before a kind of Fortress well fortified at the farther end of the City, in a little Island that was very difficult of Access. This Citadel was not built to keep the Inhabitants in awe, the Prince being too well assure'd of their Fidelity to fear any thing from them; and therefore to take away all Suspicions of that nature from them, he had left in the City

* They call these Brigantines in the Arabian Tongue, Queroud. Badiallah, p. 288.
Genghizcan the Great.

an Eminence which commanded this Fort. He
had built it only to secure the Town from the
Irruptions Strangers might make into it by this
way, which lay open and expos'd, because the
River grew very wide in this Place. He put
into this Fort a thousand chosen Men, and then
sent to the Enemies Camp Men in whom he con-
fided. These Men pretended to be Defectors,
complaining they had been ill used, and were
fled to them for succour. They acquitted them-
selves of their Commission very dextrouly,
and the Moguls fail'd not to question them about
the State of the City. They pretended a great
Unwillingness to answer them; but being
press'd, at length seeming unable to resist any
longer their Importunities, they declared they
needed only attack that Fort, because so soon as
that was taken, the City must surrender. The
Reasons they gave for this Advice had first been
concerted with Timur Melic.

In the mean while, Timur Melic, to give more
credit to the Intelligence these Defectors had
given his Enemies, made his Troops appear
very easy. Elac suffer'd himself to be de-
ceived, and disposed all things to attack the p. 389.
Fort. He found it to be very strongly built,
and extreme high. The Moguls made use of
their Machines, and batter'd it with all the
Vigour imaginable for several Days; but the
Stones and other Materials, of which they had
got together a great quantity, beginning to
fail, and the difficulty of getting more being
very great, much hinder'd them, they being
obliged to go above three Leagues from their
Camp to seek for them. All the Infantry was
commanded out on this occasion, and in truth
they brought back with them a vast quantity.
New Attempts were made to take the Fort;
but the Besiegers being at too great a distance from the Walls, by reason of the River running between, they could not throw them down, and were therefore obliged to cast up a Bank to approach nearer it. The greatest part of the Army was employ’d in this Work, which was extremely laborious, because of the Holes they met with in the bottom of the River, which they were obliged to fill up. The Foot-Soldiers brought the Stones to the Brink of the Water, and the Horse went and threw them in amongst the Earth, and whole Trees tied together, as they did likewise the Fascines and other things of which they made use to finish this Work, and render it firm. Besides the Difficulty of this Undertaking, they had the Vexation of being continually intercepted by the Besieged, who often with their Engines, and sometimes by the Sallies they made in their arm’d Brigantines, throw down the Bank, and destroy’d all they had done. Yet notwithstanding all the Efforts of these brave Men who defended this Fortrefs, the Work was accomplish’d; and Timur Melic now seeing himself upon the point of being forced to yield, thought no more of any thing but how to execute the Design he had long form’d in his own Mind, in order to secure his Retreat, and to save his own Family at least.

He had at the beginning of the Siege only twelve Brigantines; but having found how useful they were to him, he had caus’d more to be built, even to the number of seventy, without mentioning his Design to any body. He gave Orders that the Brigantines should be all brought to the most private part of the Shore, under Covert of the City, where he had them plaster’d over with a certain Composition which
Genghizcan the Great.

was made of wet Felt kneeded with Clay and Vinegar; and the Nature of this Composition was such, that neither the Arrows nor Fire could hurt these Vessels. In the time this was doing, and he was disposing all things for his retreat, considering that the Bridge of Communication, of which we have made mention, was an Obstacle in his way, because the Enemies might send over it as many of their Cavalry as they pleased to pursue him by going on the other side, and prevent his Landing where he design'd, he resolved to attack and destroy it. This Design was not at that time difficult to execute, because the Mogul General had caused to return to his Camp the most part of the Troops that had past over to the other side the River, and was busied about taking the Fort; so that the Bridge was left with but few Men to guard it.

One Night Timur Melic caused a Sally to be made. The commanding Officer, as had been before agreed, attack'd those who kept the Bridge, upon a Signal given him that some Brigantines full of Tar and Naphta were got near the Pontons of which the Bridge was made, and going to set fire to them. The Brigantines produced the desired Effect without Opposition, and the greatest part of the Bridge was burn'd. This was done the same Night that Timur Melic left the City. He loaded his Brigantines with every thing he had most valuable, putting aboard all his particular Friends, and the bravest of his Warriors who were willing to share his Fortune, with store of all Forts of Provisions and Arms both offensive and defensive, to incommode the Moguls, by whom he expected to be pursued; in fine, he embark'd himself, and order'd the Admiral who had charge of this little Fleet, to let it drive a-
long with the Stream, and to make all the speed that was possible.

But notwithstanding all the Precaution Timur Melic used to conceal his Flight from Nevian’s Knowledge, this Mogul Officer was soon inform’d of it, and immediately sent a great Body of Horse after him, with Orders to pursue him closely, to attack him under Shore, and take him a Prisoner. And tho’ the swift Current favour’d the Rowers, and the Fleet was got a great way off from Cogende before the Moguls could overtake it, yet they came up with them, notwithstanding the Diligence used to escape them, and in spite of the Turnings and Windings that the Rocks, which often obstructed their Way on the Shore, obliged them to make. So soon as they were within reach of them, they hurl’d a vast Quantity of Darts, Arrows, and Fire at the Bark of those of Cogende; but the Brigantines, which were proof against these Attacks, receiv’d no Damage. In the mean time Timur Melic, not being able to bridle his own Courage, nor the Valour of those that belong’d to him, shot out of the Windows of the Ships a great many Darts and Arrows against the Moguls, of whom they kill’d many. They fought in this manner some Days, and one may reasonably imagine that Timur lost also a great many of his People; for besides that he could not hinder the Arrows from entering the Brigantines by the Windows, they were often obliged to quit the Shelter of the Decks, and expose themselves to repulse those of the Moguls, who ventured still more by advancing against them into the Water.

Altho’ the Inhabitants of Cogende, animated by their Prince’s Example, suffer’d not them- selves to be surpriz’d either by Night or Day, yet
yet their Enemies gave them no rest, but follow'd them so closely, that they scarce ever lost sight of them. The bloodiest Dis-putes were when some Rocks or Banks of Sand which were on the North side (for the River ran from East to West) obliged the Fleet to approach near the Shore on the South side. 'Twas in these Encounters that Timur Melic shew'd himself a Prodigy of Valour. He was foremost in all Dangers, and seen in every Place where the Fight was hottest, and came generally victorious from those Skirmishes. There was, amongst the rest, a furious Combat in a certain Flat, or shallow Place, where the River being fordable, gave leave to the greatest part of the Horsemanship to approach the Brigantines nearer than they used to do. Timur had his Ships ranged in the manner he used, gave his Orders to the Admiral, who communicated them to the Pilots, Officers and Soldiers; and then without waiting for the Moguls coming to them, he went himself to attack them. There were soon seen floating on the Water a great number of dead Men and Horses; and after a rough Attack, the Moguls were constrain'd to make a shameful Retreat. Timur Melic lost in this Fight many of his best Officers and Soldiers.

Being obliged to pass before the City of Fadallah, Toncat, which was in the possession of his Enemies, he expected to meet with greater Obstacles. And in truth, had the Moguls reflected at first that he must of necessity pass by that Place, they might easily have overthrown and sunk his Fleet. But they thought not of it till it was too late; their Courier did not arrive at Toncat till a very little while before Timur Melic's Fleet, and they had not time to do more
more than fasten a Chain across the River. The Prince would not pass but in the Night before Toneat, to the end that he might conceal as much as possible from his Enemies the Condition his little Shatter'd Fleet was in, and to be the less incommode'd. Nevertheless, the Chain flop'd at once all the Brigantines, and gave time to the Garison of the City to join on the Banks of the River Jaxartes the Troops that pursued Timur. This Prince had fortunately foreseen this Difficulty before he left Cogende, and made provision of excellent Hatches and Files; he distributed them amongst his People, who tho' they stood as a Mark exposed to a great number of Archers who shot at them, began to cut the Chain, and accomplish'd it. It is true, Timur supported them the while, killing a great many of the Moguls with his Arrows; but he got off with great Loss of those that accompanied him. And the Chain being cut, the Brigantines pass'd thro', and continued their way.

The Moguls, tho' enraged for not having been able as yet to take Timur Meline, were not discourag'd, but pursued him with more Vigour than before. They were now join'd by a fresh Body of Troops, which Prince Toufchian, who was not far off from thence, sent to cut off all means of Timur's retreat, which he had had an account of. The Moguls with this Reinforcement began afresh to harass those of Cogende, who far from appearing dismay'd, seem'd to fight with more Ardour. Timur himself, weary of being shut up in the Brigantines, resolved to go forth to give vent to his Courage, and die in the midst of his Enemies. For this he found a favourable Opportunity; a Rock obliged the Enemies to go
Genghizcan the Great.

...go about, and drew them a little farther than they used to be off from the Banks of the River Southward. This Prince took this opportunity to get ashore with the few fighting Men he had left; and not doubting but the Moguls would all come and fall upon him, he hop'd that whilst they were fighting with him, the Brigantines would escape, and might be able to carry his Family to some Place of Safety.

He then went forth of the Brigantines with his little Band, taking with them Provisions for some days. They reached to a Place very well situate, on a rising Ground, from whence rushing down furiously upon their Enemies, who did not expect such a Descent to be made upon them, they kill'd a great number of the Moguls. The Moguls not doubting but the People who charged them with so much Fury, were head'd by the brave Prince whom they pursued, laid aside all Thoughts of the Brigantines, and applied themselves to get at him. They quitted their Horses for this purpose; but they found the way to the Place he was upon so steep on the side they were of, that they could not get up. And whilst they search'd for the Paths by which the Prince had got up with his Band into so advantageous a Post, just as they were ready to surprize Timur and his Band by coming behind them, the Night gave him and them opportunity to retire farther into a Place still more difficult to find. They left not off to seek him from Rock to Rock, and to continue their hopes of taking him; altho he, by knowing the Country better than they, always escap'd them, even when they most flat-ter'd themselves that he was going to fall into their Hands.

O 2

Wilhft
An. Dom. 1219.  
Heg. 616.  
Mog. The Crocodile.  
Mirocond.  

Whilest the greatest part of the Moguls were employ’d in pursuing Timur Melic, the rest, more greedy of the Booty than Honour, followed the Brigantines, thinking to enrich themselves by the taking of them; but they lost their Labour, for the Fleet got safe into a Port belonging to the Sultan of Carizme, where all Timur Melic’s Family were received with much Joy, and where they lived without any other Disquiet than the Trouble of not knowing what was become of that brave Prince.

Condemnd. And indeed their Concern for him was not without reason; for he had to do with Enemies who were obstinately bent to pursue and take him. And tho he had happily escaped their hands all this while, and had continually kill’d all who attempted to get up to him, and came within his reach, yet he every day lost some of his Companions; so that at last they all perish’d, and he remain’d alone, and could no longer hope to defend himself against so many Enemies: Yet one Night he found means to escape from them. He saw but three Persons who follow’d him; these three Moguls seeing themselves alone, and pursuing a Man whose Valour they so well knew, did not dare to make up to him, but were cautious how they attacked him, which was a great Advantage to him; for it gave him time to get to a little Wood, where stopping for a few Moments to take breath, he drew three Arrows out of his Quiver, which were all that he had left, one of which had no Head. This he shot at one of the Moguls who was the foremost of the three; it struck him in the Face, and the Arrow went into his Eye, and disabled him for fighting. He who was wounded was the bravest of the three. The two others appear’d much surpriz’d at this Sight,

Fadallah, p. 289.
Sight, which Timur Melic perceiving, proposed to parly with them. He offer'd them some Pieces of Gold, on condition they would cease to follow him. The Moguls accepted his offer, and taking what care they could of their wounded Companion, returned back to their Troop.

Timur Melic in this manner escaped from his Enemies hands, and easily got to a City of Carizme called Quent, where he was received with the Acclamations of all the People, who had already been inform'd of the great Dangers he had been expos'd to. They loaded him with Praises and Blessings. His Family came soon after to him with such Joy and Transport as may be much better conceiv'd in Imagination than express'd in Words. His Conduct and Valour were admired not only by all his Friends, but even by his Enemies. Sultan Abdulair, Mehemed having learn'd that he was at Quent, p. 20, sent to congratulate him on his safe Arrival, and desired him, by Letters full of Esteem and Friendship, to accept of the Government of that City, the Governor of which had been kill'd. Timur complied with his Sovereign's Desire; and when the Moguls carried the War into Carizme, he gave fresh Proofs of his Courage, and resist'd them so long, till at last despairing of seeing Mehemed's Affairs re-establish'd, he retir'd into Persia, where the Sultan himself was at that time. Sometime after he disguis'd himself, taking the Habit of a religious Sophy, and retir'd to the Borders of Syria, where he lived privately till the Moguls had establish'd themselves Masters of Persia and Tartary. Then returning into Persia, he made himself known to the Prince who then reign'd, to whom he took an Oath of Fidelity, and was by
him permitted to retire into his own Country of Cogende.

When he was arrived there, he enquired after his Children whom he left at his Departure for Syria. He found but one alive, whom an old Servant of his Family discover'd, and whom he himself knew to be his Child by a Mark he had upon his Body. Batucan King of Capsche, the Grandson of Genghis-can, permitted this Son of Timur Melic to make enquiry after his Father's Estate, and to enjoy it. Timur afflict-
ed him to recover it; but several Moguls having got possession of it, it was not very easy to make them restore it: yet he did at last compass it, by which he made all those his Enemies who had usurped any part of his Right and Fortune. These Men found out the Man whom he had wounded in the Eye with the Arrow, and excited him to take revenge on him. And 'tis remarkable after what manner this Mogul accomplisht'd his Design:

One day Timur Melic talking with a Prince of the Blood who did not love Fighting and Wars, he asked Timur with a scornful Air what were the great Actions he had done. Timur shook at the Contempt this Prince treated him with, answer'd fiercely; Prince, the Earth and Seas have seen what I have done, the Heavens and Stars are Witnesses of my Valour, and the World does undervalue it. These Words which Timur spoke, proceeded not from Vanity but Anger, which cost him his Life; for the Mogul whom he had wounded being present, and pretending to be displeased with his Answer to this Prince, which he said was not respectful enough, shot an Arrow, and kill'd the generous Timur Melic.

The Oriental Writers have been too brief in not relating all the Particulars of what happen'd
Genghizcan the Great.

pen'd in the City of Cogende after this Hero's An. Dom. 1219. Retreat from it. The Esteem they had for him did doubtless engage them to relate his Adventures only, and neglect all the rest. They do not so much as tell us what sort of People they were who inhabited the Country of Cogende. They only say that the City surrender'd the next day after Timur's Departure; and that Elac Nevian, after having settled all things, went to rejoin Genghizcan in Transoxiana.

The End of the Second Book.
THE HISTORY OF GENGHIZCAN the Great, THE First EMPEROR of the Antient Moguls and Tartars.

The Third Book.
The Argument.

Genghizcan's Wars in Transoxiana. The reducing of the Cities of this Empire to his Obedience. His Pursuit of the Sultan of Carizme. Extent of the Country of Corassana. The Siege of the City of Carizme, the Capital of that Kingdom. The History of Queen Turcan-Catun the Sultan's Mother. An Expedition of Genghizcan to Nacshab, Termed, and Bedashchan. A Grand Hunting of the Moguls. Another Expedition to Neblà, Carendar, and Damegan. Queen Turcun-Catun is taken Captive. Lastly, the taking of Rei, Com, and other Cities of the Persian Hircania.
BOOK III.

CHAP. I.

Genghizcan's Expedition into Transoxiana. The taking of the Cities of Zarnuc and of Nur.

It is said in the foregoing Book that the Mogul Emperor took the Road to Bocara and Samarcande, the Capitals of two great Provinces situate between the Rivers Jaxartes and Oxus'. Countries which were very pleasant, fertile, and full of Towns and Cities; yet there were some little Desarts. This Land was inhabited partly by the famous Scythians, whom Justin mentions, and partly by the Bactrians, whom Ptolemy,

* Otherwise called Sikon and Gibon.

Arian
204

An. Dom. 1220.
Heg. 617.
Mog. The Serpent.

The History of

Arian, and others speak of. It is called Cagatai by the Moderns, Mauvaruhabar by the Arabs, and is now what the Turks and Persians call the Country of the Uzbecks.

It is at present divided into three or four petty Monarchies, who have each an independent Prince of their own; and heretofore it was divided into many more. These petty Sovereigns are descended from the Mogul Princes of Capuscac, of whom Touschi, the eldest Son of Genghiscan, was the First and Chief. The first of the Uzbecks who went out of Capuscac to establish himself in Transoxiana, was Schaihec, who made an Irruption into it about A.D. 1498. Heg. 904. and drove out those that remain’d of the Posterity of Tamerlane, who died A.D. 1404. Heg. 807. These People were called Ketchebasch, because they used to wear on their Heads Caps made of Felt; and their Soldiers were called Yschilbasch, that is to say, Green-Heads, because they wore a green picked Cap. Their Horses are very lean, but extremely swift. Their Arms are great long Bows and Arrows, Darts, Swords, small Bucklers, and Coats of Mail. The most part of them have thick Arms and Legs, with very disagreeable Faces. They speak in the Noise like the Chinese; but they love polite Breeding, and willingly apply themselves to the Sciences and liberal Arts. Their Merchants trade chiefly in the higher Tartary, Muscovy, and the Indies. They carry thither Silks, and a great deal of Manna, which they call Scherkefs, which signifies the Milk of a Tree, because this Drug is white. "Tis a Dew

"F.-H. Head."
Genghizcan the Great.

that falls on the Trees, and dropping from their Branches, they reduce it into small Grains, which the People put up into Glasses for Sale. They also sell Sturgeons Eggs, and salted Fish.

Genghizcan having reserved to himself the Conquest of the most important Places in this Country, and above all, of Bocara, Samarcande, Nuv, and Zarnuo, caused his Army first to march towards Sogdiana and the River Oxus, and past thro' several Provinces in his way thither. The first City before which this Emperor stopp'd was Zarnuo. He sent, as was his Custom, one of his Captains to the Inhabitants of the City, to offer them all kind of Security and good Treatment, if they would submit to the Conditions he proposed to them; that is to say, to demolish their Castle, and send into his Camp all their young Men who could bear Arms, to serve him in his Expedition. The Captain, whose Name was Danischemede Hadgib, spoke to the Inhabitants in the most persuasive Terms imaginable; insomuch, that the principal Persons amongst them were willing to surrender, but the common People and Garrison opposed it; so that the Grand Can was obliged to make his Troops come up and ra-vage the Countries round about this City. Then the People who were before willing to accept this Prince's Proposals, sent a Magis-trate to assure him of their Readines to submit to him, and offer'd to come to him; but the Emperor judged it better to let these People remain in the City, believing they might engage the rest to submit to him:

---

9 Danischemede's Speech is related at length in Fadlullah, p. 301.

And
And indeed in a little while the Garifon and the rest of the People who were retired into the Castle, resolving to defend it, as they pretended, to the last extremity, suffer'd themselves to be overcome by the Persuasions of the chief of the Inhabitants. So they enter'd into a Treaty with the Grand Can, who was contented only to demolish their Castle, and bring into his Camp the Soldiers and young Men of the City.

After which he continued his March towards the City of Nur, situate between Bo-cara and Samarcande. The Name of Nur, which signifies Light, was given to this City, because it enclosed several Places whose pretended Holiness drew from all Parts a great Concourse of People. The Gates were immediately shut against the Moguls, the People flattering themselves that the Sultan would send them Succours, as he had given them hopes he would; but the Governor, either thro Cowardice, or because he believed Mehemmed not in a condition to assist them, or that he was corrupted by the Moguls, advis'd the Inhabitants to make no defence, and made them consent to do whatever he pleased; upon which he desired the Grand Can to send a General Officer with the Conditions he would grant in case Nur would surrender. Suida Behadour was sent; the Governor presented him with the Keys, and put him in possession of the Place. Suida demanded nothing but some Corn

---

4 Genghizcan, after he had reduced this City, gave it the Name of Couslouk-Balek. Badilah, p. 362.
5 A Turcoman and Native of Zarnou, guided the Army by a By-Road to Nur; and this way has been ever since called the Grand Can's Rout. Ibid. p. 392.
Genghizcan the Great.

and other Necessaries for the Emperor's Troops, which the Inhabitants carried into his Camp in so great abundance, that there was enough to feed the Army even to the Frontiers of the Country dependant on Bocara. Besides which, they obliged themselves to pay to the Grand Can annually the Sum of fifteen hundred Crowns of Gold, which they usually paid to the Sultan. This Sum they advanced to him for the first Year.

The impatient desire Genghizcan had to get to Bocara, made him very indulgent to the People of those Towns which he met with in his way; and what caused so earnest a desire in him to get thither, was, because this Place was the Center or Heart of the Sultan's Dominions, and he knew that that Prince was retired thither with the greatest part of his Riches, and therefore he made all the haste he could, hoping to surprize him. But he was deceiv'd, for Mehemed flaid not for him, but having left twenty thousand Men to defend the Place, departed, taking with him all that he had most precious, and went secretly to Samarcande, under pretence of putting some other Affairs in order; but in truth it was only to seek for a securer Retreat to save himself.

Some counterfeit Letters which fell into his Hands contributed very much to his Flight, being thereby informed that his best Officers would quit his Service; and other Letters writ to the same purpose being dropt amongst his Troops, caused much Disorder. All these Let-

* He asked them what the Sultan's Revenue which he drew from this City amounted to. They told him 1500 Crowns or Dinares; he made them pay them down. And thus they avoided being kill'd and plunder'd. *Fadlallah*, p. 493.
The History of

An. Dom. 1220.
Heg. 617.
Mog. The Serpent.

letters were writ by one of his Officers named Bedreddin, who, to be revenged of the Sultan for putting his Father, Uncle, and Brothers to death, sent these Letters to him from Genghis-can's Court, whither he was retired. The Emperor permitted him to make use of this Artifice, after having got intelligence that there was a Misunderstanding between the Sultan and the Queen his Mother, and that several Captains had left him to follow that Princes. Genghis-can himself offered his Assistance to this Queen, and a Settlement in Coraffana, or in any other Country of his Dominions which she pleased to make choice of; but she would not trust to the Promise of a Prince whom she thought an Idolater. Mean while the Moguls encamp'd in the Plain of Bocara, where they had continued all the rest of the Winter of the Year 1219.

CHAP. II.

The Siege of Bocara.

The City of Bocara was situate in thirty nine Degrees and some Minutes of Latitude, a Day's Journey North of the River Oxus. It was an antient City in Transoxiana, and there were few more pleasant in the East; and being advantageously situate for Trade, it drew to it the Merchants of all the Nations in Asia. The Country which belong'd to it reached from Oxus even to the Province of Samarcande, which the Antients called Sogdiana,
Genghizcan the Great.

and was the Boundary of that Province on the North side.

Besides the Walls of the City which were very strong, it had another Wall without, which was twelve Leagues in compass, and shut in not only the Suburbs, but also many pleasant Seats, and a great number of fine Farms, water'd by the little River Sogde, which sprung from a Mountain called Botom, situate in the Country of Ferganë, nine Leagues from Bocara. We may easily imagine the antient Sogdiana took its Name from this River.

In the Month of March 1220, the Moguls Fadlallah forced this outer Wall, and approached the City. The Tartars and the Chinese were then in the Year which they call the Serpents. It is the Custom of the Tartars to give to their Years the Names of Animals, and their Priests form their Predictions according to the Nature and Qualities of these Animals: We must also observe that an Age with them is compos'd but of twelve Years. The Grand Can, accompanied with Prince Tuli, encamped his Army before this Place, causing it to be invelt on all sides; and then he destroy'd the Suburbs, and began to besiege it in form.

The Inhabitants of Bocara found themselves Mircondé, in a strange Confutation, when from their Walls they beheld the prodigious number of Troops that surrounded them, and that Genghizcan commanded them in Person. Some were of opinion, desirous to save their Lives and Fortunes, that it was best to submit to the Enemy: But others bravely consulting their Honour and Faith to their Prince and Country, thought of nothing else but how to make a vigorous Defence; and these persuaded themselves that the Place being in a good Condition,
full of all sorts of Provisions, and defended by twenty thousand Men, all experienced Troops, not to mention a much greater number of the Inhabitants who were able to bear Arms, they would be in a condition to resist the Moguls, or at least to hinder their Progress a great while:

But, says a Turkish Historian, what did their Walls avail them? Whatever Forces the Be. sieged had, Fortune was not on their side.

The Troops Mehemed had placed in the City to defend it were the Cause of its being lost. They had for their Generals three Captains, who did not answer the great Confidence the Sultan their Master repose in them. And it must be confess'd, that this Prince made a very ill choice of his Generals. These three Chiefs, tho Men of Quality, did none of the basest Actions in the World. Fear took possession of their Minds, and without staying till a Blow was struck, they fled out of the City one night with the Troops they commanded, leaving the Inhabitants to the Mercy of their Enemies. But this their shameful Flight was justly punish'd; for as they were retiring with their Families, and endeavouring to outwit the Moguls, in hopes to escape under shelter of the dark Night, their Design was discover'd; thirty thousand Moguls pursu'd and overtook them on the Banks of the River Oxus, where they had a bloody Dispute. The Traitors were defeated, and almost all of them put to the Sword.

The Retreat of these Troops took from the Besieged all Hopes and Courage; there was nothing to be seen in the City but a general
Genghizcan the Great.

Confusion. The greatest part of the Inhabitants said, that they must now implore the Grand Can's Clemency, and carry him the Keys of the City: and others, fearing his Cruelty, would have them hearten to nothing but Despair, and advised that all the Inhabitants should destroy themselves and City with Fire and Sword, to deprive the Moguls of the Glory and Satisfaction of conquering them.

Whilst they were thus deliberating what to do, Genghizcan, who was not ignorant of the distracted Condition they were in, caused them to be attack'd on all sides: and whilst the Engines were getting ready to be play'd, all on a sudden they saw the Gates set open, as if Bocara had nothing more to fear. At the same time all the Magistrates of the City, the Lawyers, and chief of the Inhabitants came in a Body to meet the Emperor, to whom they presented the Keys, and ask'd their Lives, which were granted them on condition they should oblige themselves by an Oath not to give any shelter or Assistance to the Sultan of Carizme, and immediately to put out of Bocara all who could be suspected of being in that Prince's Interest, particularly all the military Officers and the Soldiers, whom it was forbidden them to conceal on any pretence whatsoever. They swore exactly to execute all the Grand Can's Orders, and assured this Prince of an eternal Fidelity to him.

So soon as it was known in Bocara that they had nothing more to fear, an infinite number of People, impatient to see their new Master, went forth, and Genghizcan took possession of the City. As for the Castle, which was strong, all the young People who were displeased with the Agreement made with the Moguls were retorted
tired thither, being headed by the Governour, a brave Man, who resolved to hold out to the last Extremity, and preserve his Reputation, which was dearer to him than his Fortune, Life, and Liberty.

The Eastern Historians make no mention of the Manner in which the Mogul Emperor made his Entry into Bocara. They only say, that he was accompanied by his Son Prince Tulican; and that having stopp'd before a Mosque to look upon it, he asked if that were the Sultan of Carizme's Palace: and being answer'd by one of the Inhabitants that it was the House of God, he respectfully got off his Horse, and walked on foot. This Action made the Bocarians think that Heaven had inspired him with Devotion; but so soon as he was enter'd into it, they were convinced of their Error. He went up into a Gallery, and without the least Respect for the Place where he was, made a Discourse to the People and Magistrates of the City, wherein he told them that they should immediately take care to find means to subsist his Army; that the Country being stripp'd of all things, his Troops had suffer'd much, and that therefore they should make haste and set open their Magazines. Then he descended, and went out of the Mosque.

All the People of Bocara hasted to execute his Orders. They ran to their Magazines, but they found them already open'd; for the Moguls were no sooner enter'd the City, but they began to show their Power by making themselves Masters of all the Provisions. And so great a number of their Cavalry enter'd the Place, that they could scarce find room to lodge their Horses in; and all the Stables were so full, that
Genghiscan the Great.

that they were obliged to put some of them into Places very unfit for such Uses.

A certain Historian deplors on this occasion the Fate of the learned Men in Bocara:

After having related the servile Offices the Enemies obliged them to perform for them;

The Moguls, says he, made Stables of the Libraries, they threw down the Books, and

by an unexampled Profanation, the Leaves of the glorious Alcoran served for Litter to their

Horses, and were trod under foot.' The good wife Men comforted themselves for these Disorders with the Consideration that it was the Will of Heaven, and must be submitted to.

And one amongst them answer'd a Doctor who complain'd as he was talking with him, 'That it is requisite they should suffer Misfortunes without murmuring, since it is the Wind of God's Anger that blows upon them. All the Populace were inconsiderable: and thro' the Belief of Predestination generally comforted the Mahometans in their Misfortunes, yet they appear'd now unable to govern or moderate their Resentment.

When Genghiscan had provided for the Submission of his Troops, he retired to his Tent, where he repos'd himself for some days, to give time to his Soldiers to refresh themselves. This Prince loved to speak in Publick, because in the beginning of his good Fortune he had successfully experienced the Power of his Eloquence. He caused the principal Men of Bocara to be call'd together. The Magistrates, Lawyers, Priests, the Antients, and chief Mahometans made haste to know his Pleasure. They placed themselves round about a kind of Tribunal or Pulpit erected for him in a Field:

which the Grand Can ascending, began his Fadallah, Oration with praising God, and a particular P. 395.
The History of

detail of all the favours he had received from him. After which he represented to his Auditors how great God's Anger must be against them by reason of their Sultan's Crimes, whom he accused of Treachery and Breach of Faith. But, added he, the most detestable Action of all he has done, and what will the most astonish Posterity, is the Murder committed at Otrar by his own Order upon the Persons of my Ambassador, and the Mogul Merchants. Otrar has already felt my Vengeance; and the perfidious Gayereau, who was over-faithful in executing the unjust and barbarous Commands of the King of Carizme, shall soon live his Life in the Chains in which I have kept him Captive. He finish'd his Discourse with telling them that God had chosen him to punish Mehemed for all his Cruelties, and at the same time to clear the Earth of him and all other Tyrants. At this Period of his Discourse he stop'd, to give time for the Interpreters to explain what he had said to the Carizmeans.

After he had a long time entertained them on the Subject of their Monarch's Crimes, and how little they were obliged to that King for having drawn that War upon them, and boasted of the intimate Communication he pretended to have with God, and the Authority he had by Inspiration received from him to govern all the Kingdoms of the Earth, he at last came to the Point for which it is most probable he had called them together. He testify'd the Satisfaction he had received from the Inhabitants of Bocara, in their having voluntarily and without Compulsion furnished his Army with all things they wanted; but he added, that this Action was but a slight Proof of their Obedience and Good will to him, and that it was only to try them that he had order'd them to give his

Troops
Genghizcan the Great.

Troops something to subsist with, which his Soldiers could easily have taken without asking their leaves. But now, said he, I shall require of you a much stronger Proof of your Obedience. It is my pleasure that you discover to me all the Treasures you have hid, and that you immediately put it all into the hands of my Officers. Neither is this all; I expect you do not shelter or conceal any of the Sultan's Friends, or any belonging to him. And as you perform this last Command of mine, so I shall judge of your good or ill Will to me; and this I shall look upon as an assured Testimony either of the one or the other. His Harangue thus ended, he dismissed them, and they prepared to obey him, tho in secret they deplor'd their wretched Condition.

The Grand Can nominated several Officers to receive the Riches they brought; but he commanded them to execute his Orders without Violence, and not to require of the Inhabitants more than what they could readily furnish. This City being a Place of great Trade, there was abundance of Gold, Silver, and precious Stones, without mentioning rich Gold and Silver Stuff, which Luxury and Plenty had render'd very common. One part of these Treasures were carried into the Royal Treasury, the Officers had the rest, and the Soldiers enriched themselves.

The Inhabitants of Beccara had been contented with their Misfortunes, if they had been quit by losing all their Effects, because they might in time have got something again; but these poor People became yet more miserable, and their good Nature compleated their Ruin. Genghizcan, as has been before related, had ordain'd that they should not conceal any Officer or Soldier belonging to the Sultan; the greatest
part of the Inhabitants obey'd him: yet some others, persuaded that it was not difficult to evade the Rigour of this Order, neglected to execute it, and kept concealed in their Houses such of Relations or Friends as belong'd to the Sultan's Army. The Mogul Officers discover'd and inform'd the Emperor of it, who giving vent to his Rage, commanded that the City should be laid in Ashes. The Mogul Soldiers willingly undertook this Employment, and all Parts of the Town were set on fire, the greatest part of the Building being made of Wood, because of the difficulty of getting Stone in the Country round Bocara. Thus this great City, which in the Morning of this fatal Day might justly pass for one of the most beautiful in all Asia, was in the Evening nothing but a sad heap of Cinders and Ruins. All that it had most valuable was destroy'd; and all the Houses became a Prey to the Flames, except some publick Buildings, such as the Mosques and Caravansera's, which were made of Bricks.

Altho' the Grand Can had laid Siege to the Castle so soon as the City had open'd its Gates to the Moguls, he was not yet Master of it. It is true, the Desire of plundering the City had made the Troops less vigorous in their Attacks of it. The Walls were excellent good, and defended with good Towers; and the Besieged, animated by the Misfortunes of their Country, employ'd all their Efforts to defend themselves: yet this Fortress, after the burning of the City, being hard press'd, and attack'd by a great number of Troops, and even by the Inhabitants of Bocara themselves, whom Genghizcan forc'd to serve him, could not hold out long. The Governour seeing himself and Friends overwhelm'd with Pots thrown in full of Naphtha and
Genghizcan the Great.

and Fire, and the Gate of the Castle in Flames, surrender'd at Discretion. He was made a Prisoner of War with all his Garison. They took away the Lives of all the Gobbarans belonging to the Sultan; that is to say, of all the great Officers. There were many of them in the Castle; And these, says Fadallah, were the Heroes who boasted of being so nimble and so expeditious to execute their Master's Orders, that they felt not the Earth on which they trod. Genghizcan would not leave any thing behind him in this Country that could make him uneasy, or employ any of his Troops to keep; therefore he demolished the Castle.

Nevertheless Bocara was rebuilt soon after Genghizcan died, by Order of O'laican his Successor in the Empire. The happy Situation drew fresh Inhabitants to settle there; and this City was as much esteem'd after its Reestablishment, as it was before its Ruin, the Country being full of fertile Plains which produce abundance of all good things.

The Princes Zagatai and O'laai having rejoin'd the Emperor their Father before the Burning of the City, render'd him an account of their Expedition to Otrar; and he testify'd to them how well he was satisfy'd with their Conduct.

The City of Bocara was the more regretted, because all Arts and Sciences had flourish'd there as much as in any Place in the World. Several learned Men had render'd it famous; amongst whom was the learned Avicen.* This Philosopher follow'd the greatest part of his Studies in the University which in his

*Bocara, a City famed for the Sciences, where Avicen studied, who was a great Philosopher and Physician.
time was in this City; but he was born in another Place in this Country, in a Town named Aſhana. He says himself that he learn'd the Alcoran and Humanity at Bocara, which he perfectly knew before he was ten Years old; and that in fine, having learn'd Arithmetick, he apply'd himself to the Mathematicks, which he began by the reading of Euclid. After which he gave himself to the Study of Philosophy, Phyſick, and Theology; in which he made great Progress, that he was Master of all the Sciences at eighteen Years of Age: That after his Father's Death he went to Court, to which he was called, having gained a great Reputation; that he there obtain'd Places of Trust, and was so much esteem'd by his Prince, that he became his chief Minifter; yet ceased not to pursue his Studies.

He died at Hamadan, An. Dom. 1036. Hag. 428. aged fifty eight Years, or thereabouts, according to the Lunar Computation made by Bencafem an Astronomer, compared with the Solar. The Orientals assure us that Avicen did publish more than a hundred Volumes both in Profe and Verse; and they say that his Works were called The Glorious Works. They also observe that he extremely loved Wine and Women.

---

* Aſhana, Avicen's Country.
Genghizcan the Great.

CHAP. III.

The Siege of Samarcand.

SOMETIME after the taking of Bocara, Prince Toufchi arrived to join the Grand Can his Father, whom he found within a day's Journey of Samarcand, in a Place where the Army had lain encamp'd the latter End of the Month of May. The Prince gave him an account of his Expeditious, and forgot not to praise the Conduct of Elac Nevian, who accompanied him. The Emperor shou'd all the Joy imaginable at the Prince's Return to him, and looked very kindly upon Elac. He con- 
fulted with them about the Siege he design'd; 
and 'tis said that he follow'd the Advice 
they gave him, and that it was of great use to 
him.

Samarcand was at that time the Capital Bia Arab: 
of Transoxiana. This City had always been held 
held in great Estimation. This Place the Chi-
inese, who have no R in their Alphabet, called 
Samabania. 'Twas the Maracandis of Pliny, 
Srabo, and other Antients. It was seventy 
Furlongs round, that is to say, about three 
French Leagues. * In the Days of Alexander 
the Great it was more than twelve Leagues in

* Quarto die ad Urbem Maracandem perventum est; 70 
stadiorum murum complectitur. Quintus Curtius.
The History of

compais. It was wall'd round as well as Bocara when the Moguls laid siege to it, with this Difference, that the Walls of Samarcand were much more regularly built, and had more Fortifications than those of Bocara. It had twelve Gates, a League distant from one another. These Gates were made of Iron, and at every two Leagues there was a Fort able to hold a great Body of Troops for the Security of the Place. The Walls were likewise fenced with Battlements and Towers, to fight under shelter, and were surrounded with a very deep Ditch, thro' which an Aqueduct was laid that carried the Water from a little River in leaden Pipes, which convey'd it into all Parts of the City of Samarcand in such a manner, that there was not a great Street but what had Water running thro' it, or a House of any consequence without a Fountain. Besides this, there was a rising Ground from whence several Rivulets descended, forming Spouts and Cascades of Water, which served to adorn their publick Places, and please the Eye. The Inhabitants were very curious to have fine Gardens, and every House had one belonging to it.

In this great City there was an Enclosure called the inner City, which had four Gates, but the Walls were defenceless. The principal Mosque of Samarcand was within this Enclosure, as also the Palace where the Prince used to reside.

Jacut reports, that when one went to the top of the Fortresses to view the City, one could see nothing but Trees and the Roofs of some Houses; which is not at all surprising, since in this great Circumference of Land that these Walls enclosed, there were plow'd Lands, Fields, and an infinite number of Gardens, nay even Moun-
Genghiscan the Great.

Mountains and Valleys. There are some Authors who pretend that this City was built by Alexander the Great, during the time of his Conquests in Transoxiana and Bactriana, and that he gave it the Name of Alexandria. But this Opinion has little grounds to support it, as has also that of an Eastern Author, who imagined it to have been built by a King of Arabia Felix, called Tobai; for that City was built before Tobai, who was of the Family of Tabateba, as Hezarfen assures us in his Universal History of Asia. It was standing before Alexander the Great’s time; and the Arabian King Tobai did only build one Gate, yet called the Gate of Kefeh, on which was long time seen a Plate of Iron, with an Inscription engraved in Hounmarite Characters, which is the antient Arabick, witnessing its Antiquity. Samarcand was the Seat of the great Tamerlane’s Empire about a hundred and forty Years after its being taken by the Moguls; and this Prince made it one of the finest Cities in the East, tho’ it was not quite so large in its Extent as before. He afterwards built a City which he called Damas. During his Reign, in digging up some of the Foundation of the Walls, they found Medals with Cufique Characters upon them; a Circumstance which must make us conclude that a Mahometan Prince rebuilt this City.

The Mogul Emperor was not inform’d time Mirconde, enough of the Sultan’s being retired into Samarcand; for which reason he could not prevent his Retreat thence, nor overtake him in his Passage into Corassana, whatever Forces he had sent after him: He therefore thought no more of any thing but making Preparations for this Siege; which he supposed would take up
up much time; and in truth, the great number
of Soldiers that were in the City, the abun-
dance of Provisions which he had not been
able to hinder them from getting in, altho' the
Moguls had seized abundance of Places from
whence they could much annoy the Inhabitants,
the Strength of the Walls and the Ditch, all
seemed to promise a long Resistance.

Mehemed, not doubting but this City would
be besieged by the Moguls, had caused Troops
to enter into it to the number of one hundred
and ten thousand Men, sixty thousand of whom
being Turks, had Commanders of great Ren-
own; and the others, says Fadallah, were all
of those brave Tagis, each of whom upon an
Exigence would not have shrunk back or trem-
bled at the Sight of an angry Lion, or an E-
lephant in Fury. Besides these Troops there
were twenty of the biggest and strongest Ele-
phants, and so great a quantity of People, both
Inhabitants of the City, and those who were
retired into it for their Safety, that the Place,
the of so great an Extent, could hardly con-
tain so many Men.

Genghizcan being arrived before Samarcand,
caused the Place to be view'd, and then form'd
the Siege, giving his Orders to his Lieutenant
Generals, and marking out himself the Posts they
should place themselves at; and when the En-
gines were ready, he caused several Places to
be attack'd at the same time, to frighten the Be-
sieged. They sustain'd these Attacks with much
Courage; and some of their best Troops fal-

Tagis signifies a Turcoman according to Fadallah; but
according to the Persian and Turkish Dictionary writ by Ni-
mzet Allah, they were the natural born Persians who could
not speak the Turkish Language.
lied out with so much Bravery and Resolution, that they overthrew all they met with; and had already kill'd a great many of the Moguls, when they perceiv'd that fresh Troops ran from all Parts to the Besiegers Assistance, upon which they retreated in good Order into their City with a great many Prisoners. Their Success in this Sally encouraged the Besieged to make others every day, in which sometimes one side, and sometimes the other, got the better; so that in a short time a great many brave Men were kill'd on both sides.

One may judge by these Beginnings that the Moguls must have experienced in this Enterprize all the Difficulties that the Besiegers of any Place could meet with from a City that was very strong, and well provided, if the Spirit of Discord had not crept in amongst the Besieged. But so many sorts of People of different Nations as were in that City, could not agree; and a Misdunderstanding, rather than Fear, divided them into two Parties, one of which were for surrendering the Town, to avoid being plunder'd and put to death, which it was certain they would have been, if the Moguls got it by Storm; and the others, of which Abul car, can the Governor of the Place was the chief, trusting to the Number and Valour of the Garrison, rather than to the fair Promises of the Moguls, were of opinion that they should continue to defend it to the last Extremity, for their Sultan's Honour, and the Preservation of their Religion.

These two Parties not being able to unite in Opinion, ceased to act together. The Governor, who was posses'd of the Castle, fortify'd himself and Friends in the best Posts in the City; and those that were inclined to yield, seized
seized upon one of the Gates, to have the Freedom of treating with the Besiegers if they thought fit, without the Consent of the rest. This Party was headed by the Cady and Muftry of Samarcand, with several Lords who were fallen out with Alibcan, and who being most of them Natives of this Country, were desirous to preserve their Estates.

The Cady and Muftry were nominated by this Party to go to the Grand Can in their behalf, to try to obtain of him an honourable Composition. After they had saluted him, he asked them what was their Business. Then interceding for the rest of the Besieged, they besought him to pardon them the Resistance they had made, to which they were obliged by the Fidelity they owed their Sultan. And to the end the Mogul Emperor might not reproach them for being false to their Duty, they told him that they had not come to make him these Offers, if they had not found themselves constrain'd to it by a superior Power, which had convinced them that it was God's Pleasure they should submit to the great Ghenghizcan, whose Clemency they now implored, promising an entire Submission to him, both for themselves, and for all those their Friends who were in the City.

Altho Ghenghizcan had received the Cady and Muftry with much Civility, yet he did not grant them all they demanded: And perhaps he had refused them all, had he not fear'd that Despair might re-unite their Minds, and inspire them with Resolution enough to defend the Place to the last Extremity, which would have render'd the taking of Samarcand very uncertain, and consequently have been a great hindrance to his other Designs. He only granted Life
Genghizcan the Great.

Life and Fortune to the Cady and Mufty who brought the Message, and to all those of their Party; but he would not allow any Favor to those of the contrary Party, whatever Intreaty the Cady and Mufty made use of to prevail with him to comprehend them in the Capitulation. He sent Commissaries with sufficient Troops to take possession of the Gate which they were to deliver to him, with Orders to spare the Lives of all those whom the Cady and Mufty protected. All who were of their Party came together to them at their Return; after which they were distributed by hundreds in the Fields, and numbered, amounting to more than fifty thousand Persons.

Mean while the Governour held those Places in the City that were most difficult of Access, believing that the Resistance he was able to make, would procure him better Terms than what he was otherwise to expect; for he very well knew that Genghizcan had resolved to give him no Quarter, and therefore he prepared to make him change his Resolution, or to die gloriously for his Master. The Moguls attack'd Alubcan, who sustaine'd their Assaults with extraordinary Courage. For four Days they could not force him to yield; but the fifth, seeing they had taken all the other Posts but that which he in Person defended, he resolved either to perish, or deliver himself out of the Danger he was in, by running a generous venture, which was to open himself and Friends a way thro' the Enemies Army with their Swords. He communicated his Design to the chief Offi-

---

2 This Gate was called the Gate of the Mosque. Abulcair, P. 21.
An. Dom. 1220.
Heg. 617.
Mog. The Serpent.

Mircinde, p. 262.

The history of

The Soldiers who remain'd in the City being inform'd of the Governour's Retreat, lost all Courage, and the Moguls were soon Masters of the Place, which they plunder'd, ruin'd the Walls, and put to the Sword thirty thousand Men who remain'd of the Garison, which had been drawn out of certain Tribes of Turks, who had before been Subjects to the Sultan's Mother, and amongst whom the Prince of Cangouli was found, with five or six petty Princes. They made all People, both Men and Women, go forth of the City, whom they would make Slaves of.

The Tradesmen, who were at least thirty thousand in number, were distributed amongst the Princes, Generals, and other Officers of the Army. The rest of the Inhabitants were pardon'd, on condition they should furnish two hundred thousand Dinars, or Crowns of Gold, for their Ransom; and then the Soldiers were order'd to give over plundering, after they had loaded themselves with the Spoils. Yet whatever Grievance and Resentments the Inhabitants felt to see their City thus pillaged, they could not but be sensible of some Pleasure that they were permitted to live still with their Families and Friends,
Genghizcan the Great.

Friends, and to enjoy what their Enemies could not carry away. The Reduction of Samarcan was the more pleasing to Genghizcan, because he did not expect it so soon. He put the City into such a Condition as he thought fit; and after having reposéd his Troops for some time, giving Rewards to those who had deserved them, he prepared to execute other enterprises. At this time, and without the City of Samarcan, in a Place called Gheusserai, Gayercan the Governour of Otrar, was put to death by the Grand Can's Order.

The City of Samarcan, according to Ulugbeg, who was Sovereign of it, was in forty Degrees of Latitude, situate in the antient Sogdiana; for the Province itself, and the River that waters it, are at this day called Sogde. It was built on the South side of the River, the Water of which, as we have said, was distributed by Canals and Pipes all over the City. It ran along the Outside of the Walls of Samarcan, and render'd the Country very pleasant, and the Walks very agreeable. Its Banks were planted thick with Fruit-Trees, which yielded a great Revenue; one part of the Fruits belonging to certain Magi, to whom it was given, on condition they should take care to observe whatever past upon this River; for which reason they dwelt along the Banks of it Winter and Summer.

At present Samarcan is considerable, not only because of the Advantages I have been speaking of, and of the Beauty of its publick Buildings and Market-Places, which are built and paved with very fine Stones fetched from a Mountain called Cubac; but also because of its Commerce with Great Tartary, India, and Persia, from whence they bring all sorts of Merchandize.
Besides, this City furnishes Indostan with the best Fruits, which they eat both green and dried. Of these, the Inhabitants drive a great Trade; and 'tis from these Gardens these excellent Melons are gather'd which are used in India in the depth of Winter at the great Lord's Tables. They also make Silk-Paper in this Place, the finest in the World. The Turkish Letter which was sent to the King of France in the Year 1675. by the King of Persia, was writ upon Paper made in Samarcand; and that which he commonly writes his Letters upon, is made at Esf erabad, and is called Abadi. In fine, there is in Samarcand a famous Academy of Sciences. An Uzbee Prince is at present Lord of this City; and tho he is not so potent as his Predecessors, yet he is much greater than the Cans of Bale and Bozra, who are also Uzbees as well as he. These three petty Princes are almost always at war with the King of Persia, and are leagued together against him.

---

5 Fine Silken Paper at Samarcand.
6 The Uzbees are Sovereigns of Samarcand at this present time.
Genghizcan the Great.

CHAP. IV.

Genghizcan sends thirty thousand Men under the Command of three Generals, to pursue the Sultan of Carizme. Their Journey thro Coraffana. The Death of Sultan Mehemed King of Carizme.

When the Mogul Emperor was going to besiege Samarcand, he was inform'd of the Sultan of Carizme's being fled thence by the way of the River Oxus towards the Country of Termey. He immediately sent a Detachment of thirty thousand Horse to pursue him; and these Troops being led with extreme Diligence by able Officers, fill'd all the Countries with Dread, which the Moguls had any cause to fear, and broke all the Measures of the Sultan and his Son Prince Gelaleddin. These Troops were commanded by Hubbe Nevian, Suida Behadeur, and Emir Touquer, each of whom held the Rank of Princes amongst the Moguls. The Emperor, that they might be the less embarass'd in their March, gave to each of them but one Toman, that is to say, ten thousand Men, and order'd them not to go so far asunder, as to be unable to join each other soon upon occasion, and to live together in a perfect Union. And this is the Substance of the Orders they received from this Prince.
The History of

Go, said he, go with all speed, use all your Endeavours to overtake the Sultan, seize upon his Person, and bring him to me. If any Prince, Friend or Enemy, offers to aid him, enter his Country and punish him; but commit no Acts of Hostility, and do no injury to those who yield to you, and will be my Friends, unless they afterwards turn to be my Enemies. In this case chastise them severely, and give them no Quarter. And when I have taken Samarqand, I will pursue the Sultan’s Children wherever they dare appear. I will even pass over the Oxus to break whatever Measures he takes. Go then and search on all sides, without sparing either your Time or Pains. Do all that is necessary for my Service, raise Troops if there be occasion; and if you meet with the Sultan in any part of Persia, penetrate into it, even to Derbende in Georgia. If any Princes oppose you in your Passage thither, force your way, take their Countries, and come and rejoin me in mine by Capfchac, and by the other Roads which you will find to the Northward of the Caspian Sea, which you must bring under my Command.

These three Generals, after having taken leave of the Grand Can, went away at the Head of their Troops in the Month of June in the Year 1220. Led by a false Report, they marched towards the Frontiers of India, and passing the Oxus, entered into the Country of Balc, where they made a very exact search after the King of Carizme; but not being able to get any News of him, they took Guides, and drew towards Coraffana. The General Touquer advanced still towards India, and the two others turned short towards Herat, the Capital
Genghizcan the Great.

tal of Corassana. The Prince Eminmalec, the
Governour of this City, a Relation of the
Sultan, was surprized at so sudden an Inva-
sion; and finding he was not in a condition
to defend himself, he chose to submit. He
sent an Officer to meet Hubbe Nevian and
Suida Behadeur, to treat with them. The Offi-
cer promis’d that the City should furnish their
Army with all they had need of, and even pay
them some Contributions. The Treaty was
concluded, and punctually perform’d by the In-
habitants; for which reason the Moguls did not
commit any Disorder in the Country of Herat,
and went forward, without making any stay,
towards the City of Zave.

Touquer sometime after having left the Fron-
tiers of India, arrived in the Country of Herat,
where he committed some Acts of Hostility,
not knowing, or pretending not to know that
the Governour had submitted to his Collegues.
This Proceeding obliged the People of the
Country to defend themselves. The Prince E-
minmalec sent a Man to the two other Mogul
Generals to inform them of the ill Treatment he
had met with. In the mean time, some Troops
went out of the City, and join’d themselves to
the Country People who had taken Arms,
which together made an Army so superior to
Touquer’s, that he was beaten, and received a
Wound in the Croud, of which he died. So
that when the Officer whom Hubbe Nevian and
Suida Behadeur sent to inform him of the Tre-
aty made with the City, arrived, he only served
to conduct the Remainder of his Army to the
Place where the other Generals were:

When Hubbe and Suida were come to Zave, Fadlallah,
they demanded Refreshments; but the Inha-
bitants shut the Gates against them, and would

grant
grant them none. The Moguls who were now in want of Victuals, sent to entreat the Governor of the City not to refuse them; but whatever Prayers and Offers they made him, they could obtain nothing: which so much incensed them, that they immediately prepared to take the Place, which the Soldiers did with the greater Fury, because they were promised the Plunder of it, and had already suffer'd great want of Provisions. Thus, notwithstanding all the Resistance the Besieged could make, the Moguls took the City in three days time, tho' not without the Loss of a great many Men: But this Loss made them so furious, that they put to the Sword all that fell into their hands, and then plunder'd the Houses, and seized of all they could carry away.

Zave was a City of a moderate Bigness, situate between Herat and Nischabour, in thirty five degrees twenty minutes of Latitude. Several famous Men were born in this Place.

The Moguls, after having repos'd themselves for some days, marched towards Nischabour, on Advice given them by a Spy that the Sultan was enter'd there. They sent some Scourts before to observe the State of Affairs, and desired that above all things they would make it their business to learn some News of the King of Carizme, and to inform themselves whether he was still in that City, or if gone out of it, what Road he had taken, and where he could be. These Moguls were no sooner got into Nischabour, but they were discover'd, and the reason of their coming guess'd at. The People used them civilly, and deputed three Persons of Quality, who were related to the Sultan, to go to the Mogul Generals to treat with them.
Genghizcan the Great.

These Deputies had full Power given them to offer what Conditions they thought fit, without the fear of being contradicted; and after having in the Governor's Name made their Offers of Submission, they promised to give all the Money that was demanded, with all sorts of Refreshments the Mogul Army had need of, and even obliged themselves to pay Tribute to the Grand Can, and not to assist or succour his Enemies. On these Conditions the Inhabitants yielded, and received no Injury; they even obtain'd of General Hubbe a Guard to secure them from the Insults of the Tartars who might come after him. What had happen'd to the Inhabitants of Herat, made them use this Precaution. All things thus agreed, the Deputies of Nishabour made no difficulty to confess that the Sultan had been in their City, but assured the Generals that he was gone out of it with design to go to the Persian Hircania, or Trac Agemi, a Country antiently inhabited by the Parthians; which he was persuaded to do by the Prince Amededdin, who accompanied him. They added, that this Amededdin was Son to the Vizier Rucneddin, Prince of Trac Agemi, one of the Sultan of Carizme's Sons. That being desirous to return into Persia, where his dearest Companions were, and he had been used to live, he had persuaded his Grandfather, over whom he had a great Ascendant, to retire thither, and leave Corassana; telling him that the Province of Trac abounded with Men, and that he might easily raise a great Army there, and being assisted by his Father Rucneddin, he would be furnished with all things necessary, and soon be in a condition to revenge himself upon Genghizcan.

But
But Amededdin deceived the King and himself, and could not have given worse Advice; for Trac was not by much so powerful a Country as Corassana, which he persuaded him to quit. Corassana contained the most populous Cities, and those Provinces of Asia that were the most beautiful and rich. The antient Aria, so celebrated for its Fertility, was but a Part of it; Bactriana, which was no less populous, nor less in extent, or plentiful, was another; and the antient Parapomisa made up but the least part of it, according to the Limits Abulfeda gives to Corassana.

He bounds that Province on the West Side with Sogdiana, which was the Margiana of the Antients, and with the great Desart which separates it from the Province of Trac Agemis, which is also called the Persia Hircania, or the mountainous Part of the Country of Parthia; he confines it on the South with the Province of Comus, which was the Comisina of Ptolemy, and by the Desart which separates it from Persia properly so called; he places on the East of it India and Segistan, which Quintus Curtius calls the Country of the Sogdians; and, in fine, he says, that on the North it is environ'd by Tranfoxiana and Turquestan.

Some others report, that its Frontiers extended even to Sogdiana; which proves that the Country of Corassana was of a vast Extent. It had often had the Title of a distinct Kingdom, of which Bakc had in times past been the Capital. Nischabour had also been so in its turn; and in later times Scha-Imael order'd that Meshbehed should be so. The Uzbek Princes at present possess the best Part of Corassana, and the rest is under the King of Persia.
The Sultan of Carizme having left Nischabour, went to Bestam, a very pleasant and strong City, situate in Tabarestan, in thirty six Degrees twenty Minutes of Latitude. At his Arrival there, he sent for the Emir Omar, one of the Stewards of his Houshold, and Native of this Country, to come to him in the Castle-Hall. He shew'd him ten Coffers which were sealed up with the Royal Signet, asking him if he knew what they contain'd. The Emir answer'd, No. Well then, said the Sultan, they are fill'd with Jewels, amongst which there are several of an inestimable Value. The King said, moreover, that no Man in the World, except two who were there present, knew what was in those Coffers. Then he order'd him to see them carried to the strong Fortress of Ardahan, which Omar immediately saw done.

Mehemmed raised some Troops at Bestam, and Jacut in continued to levy Men all the way, even till his Arrival in Persia; and likewise got together some Troops of Soldiers whom the Moguls had differed. And being in Trac-Agemi, he stopp'd in Maradoulet-Abad, a Place dependant of Hamadan, where Runceddin his Son, to whom he had given this Country, came to meet him with some Troops; which being join'd with those the Sultan had levied in the way, made above twenty thousand Horse. During this time the Mogul Generals having got News of this King, marched after him, pursuing his Steps; and made so great haste that they surpriz'd him at Farzine, some little time after he was gone out of Maradoulet. They cut to Fadallah, pieces the best part of his Army, and the Remainder fled. Runceddin himself fled as far as the Frontiers of Quirman. Yet the Sultan escap'd
scaped from the Moguls, and retired by several By-ways with a small number of Officers into Guilan, and from thence to Esteidad, a Place much esteem'd for its Situation, the strongest City of Mazandran, and the most difficult to besiege, because an Army could not come near it but by very narrow Passages. He so well concealed the Place of his Retreat from his Enemies, that they were obliged to send out Parties on all sides to get News of him: But at last a Lord of that Country, to be revenged on the Sultan, who had put his Uncle to death, headed a small Detachment of Moguls, and at last discover'd the Way the Prince had taken. Then he advanced almost to Esteidad, where some Peasants told him that the King of Carizme was in a Town near the Caspian Sea, where he every day assisted at the publick Prayers which the Imam made in the Mosque at the usual Hours. One Historian writes that this unfortunate Sultan melted into Tears when he heard the Alcoran read, and that he made many ardent Vows to Heaven, and promised with a loud Voice, punctually to observe these Vows, and to govern his People with as much Gentleness as Equity, if God would deliver him out of the Danger he was now in, and that he should see himself re-established in his Throne.

Mean time the Moguls, conducted by the Traitor who serv'd for a Guide to them, beset the Town where they were inform'd the King was, yet they mistook of him: for he being upon his guard, had provided a Bark ready equipp'd on the Sea-shore, to throw himself into in case of need; and accordingly he embark'd on the first notice given him of the Enemy's Approach. This News was brought him
him by a faithful Subject, who would not suffer his Prince to fall into the Mogul's hands: But it was full late when he received this Advice; for all that he could do was to reach the Seashore, and to get into the Ship, and he had but just weigh'd Anchor when the Enemies appeared upon the Shore, from whence perceiving they had miss'd of their Prey, they vainly shot a great quantity of Arrows after him. There were some Tartars who even threw themselves into the Sea, and swimming after him, were swallow'd by the Waves. This miserable King being reduced to this Extremity, as if his Misfortunes were not sufficient alone to overwhelm him, fell into a Pleurisy, which grew so violent, that he was obliged to stop at an Island called Abiscon. There, notwithstanding all the Ills he suffer'd, his Sentiments were divided which to choose, Life or Death: 'Is it possible, said he, that of all the Countries I possess'd, there is no more remaining but two Cubits Length to hold my Body? How uncertain a Dwelling is the World, and how little ought those who inhabit it to put their trust in this Life, in which one is exposed to so many Misfortunes?' He abandon'd himself to these sad Reflections, and was not capable of tasting any Joy but only that of seeing himself securely landed on this Island.

In reality the Mogul's did not imagine that he would land in a desert Island, but believed that he put to Sea with design to retire into the Country of Carizme, or to some neighbouring Prince. For this reason Hubbe Nevian and Suida Behadur having received Information of the Sultan's Flight, gave the Grand Can notice of it, who fail'd not to have him search'd for all.
all over the Kingdom of Carizme, and in every Place where he thought it probable he was.

During this time Mehemed, whatever Care his Officers took to divert him, was even buried in a profound Melancholy; yet to show that he was sensible of their Zeal and Fidelity, he confer'd Implements upon them, which his Successor permitted them to enjoy. For this unfortunate King died in this Island Abifcon of his Pleurisy, which his Physicians could not cure, tho they employ'd all the Secrets of their Art.

A few days before his Death, the Prince Geleeddin, having been inform'd that he was in this Island, came secretly thither with two of his Brothers. The Sultan, who expected them, seeing them arrived, said to him, 'Prince, you are the Person who amongst all my Children are most able to revenge me on the Moguls; therefore I revoke the Act I heretofore made at the Request of the Queen my Mother in favour of my Son Cousbeddin.' Then he appointed Geleeddin to be his Successor in the Empire; and he commanded the other Princes his Sons to obey their Brother, as being their rightful Lord and Master, which they promised to do. At the same time he gave him his Sword, and sent him away to look after the Affairs of the State; after which he expired under the Covert of a little Tent which had been set up for him. Schamseddin Mahmoude, first Gentleman of his Bed-chamber, wash'd his Body, and wrapp'd it in a Shirt, having no other Linen to bury it in. This was the End of this mighty King, who was buried in this Isle as meanly as one of the poorest Mahometans.

But some Years after, the Sultan Geleeddin had his Bones taken up, and carried with great Pomp into the Fortress of Ardahan.
Genghiskan the Great.

C H A P. V.

The Siege of the City of Carizme, Capital of the Kingdom of that Name. The Adventures of the Queen Turcan-Carun, the Mother of the King of Carizme.

WHilst these things past in the Isle Abulcair, of Abisen, Genghiskan, who was at Sa-
marcan, order'd the three Princes his eldest Sons to go and conquer the Kingdom of Carizme; and to enable them to do it, he gave them the one half of his Troops, with equal Power to act, as he had done to Othai and Zogatai, when he sent them to Otrar after the Battel of Caracou. He was of opinion that several Generals, and particularly Brothers, acting in concert, must have better Success than if the sole Power was lodgd in one Person; but Experience afterwards convinced him he was mistaken. As for himself, he resolved so soon as the Princes were on their march, to go by small Journeys into the Country of Transoxiana, which was not yet reduced, and to besiege what Cities he thought proper, till he received News of Sultan Mehemed.

The Country of Carizme is that which Pro-
omy call'd Chorasmia. It had Transoxiana on the East, Corestana on the South, and was separa-
ted from both these Provinces by Desarts; on the North it had Great Tartary, and on the West the Caspian Sea, which several of the Eastern Geographers do call the Lake of Ca-
rizme.
The History of

An. Dom. 1220.

Carizme: On this side also there were some other Countries of the Turks. The Capital City was also called Carizme, since called Corzante by the Persians, and Orzante by the Moguls. It was about six small days Journey from the Caspian Sea, and situate on the West side of the River Oxus, in the forty second Degree of Latitude. All the Extent of the true Country of Carizme was but from the thirty seventh to the forty second Degree of Latitude, and from the ninety second Degree of Longitude to the ninety sixth inclusive; that is to say, that it was not above seventy two Leagues from the East to the West.

The Conveniencys great Rivers afford, generally invite People to dwell in Places near them. The most considerable Part of this little Kingdom was in the Neighbourhood of the River Oxus. The Cities one behold on the Borders of this River were all built of Brick, and very near to one another. Some of those on the South side were very beautiful. Those that were farthest up in the Country appear’d least considerable. The Name of Carizme was likewise given to Tranoxiana, and to many other Provinces in which were many fine Governments. This Country abounded with learned Men, who were skill’d in Philosophy and all Sciences. Poetry then reigned there; and there were few Orientals more polite than these. They apply’d themselves much to Musick, or were rather naturally Musicians; and an Expression concerning their Children became customary in the Levane, that they discover’d something of Musick even in their crying.

The Princes Touschi, Zagatai, and Ochtai having received the Orders of the Grand Can their Father, caused the greatest part of the
Preparations for the Expedition on which they were going, to be made in Samarcand; so that they soon got together a very great number of Carts loaden with Provisions and warlike Stores, as combustible Matter for burning, Battering-Rams, and Engines, all ready for use. Genghizcan had always much Confidence in his good Fortune, and trusted much to the Number and Valour of his Troops. He order’d the Princes first to besiege the Capital of Carizme, to the end they might frighten the rest of the Cities, and by that means render themselves Masters of that Kingdom at one Blow. He fail’d not to take all necessary care to bring this Enterprize to effect; because he was persuaded that the City of Carizme would make a vigorous Defence, it being the Place the Sultan most valued, and also because the Queen Turcan-Catin, his Mother had always, since the Death of King Tekish, her Husband, lived there. And ’tis certain this Princes, to whom the Sultan had entirely left the Government of this Country, extremely loved the City of Carizme, and always kept it well provided, and in a very good Condition.

This Queen was the Daughter of a Turkish King named Hanqueschi, and the Father of Sultan Mehemed espoused her with all the Pomp and Ceremony used at the Marriages of the Daughters of the greatest Kings. The Turkish King outlived his Son-in-Law, but dying after, leaving no Male Issue, the People who were his Subjects went to Sultan Mehemed his Grandson, who fail’d not to improve this Opportunity to extend the Bounds of his Empire far among the Turks. For these reasons Turcan-Catin had almost an absolute Authority in her Son’s Dominions, who was not
content to make her absolute Mistress of the Country of Carizme only, but gain'd very few Conquests without presenting her with some part of them.

She had for her Secretaries of State seven of the most able Men of the Age. She had the Title given her of Godavende Gebau, that is to say, the Lady of the World; and her Power was so well established in the Empire, that when there came double Orders, one from Mehemed, and the other from her on the same Subject, they only look'd on the Date, and those Orders that were last dated were executed without Scruple, tho' the first Orders were signed with the Sultan's own Hand. In her Dispatches she took upon her the Title of Protectress of the Faith and of the World, and Queen of Women. She signed her Letters thus, I put my self into the Protection of God alone. She writ with a very large Pen, and so curiously, that it was very hard to counterfeit her Writing. She had a superiour Wit. She protected the Weak against the Powerful; and when any one ask'd for Justice of her, she examined the Business with such Application, that her Judgments were always right. It was not permitted any Person to solicit her whilst she was informing herself on some other Affair on which she was to give Judgment. The Poor look'd on her as their Mother, because they often tasted of her Bounty. She did much good in the Kingdom of Carizme.

It is true, she has blemish'd her Memory by her Cruelty. She loved to shed Blood; and when she took up a resolution to leave the Country of Carizme, she put to death twelve Children of Sovereign Princes, whom she held Prisoners, amongst whom was a Seljukide Prince,
Genghizcan the Great.

the Son of Togrul the last King of that Family, An. Dom.
whom Tekish her Husband had put to death.
Turcan-Catun had been for some time at variance
with the Sultan her Son, because of
Gelaleddin (whom she hated) who was his eldest Son,
and a Prince of extraordinary Merit,
and whose Right it was to succeed him in the
Empire; yet she had prevail’d with this King
to make a Will in favour of Oubbeddin, whom
she loved; and by this Will Gelaleddin was
deprived of the Empire. But when she was in-
form’d that the Sultan had annulled it, and
declared Gelaleddin his sole Heir, she threw off
all the Tenderness of a Mother, and no more
troubled herself about fortifying the Country of
Carizme, but even resolved to abandon it so
soon as she was inform’d that Genghizcan was
advancing into Transoxiana.

She went out of the City of Carizme, accom-
panied with the Wives and Concubines of her
Son, and her Grandchildren, laden with Treas-
ure and Jewels. The Inhabitants melted into
Tears at her Departure, and all those whom
she would give leave to follow her, bore her
Company. She took for her Guide a Can
named Omar, the Son of a petty King of Tran-
soxiana, whom the Sultan had conquer’d. This
Omar, who perfectly knew the Country, safely
conducted her as far as within a few Leagues
of Mazanderan. But before their Arrival at
that Place, and her retreat into the Citadel of
Elac, which was the strongest in all this Coun-
try, she put this unfortunate Can to death;
which is accounted the greatest Piece of In-
justice that was ever committed. The Au-
thors who endeavour to excuse her, say, that
she fear’d this Omar would betray her as he re-
turned
turned thunto the Countries he had heretofore enjoy'd.

After the Queen's Departure, there was a great Confusion in the City of Carizme, which continued a long time. A Champion whose Name was Courd Rugan, a Man fear'd of many People for his extraordinary Strength, got the Government into his Hands, finding amongst the People a great many seditious Persons who supported him in his Usurpation; but all the rest abhor'd him, so that there was nothing but Trouble and Divisions in the City. Things remained in this Condition to the Sultan's Death. Then the great Officers of the Prince's Council writ Letters in his Name, which some of them carried to Carizme, where the People, who were altogether ignorant of what was become of the Sultan, received them with Joy, and according to their natural Inconflancy, did all these Lords desired. The Lords turn'd out Courd Rugan, and seiz'd of the Money he had scraped together, which they usefully employ'd for the publick Service, and took the Government upon them till such time as Geladeddin and two of his Brothers arrived. But some of the most considerable Persons in the Kingdom did, not like that Mebemed, after having so long before appointed Courbeddin to be his sole Heir, should afterwards revoke that Grant at his Death, and settle the Crown on the Head of another. These factious Men formed a Conspiration against Geladeddin, and design'd to deliver him up to his Brother. But by good Fortune Geladeddin being advertiz'd of this Conspiration by Aimanecan, who was faithful to him, resolved to retire into Corefjana. And with this Design he set out from Carizme, attended with only three hundred Horfe,
Genghizcan the Great.

Horse, out of seven thousand which came with him into Carizme.

The Mogul Emperor learn'd by his Spies the State of Affairs in Carizme; for which reason he not only caused his Troops to advance that way, but even sent orders to those he had towards Coraffana, to repair to certain Places in the Defart, and lie there in Ambuscade, to the end that if Gelaleddin and his Brothers should pass from the Country of Carizme to Coraffana that way, they might stop them. They immediately obey'd, and the Leaders who commanded these Troops, placed them as in a Circle round about the Defart, from the Frontiers of Merou, even to the Frontiers of Scheherezane.

Gelaleddin, who had taken upon him the Quality of Sultan, so soon as he saw himself secure from the Conspirators, went out of the Defart on that side that led to Nisfa. There was near this City a Body of Moguls of seven hundred Men, who were posted there so secretly, that even the Inhabitants of Nisfa knew nothing of it. They attack'd Gelaleddin briskly. Both sides fought with as much Obstinacy as Vigour. At last the Moguls, tho' superior in number, gave way, and were the greatest part of them kill'd. The Carizmeans remain'd Masters of their Horse, Provisions, and what Baggage they had; and the rest of the Moguls who fled, fell into the Hands of the Peasants, who carried them to Nisfa, where they cut off their Heads. After this Action Gelaleddin retired to Nishabour, where he gave Orders for getting together an Army; but having learned that the Enemies were on their March towards him, he went thence, and meeting a Party of the Moguls, defeated them, and hoped he should
The History of

meet no more; when another Body of Genghiz-
can's Army, much more numerous than the for-
mer, appear'd on a sudden before him, and sur-
rrounded him. The Prince refiiled, and his re-
filling cost the Lives of almost all his Men, and
even of his two Brothers, who were kill'd in
the Crowd. The Head of these Princes
were cut off, and stuck upon two Spears, and
carried all over the Country, as in Triumph,
which was a sad Spectacle to all the Ca-
rizmeans. These two Princes Habits were all
cover'd with Jewels of great Price; but the
Moguls not knowing the Value of them, neg-
lected to take them; And some say that the
Country-People, when they came to rip the
Dead, took them, and sold them at a small
Price for ready Money. As for what relates
to Gelaleddin, we shall speak of him here-
after.

Whilst Genghiz-can's three Sons were advan-
cing towards Carizme, with a great Army, the
chief Lords of the Country were not a little
surpriz'd when they heard they were approach-
ing, because they imagined that the Grand
Can had sent almost all his Forces into Coraf-
jana, to hinder Gelaleddin from getting an Ar-
my together. There were at that time in the
City of Carizme several Factions, which were
all bent one against another. Courbeddin and
his Brothers had their Partizans, so that what
pleased one Party displeased another. Never-
theless the present Danger reunited their
Minds, and all the Inhabitants agreed to give
up the Management of Affairs to a Lord of that
Country, named Himartequin, a Relation of the
Queen. He was known to be wise and va-
liant, and of no Party. He used all his ut-
moft Diligence to put the Country into a Pos-
ture
Genghizcan the Great.

ture of Defence. He particularly applied himself
to furnish the Town with Provisions and war-
like Stores, bringing into it all things necessary
to sustain a Siege: And besides the Garison, he
caus'd a great many brave Men to come into
the City. In fine, he forgot nothing that could
contribute to the Preservation of the City and
Country.

Yet the Moguls used so great a Diligence;
that they surpriz'd those who, fearing a long
Siege, were gone out of the City to get more
Provisions from the neighbouring Towns. The
Moguls Van-guard, led by Men who knew the
Country well, being arrived about the Even-
ing within a League of the City, found means
to conceal themselves near a Town called
Baghe-Eram, where they lay in Ambuscade,
without being discover'd. They were no sooner
camped, but some Troops of Mogul Horse
as Scouts, advanced even to the Gates of Ca-
rizme, where they carried away a great many
Horses. The Carizmeans imagining these few
Bodies of Foot were all the Moguls Van-Guard,
fent out against them some Horse, with Foot-
Soldiers mounted behind them. The Moguls
pretending to be afraid, turn'd their Backs, and
let them pursue them even to Baghe-Eram. Then
the Van-Guard coming out of their Ambus-
cade, charged the Carizmeans so briskly, that
they had not time to recover themselves; and
'twas with difficulty that one escap'd: The
greatest Part of the Inhabitants who were come
forth in search of Provisions, were massacred.
In fine, the Disorder was such at the Gates of
the City, that several Moguls enter'd promis-
cuously with those they pursued.

The wifc Himartequin by his Prudence soon
restored all things to good Order, and the Go-
vernour
The History of

An. Dom. 1220.
Heg. 617.
Mog. The Serpens.
Mirconde, p. 237.

erneur had time enough to regulate all things before the rest of the Mogul Army arrived. He fill'd the Magazines which were in the most convenient Places to distribute the Ammunition to the People; the Engines were got ready, and placed upon the Walls and Platforms; they put the several Quarters of the City under the Command of those Officers whom they judged most able to take care of them; and, in fine, fifty thousand Men were commanded to guard the Gates and Walls.

Notwithstanding all these Preparations, the Mogul Van-Guard were no sooner come up, but they invested the Town, and seized on all the advantageous Posts; so that the three Princes found all things in a good Forwardness. They first view'd the Place, and held a Council of War, where the Manner of the Siege was resolved on. All the Officers then went to the Posts appointed them, several Towers were raised to place the Engines on, and all things were prepared for beginning the Attacks. And having nothing to fear of any Armies coming to relieve the Town, they made no Intrenchments or Lines. When all things were ready, the Princes sent to summon the Governour to surrender, and to acknowledge the Grand Can for his Sovereign; which if he refused, he was to expect no Quarter either for the Garrison or himself. He answer'd to this Summons like a brave Man, and instead of consenting to yield to their Demands, protested he would be true to his Prince, even to his last Breath.

Upon this Answer the Moguls made a general Attack. There was nothing to be heard in every Quarter of the City but the Noise of the Engines, nor seen, but whole Clouds of Arrows, and Darts mix'd with Fire. The Moguls
Genghizcan the Great.

guls endeavour'd to frighten the Befieg'd, and
to reduce them at one Blow to ask for Peace.
But the Carizmeans sustaine'd the Assault with a
Constancy that made the Befiegers sensible they
had to do with braver Men than those they
had met with in other Places which had sur-
render'd, and that they should not carry this
Place without much Trouble; yet the Moguls,
far from being despirited, repeated their At-
tacks several times, and were always received
with the same Bravery as at first. One can-
not sufficiently praise the Courage with which
the Befieg'd defended themselves. If the Men,
who ran boldly to every Place where the Dan-
ger was greatest, and appear'd indefatigable
and dauntless, are worthy Commendation; the
Women no lesse deserve our Admirations, who
were equally courageous. They were not con-
tented to employ themselves only in succouring
those who were doing their Duty, but they
mounted on horseback, and put themselves a-
mongst the Troops which follow'd forth. We
need not be surpriz'd at this, because the
Women of Turqueshian, and the Countries ad-
jacent, draw the Bow, and shoot as well as the
Men, ride as dexterously, and can sit on horse-
back as long as they. Tho they apply them-
selves to Arms, and consequently are oblig'd
to be with all sorts of Men, yet they are very
chaste; and it is a rare thing to find one who is
not true to her Husband: nor does this Exer-
cise hinder them from performing all the Duties
required in the Management of their Affairs
at home.

The Befieg'd and the Befiegers continued a long
time to combat with equal Vigour. They
profusely spent their Arrows and Darts, and
the number of Men kill'd on both sides cannot
be
The History of

be told. At length the Sallies and Attacks were so frequent and so obstinate, that the Moguls wanted Stones to supply the Engines; and having at last nothing left to annoy their Enemies, saw themselves obliged to batter the Town with great Pieces of the Trunks of Mulberry-Trees, with which this Country abounded. They had them saw’d and fender, fit to be put into their Engines, which did not prove of much use to them. Neither did the Besieged talk of surrendering to them; for besides the vigorous Resistance they made, the Ditches round their City were very wide, and very deep, and the River fill’d them with Water. The Princes believing this Place would be as easy to take as the others, were willing to spare their Soldiers the Time and Labour of filling them up; but when they saw there was a necessity of doing it, they order’d several Companies of Soldiers to set about it. And the great Quantity of Water with which the River Oxus supply’d the Ditches, rendering their Labour ineffectual, it was resolved that the Course of the River should be turned by a Canal, in order to carry the Water off another way, which would make it more easy to drain the Ditch; and afterwards fill it up.

Three thousand Men were order’d to make this Canal, and were already far advanced in the Work, when part of the Besieged one day went forth of the City, and stole so cunningly along the Side of the River under the Cover of the Trees and Reeds that grew there, that they surprized the Workmen, made a great Slaughter of them, and retired back into the City before the Moguls came up, who ran from all Parts at the Report of this Disturbance, and had only the Vexation of seeing their Companions dead,
dead, or lying wounded in the Canal. Yet this Misfortune did not make them give over their Undertaking; others were instantly ordered to pursue the Work; and to prevent the like Misfortune, so many Troops were sent to guard them, that the Besieged did not dare any more to attempt to interrupt this Work. When it was accomplished they turned the River into the Canal, which taking its Course that way, and no longer supplying the Ditch with Water, they soon found means to drain it, and to fill it up with Earth, Straw, and Faggots.

One may easily imagine the Carizmeans did not suffer their Ditches to be filled up, without endeavouring to incommode the Workmen; but the continual Attacks that were made to employ them, called for all their Care and Attention. All things succeeded as the Moguls proposed to themselves; the Ditches were filled up in spite of all the Sallies which the Besieged could make, during the continual Alarm in which the Moguls kept them on all sides. Then the Princes caused the Batteries to be redoubled, and considerable Breaches were made, and a general Assault given with so much Vigour, that the Mogul Standards were planted on the Walls. If this Action made the Mogul shout for Joy, it put the other side into a Consternation. The Sight of the Enemies Ensigns standing on their walls, gave fresh Courage to the Besieged. They ran in Crowds to the Places where the Moguls had planted them, and used such great Efforts, that they tore them down. They even repaired the Breaches; and the Inhabitants had no less share in the Danger than the Garison.

On both sides they did nothing but fight during several days, from morning till evening; and
and yet the Disputes generally ended to the Advantage of the Besieged. This much despirited the Princes; and ill Success generally producing a Misunderstanding when there are many Commanders who are equal in Authority, there grew a Disagreement between the Brothers, that is, between Toulshi and Zagatai; for Octai did not meddle. They both complain’d loudly of one another, and mutually reproach’d each other with having been too careful of their own Safety on several occasions, and that that had been the Cause of the Siege’s lasting so long.

Whilst this Division was betwixt the Princes, things went but slowly on; so that no great Advances were made in the Siege, altho they had already spent more than six Months before this Place. Genghizcan was inform’d of the Diffension that reign’d among his Children, at which he was much troubled; and after having seriously consider’d what to do, he resolved to take the Command of the Army from the two Princes who were most in fault, and to give all the Power to Octai, who had shew’d himself the wisest. He therefore sent Letters to them. Octai received a Ferman Hacani, that is to say, an Imperial Order after the manner of Letters Patent, by which his Father gave him an absolute Authority over all the Troops in Carizme; and at the same time order’d him to continue the Siege. The Letters Genghizcan writ to the other two Princes contain’d a positive Command to them to resign all the Troops to their Brother’s Command, and to obey him. He likewise writ to the General Officers to be obedient to his Son Octai; and in every Letter testify’d his Displeasure concerning what had pass’d between them before Carizme.
Genghizcan the Great.

So soon as Touschi and Zagatai had received the Emperor's Orders, they resign'd the Command of the Army to Oitai, and seem'd even to have forgot all the Refemtments they had before conceived against one another. Oitai then having made himself known to the Troops as sole Commander, held a great Council of War, wherein he declared to them the Grand Can's Pleasure; and they agreed what was to be done in order to take the Town. Every one put himself in a Posture to perform the Duties of his Place; and the Officers seem'd all filled with Zeal for their Emperor, and Rage against their Enemies.

Thus fired, they began to renew their Batteries against the City with the Rams and other Engines; and the Moguls being inspired with fresh Vigour, discover'd an extraordinary Courage and Boldness. All the Sallies were now fatal to the Carizmeans, and the Besiegers were not long e'er they made Breaches in the Walls, and mounted to give the Assault. The Resistance of the Besieged slacken'd not; they at first kill'd or disabled all those who enter'd the Breach; which only serv'd to enflame the Besiegers, who to revenge the Death of their Companions did things extraordinary, so that the Walls were shaken on every side. The Breaches they made, gave opportunity to a great number of Moguls to enter the Place; the Outworks of which the Carizmeans were forced to yield to the Enemies, and to suffer them to set upon the Towers of the City their victorious Ensigns. The Carizmeans, unable to pluck them thence, found themselves obliged to retire with Precipitation into the Places they had for-tify'd in the City, which really appear'd to the Moguls as new Places to be conquer'd. They were
were obliged to attack them in form; and the first Assaults were very bloody. Yet in spite of the great Defence they made, the Citadel which they batter'd without side, was at last taken, with several fortify'd Places. Then Prince Othman, to save the Effusion of his Soldiers Blood, caused the Governor to be sum- mon'd to surrender and quit the Posts that remain'd; but since they mention'd nothing of leaving the Inhabitants at liberty, the Governor rejected all their Proposals.

The Moguls, enraged at the Carizmaus OStinacy, who still refused to surrender, tho' their Walls, their Fort, and the greatest part of the Places they had entrenched were ruined, resolved to burn it all. They threw Wild Fire all over the City, and set fire to the Houfes on every Side. It is impossible to tell how many People and what Riches were destroy'd by the Flames. Then the Besiegers repenting of having set fire to the Houfes, which would prevent them from reaping the Fruits of their Labour, and make them no Gainers by becoming Masters of a City so full of Treasure, ceased to throw more Fire, and employ'd themselves wholly in making themselves Masters of the different Quarters of the City, fighting hand to hand. The Attacks continued night and day, and the Fatigue was so extreme on both sides, the Besieged having so entrenched themselves, that one Quarter succour'd the other; so that when one Place was forced after a long Re- sistance, they found a secure Asylum in the other. Having all promised to stand by one another, they shew'd such Resolution that their Enemies were amazed. The brave Himartequin, whose Valour and Prudence had doubtless much contributed to the prolonging of the Siege, perished
Genghizean the Great.

rist'd in defending a Post which the Enemy was forming. An Arrow took away the Life of this brave Man, and snatch'd him away from his Countrypeoplen, whose Loss much diminished their Courage. Yet they were not so poor spirited as to ask mercy from their Enemies, but defended themselves to the utmost Extremity, and when they saw they must yield, they put fire to the Houses that remain'd in the City with their own Hands; and so disappointed their Enemies of gratifying their Avarice, shewing they knew how to render their Victory less pleasing to them.

And indeed the Mogul Soldiers, seeing them selves frustrated of the Booty they hoped for, put to the Sword all the Cariz meen, they met with, and suffer'd their Rage to extend itself so far, that they kill'd about a hundred thousand Persons; nay, there are some Authors that say two hundred thousand. Prince Oebai had a great deal of difficulty to make the Slaughter cease; yet at last he put a stop to it. Then they made all the Artificers, and other Men who could be of any use to them, go out of the City, and they were found to be a hundred thousand. The young Women, Girls, and Boys, were distribut'd for Slaves, and all the rest were put to the Sword. But all those who were put to death seem'd not afraid of dying; nay, there were some who refuse to live. Among the rest, there was a certain Chec, or Superior of a Society of religious Mahometans, who was famous for his Piety: His Name was Negemoddin. 'Tis said the three Mogul Princes, when they approached Carizme, heard a Voice from Heaven, which advertised them to spare this holy Person, and to take care that he might go out of the City in safety. But wheth-
ther this be true or not, Ostai had a particular Respect for him, and offer'd him a Passport to retire with ten of his Friends wherever he pleased; but the Chec would not accept it, unless on condition that all the Mussulmans in Carizme should be pardon'd. Prince Ostai, who desired to save him, sent him word he should have leave to choose a thousand out of both Sexes to accompany him, and that they should be spared for his sake. The Chec rejected all Ostai's Offers, and sent him word, that having lived seventy Years with the Mussulmen of Carizme, to whom he was united by his Religion, it was not just they should be separated in Death. Thus this venerable old Man had the same Fate as his Countrymen, and died with his Friends.

In fine, the City of Carizme was taken and ruin'd towards the End of the Winter, in the Year 1221, and of the Hegira 618, after a Siege of seven Months. The Moguls afterwards easily subdued the rest of the Province: Fear seiz'd all the rest of the People, and the other Cities, which were very rich and populous in those days, surrender'd without making any Resistance; so that the Moguls obtained in this Country a greater Booty than they had got since the Beginning of this War. The other Places which they took after the Reduction of Carizme, were_cat, Feraber, Dargane, Zamach-cher, the Great and Little Corange, which the Arabs call'd Jorgania.

Ostai Can left in the Country of Carizme what Troops he thought necessary to keep it in

Mirone says the Siege lasted but five Months, which is a Mistake.
Genghizcan the Great.

Subjection. Then he departed with the Army, accompanied with his two Brothers, and made what haste he could to join the Grand Can; but he could not march far in a day, by reason of the Badness of the Roads: he was even obliged to leave his Troops under the Command of his Lieutenants.

C H A P. VI.

Genghizcan's Expedition to Naccheb, Termed, Bedaschan, and other Places.

The Affairs of Sogdiana being settled, the Fadlallah, Grand Can marched into Transoxiana on p. 416. the West side, and his Fame daily encreasing, several Towns open'd their Gates to him. The Inhabitants of Naccheb even went out to meet him, to offer him all that they had; so they were quit for only feeding his Army for some Months, because this Prince found this Country so pleasant, and the Air so good, that he staid there the best part of the Summer. He was informed at Naccheb of all that past in Corassana, and in the other Provinces situate to the South of the Oxus; for which reason he resolved to go towards that River to continue his Conquests.

* After several Weeks march, he arrived at Termed, the last Town in Transoxiana, towards

* He went by the Way of the Passage cut in the Rock called Coluga, that is to say, the Iron-Gate. Fadlallah, p. 412.
An. Dom. Tocarestan. Altho Termed had a great many
other Places under its Government, yet it
was dependant on the City of Kefeb. Its Si-
tuation is placed on the River Oxus, about
the thirty seventh degree of Latitude; and
being a Place very commodious for Trade, it
had a Port which was much frequented. The
Sultan of Carizme had conquer'd it some little
time before, when it was under the Govern-
ment of Bembranschah, who was Sovereign of it,
and whom the Sultan's Mother put to death at
her leaving Carizme.

Termed, instead of following the Example of
Naïsheb, shut its Gates against Genghizcan.
The Garifon, supported by the principal No-
blemen, resolved to sustain a Siege, because Ge-
laeddin had given them hopes of his coming to
their Relief. The out-side of their Walls were
Bricks, and they had a Castle which the Ri-
ver Oxus defended on one side; so that they be-
lieved themselves strong enough to amuse the
Moguls till the Arrival of Gelaeddin. The
Grand Can being inform'd of their Resolution,
caus'd Lines to be cast up round it very deep
and very wide. He had also Platforms rais'd,
and appointed the several Quarters to his Ar-
my; and, in fine, shut up the Place very closely.
The Besieged, far from being daunted at all
these Preparations, made ready to receive them
warmly. In effect, for the space of eleven days
they defended it with all the Bravery the Sul-
tan could expect from his best Subjects; but
Gelaeddin not appearing to succour them, and
their Walls being thrown down, they could
not hold out much longer. So the Moguls took
the Place by Storm, and made the Besieged pay
dearly for the Blood of their Companions whom
they had kill'd. All the Garifon and the In-
habitants
Genghizcan the Great.

habitants, except some young People who were reserved for Slavery, felt the Fury of the Besiegers, whom Avarice render'd more cruel in this Place than they had been elsewhere; for a Soldier having rip'd up the Belly of a Woman to search for a Pearl she had swallow'd, and having found it, several others follow'd his example, tho' the greater part of them were disappointed, and became a Horrour to others, for having committ'd so barbarous an Action. The Grand Can caused the Town to be razed to the Ground about the end of Autumn; and it being unlikely that he could pass his Army over the Oxus in the beginning of the Winter, he thought it best to put his Troops into Winter Quarters, both in the Places that were under his Obedience, as also in those which he might with little trouble reduce. He accordingly distributed all his Forces into Transoxiana. The Tartars whom he sent out on all sides in Parties, made terrible Ravages, and principally in the Towns of Languerte and Samaide, which had received Genghizcan with regret, and were so imprudent as to let him know it. They were not content to take out of these Places all sorts of Forage and Ammunition, but they also burnt what they left, and committed all sorts of Disorders that can be imagined.

As for the City of Bedacshan, which had freely open'd its Gates to him, it was not so ill treated; it cost them only their Riches. The Moguls pillag'd them of a great quantity of Hyacinths and Rubies, with which this City abounded, its Territories being full of Mountains out of which they got these precious Stones. It also produced fine Azure, good Bezoar, and what is called the fine Chrysal of the Levant. The People who inhabited S 2 here
here were those whom Ptolomy calls Comedi, and its Situation was on the Confines of India and of Toarestan.

It was in this Country that Alexander the Great saw thirty young Sogdian Lords going cheerfully to die, who sung and rejoiced as they were going to Execution; and demanding from whence their Joy proceeded, they answer'd, that the Honour of dying, and being restored to their Anceftors, by the Command of a King who was the Conqueror of all Nations, was the Cause why they rejoic'd, and bless'd so noble a Death. Alexander gave them their Lives, and asked them what Security they would give him of their Fidelity to him; they answer'd, they had no other to give than the Lives he had granted them, which they should always be ready to surrender to him whenever he demanded them: nor did they break their Words. Four of these Sogdians he put into his own Life-Guards, who were as faithful to him as his Macedonians who loved him most.

C H A P. VII.

The Moguls Hunting.

Genghis can being at Termes in the midst of the Winter, a Season of the Year that hinder'd him from prosecuting the War, he resolv'd to have a great Hunting-match, to keep his Soldiers in Action. In order to which, Prince Touschican the Master Huntsman of the Empire, being
being absent, he commanded the Nevian his Lieutenant to prepare all things necessary for hunting, and to extend the Chace as far as the Country they were in, and the remaining Part of the Winter would permit. The Nevian perform'd the Duty of his Employment, and took care to give notice to the Huntsmen. He directed them what Circumference of Ground they must encompass, and sent them away post to mark out the Bounds of it. After which, he order'd the Officers of the Army to follow the Huntsmen at the Head of their Troops, as soon as they could, and to go and take up their Quarters, that they might be in a readiness for the Chace, according to the known Orders which had been prescribed by the Emperor when he published the Laws concerning Hunting, and regulated the Manner of it.

So soon as the Officers had led their Soldiers to the Rendezvous, they ranged them round the Place encompass'd in the manner of a thick Hedge, sometimes doubling the Ranks about the Circle which the Huntsmen had marked out, by the Moguls called Nerke. They neglected not to tell them, tho' no Person was before ignorant of it, that it was as much as their Lives were worth to let the Beasts escape out of the Ring, which was about four Months March in Circumference, and enclosed a very great number of Groves and Woods, with all the Beasts that lived in them. The Center of this great Enclosure, whereunto all the Beasts must retire, was a Plain which the Huntsmen had chosen and marked out.

The Officers of the Chace immediately dispatched Couriers to the Lieutenant General of the Chace, to give him an account how things were disposed, and to know of him the Orders given.
given for their marching. The Lieutenant went himself to receive them from the Grand Can, and afterwards gave them to the Couriers, who immediately departed to carry them to the Hunting-Officers, after having well observed where the King's Quarters were, that they might more easily find them when they should be sent back thither again: Tho the King's Quarters were not fixed to be always in one Place, for he must advance according as his Troops moved; but as they always moved on in the same Line, whatever Change of Place there was, yet one could not chuse but find him.

Abulfarag. P. 447.
The Couriers had no sooner brought the Orders to the Hunting-Officers, but they communicated them to the Captains. Then the Kettledrums, Trumpets, and Horns sounded the general March, which being heard throughout the Circle, the March began every where at the same time and in the same Order; that is to say, the Soldiers marched very close together, and always towards the Center, driving before them the Beasts, like Shepherds driving their Flocks. They had their Officers behind, who observed them; and they were all well armed, as if they had been going on some martial Expedition. Yet altho they had their Helmets of Iron, their Crosslets of Leather, and their Bucklers of Wicker, with their Scimeters, Bows, and Quivers full of Arrows, Files, Hatchets, Clubs, Cords, and every thing even to the Thred and Pack-needle; it was forbidden them to kill or wound any Animal, whatever Violence the Beasts offer'd to them. There were severe Punishments decreed to those who should make use of their Arms against the Beasts: It was only
only permitted them to shout and hollow, to fright and hinder them from passing the Enclosure, for the Emperor had so ordain'd.

Thus they marched every day, hunting the Beasts towards the Center, and encamped every night. The military Duty was not neglected for all this. The Watch-word was given every evening, and there were Troops order'd to keep guard, and Centinels, who were duly relieved by others. Those who slept, or did not exactly perform their Duty, were punish'd. They were sometimes alarm'd on purpose. In fine, all that is practised in War was here punctually observed.

The March was not interrupted by any difficulty for some weeks; but a River which the Troops from some of the Quarters could not ford, hindering them, they made a halt, and gave notice to the rest, to the end they might always march in the same Order together. Those who were obliged to pass the River, drove the Beasts over it, which swam across; and then pass'd it themselves upon round Pieces of Hides, which they bound together with Cords. Several Soldiers being seated on one of these Bundles of Leather, each of which was tied to a Horse's Tail, the Horse drew it across the River, following a Person who swam before.

Having thus pass'd over this River, their Zebeby in March was no more interrupted, but they went Taric Al- always in an equal Distance from the Center. coulafa, And now the Circle lessening, the Beasts began to find themselves press'd; and, as if they had been sensible that they were beset, some ran amongst the Mountains, others into the Valleys that were most obscure; others, without minding to go in the Paths and Roads, rush'd into
into the Forests and Thickets, from whence they soon after fled, scenting the Huntsmen, flying elsewhere to seek a secure Shelter. The Holes and Burrows were all filled; but they retreated thither in vain, for they open’d them with Spades or Mattocks, and even made use of Fences: so that the Beasts finding themselves so press’d, were obliged to come out and go farther. But wanting room, the Compass of Ground still growing less and less for them, the different kinds of Beasts began to mix with one another, so that some became furious, and toil’d the Soldiers greatly; and it was not without much trouble that their Shouts, and the Sound of the several Instruments drove them away.

A great number of Beasts being fled to the Mountains, Parties of Huntsmen and Soldiers were detached to drive them thence; which was not done without much Difficulty, they often resisting, and it being not permitted the Soldiers to wound them. Other Parties descending the Precipices, which served for a Retreat to some certain Animals, had no less trouble to put them to flight; yet there was not a Cave or Wood in which they left one Beast. During this time, the Couriers went continually from every different Quarter to advertise the Grand Can of all that past in the Chase, and to give him News of the Princes, several of whom, Huntsmen-like, shared of the Diversion, which the several Motions and Confusion the Beasts were in, gave them in the Chase. The Emperor, who had something else in view besides the Pleasure of these Sports, went often himself to observe the Troops, to see whether his Orders were exactly follow’d, and they were not remiss in their Duty.
Genghizcan the Great.

The Space of Ground growing each day less and less, and the wild Beasts being unable to get farther, leap'd upon the Weakest, and tore them in pieces. But their Fury did not last long; for being chafed on every side, and beginning to have no room left but that Spot of Ground where they could be seen all together, the Lieutenant of the Master-Huntsman caused the Drums and Timbrels to be beat, and all the other kinds of Instruments to be play'd upon: all which, join'd with the Shouts and Cries of the Huntsmen and Soldiers, so affrighted the Beasts, that they lost all their Fierceness. The Lions and Tygers grew gentle, the Bears and wild Boars, like the most timorous Beasts, seem'd cast down, and amazed.

Then the Grand Can seeing all these Animals together in a little Space of Ground, which the Moguls call Gerke, order'd them to prepare themselves to march into it. He enter'd the first, with the Sound of Trumpets, holding in one Hand his naked Sword, and in the other his Bow. He had his Quiver full of Arrows hanging cross his Shoulder, and was attended by some of his Sons, and all his General Officers. He himself began the Slaughter, striking the fiercest Beasts, of which some became furious, and endeavour'd to defend their Lives. At last he retreated to an Eminence, seating himself upon a Throne which was prepared for him; and from thence he observed the Strength and Agility of the Princes his Children, and all his Officers who attack'd the Beasts. Whatever danger they ran, yet no one avoided it, or gave back, but rather show'd more Eagerness, well knowing that the Grand Can by this would judge of their Merit. All the young Soldiers, after the Princes and Lords, enter'd
enter'd into the Gerke, and made a great slaughter of the Beasts.

Then Genghizcuan's Grandsons, follow'd by several young Lords of the same Age, present'd themselves before the Throne, and by a Speech made after their manner, desired the Emperor to give the Beasts that remained their Lives and Liberty; which he granted them, praising the Valour of his Troops, who were immediately dismissed, and sent back to their Quarters. At the same time the Beasts which had escaped the Scimiters and Arrows, seeing themselves no longer surrounded, got away, and regain'd their Woods and Dens. Thus the Hunting at Termed ended, which lasted four Months, and had continued much longer, if it had not been fear'd that the Spring would surprize them whilst employ'd in these Sports, when the War must be prosecuted. At length the Spring of the Year 1221. drew near, and the Cariziane Troops being already arrived, they had not a long time to rest; for Genghizcuan put himself at the Head of his Troops about the end of March, to pass over the Oxus; and afterwards went towards Bahtriana, where the Sultan Gelateddin had got an Army together.
C H A P. VIII.

The Mogul Generals Expedition to Nifa, Caendar and Damegane.

Before the Hunting began the Emperor had sent a Reinforcement of twenty thousand Men of his best Troops to Hubbe Ne-vian, and Suida Behadeur, the better to enable them to succeed in the Enterprizes he design'd they should undertake the next Year. These two Generals were on the Northern Confines of Corassana, when they received their Master's Orders. Whilst they waited for the Reinforcements he was to send them, which were now on their March thither, they divided the Troops they already had, and Hubbe went towards Mazendran, and Suida took the Road to Helvas.

After they had ravaged both these Countries, they returned into Corassana, where Suida remain'd watching a Mahometan Lord, whose Name was Ainangecan, who was one of Sultan Mehemed's Officers, and molest'd the Moguls with some Troops he had got together, and often broke their Measures. Suida found means to oblige him to fight; but the Event prov'd unfortunate to the Moguls, for they were beaten and put to Flight with their Leader. Whilst the Mahometan Lord was pursuing them, he met near Nacshewan a Brigade of Tartars who were going to retire into that Place. He fell
fell upon them with his Cavalry, and drove
them into the Ditch, where they were all
drown'd. *Ainangecan* by this Exploit got some
Reputation. He alarm'd the Country so, that
they dared not refuse him Tribute. Some of the
Sultan's Troops who were disbanded, and lived
in the Woods, went and join'd him. He march'd
to *Nisa*, the Governour of which was gone to
*Meccha*, and got of his Lieutenant the Tax-Mo-
ney of the Year 1221, which he made use of to
furnish what was needful for his little Army.
In the mean time, the Reinforcements, which
the *Mogul* Generals expected, arrived, led by
*Jafer* Nevian, and *Irca* Nevian, who each of
them commanded ten thousand Men. *Ainangecan*
was no sooner informed of it, but he retired
to the Mountains.

The City of *Nisa* being a Hindrance to the
Conquest of *Corassana*, of which it was a Part,
*Jafer* and *Irca* Nevian had Orders to reduce
that first. There was given them for a Lieu-
tenant General, an old experienced Captain,
named *Balouish*, who had the Command of
the Van-Guard. When the *Moguls* had inve-
ted the Place, before they began the Assualt,
they sent to offer very reasonable Terms to the
Lieutenant who commanded in the Governour's
Abstinence. He did not absolutely reject their
Proposals; but during the Treaty some of the
Inhabitants imprudently shot at the *Moguls*,
and *Balouish* being struck by an Arrow in the
Breast, fell down dead. This Accident, join'd
with the Refusal they made to surrender the
City, excited the *Moguls* to revenge the Death
of their General. *Suida Behadeur* press'd the
two Nevians to begin the Siege, and had Ma-
terials brought to the Camp for building twenty
great Engines to batter the Place.
Genghizcan the Great.

The City of Nisa was situate, in the thirty ninth degree of Latitude, in Corassana, on the Confinest of the Defart. It had in times past served as a Frontier Town to the Turks and Persians; and some say it was built by Darius Hystandes King of Persia, whom the Turks called Guischtasbe. Sultan Mehemed usurped this City from the younger Children of a Prince named Nafreddin, who was Sovereign of it. He caused the Citadel to be pull'd down, and by his Order it was sow'd with Corn. But he afterwards permitted the Inhabitants to rebuild it; and it being a Place well fortify'd, they hoped it could hold out a long time. Schicardus, a Minister of State to the deceased Sultan, had brought into this Place all that he had most valuable, and was retired hither with his Son, and several Carizmeans who chose to follow him.

When the Siege was form'd, and the Engines fixed in the proper Places on all sides, they began the Battering of the City. The Befieged defended themselves with all the Courage imaginble; and throwing from their Walls abundance of Wild-Fire, the Befiegers, that they might be able to approach nigh enough, caused their Slaves to carry on their Backs great Pieces of Wood, called Haracas, which were cover'd with wet Skins. They pursu'd their Assaulits day and night; and at last, after fifteen days Siege, they made a Breach, which the Befieged were not able to repair. In the night they seiz'd the Walls, from whence the Befieged could not repel them; and the next day, being Masters of the Place, they went into all the Houses, making the Inhabitants go out of them into a Plain, to suffer the Chastisement they had reserved for them. The unfortunate Vic-
Victims were no sooner assembled in the Plain; but the Mogul Army surrounded them, to hinder their retreating to the Mountains. Then they shot a great number of Darts and Arrows upon them, with which they were overwhelmed, and were even more miserable than the Beasts at the Chace of Terned, some of which escaped Death; but these poor People all perished, and were left either dead or mortally wounded in the Field, to serve for Food to the wild Beasts and Fowls of Prey. 'Tis reported that there were this day seventy thousand Persons killed, of the Natives, Strangers, and Peasants who had took shelter in this City. As for the Minister Schehabeddin and his Son, they were put to death after another manner; they were led in Chains to the Nevians, who caused the Coffers to be open’d in which were the Vizier’s Treasures; and after the Nevians had taken out all that was in them, they caused the Heads of the Father and Son to be struck off. At this day there is to be seen Schehabeddin’s Tomb in a Place called Hafina.

Three days after the Moguls had taken and plunder’d Nisâ, they went to besiege the Citadel of Caendar. This Place was accounted the strongest in Coraffana, and was in the Road from Nisâ to Nischabour. They were desirous to gain this Place, not only as it was a hindrance to their conquering the rest, but also because they were informed that Nezameddin, one of the greatest Lords of that Kingdom, was retired thither with all his Riches. In truth, Mehemed Nisâvi, the Author of the History of the Life of Sultan Celaleddin, to whom this Place belonged, (tho he took upon him only the Title of Governor of this Place under the Sultan) has writ, that Nezameddin, some days
days before the Arrival of the Enemies there, visited this Place, and esteeming it almost impregnable because of its Situation, said to him, *We will wait the Tartars coming here.* Notwithstanding which, this Lord, when he saw they attack’d it on the weakest side, was so frightened that he desired the Governour to let him down with Ropes into the Plain, at a Place where the Besiegers could not perceive him: which Mehemed Nisavi did, and Nezameddin by his good Fortune retired elsewhere.

The Besiegers batter’d the Place a long time; but the Besieged made so brave a defence, that at last the Mogul General, being sensible of the Strength of the Citadel, despair’d of taking it with the Troops they had, and so resolved to raise the Siege, and were content only to send a Trumpeter to demand of the Governour Clothes, and other things of which the Soldiers stood in need. Mehemed Nisavi thought it was better to gratify them than to provoke them to continue the Siege, by refusing what they asked; he therefore caused all things to be looked for that the City could afford proper to send them. But the difficulty was to find Officers that would venture to accompany those who carried this Present; because it was believed that the Moguls and Tartars were cruel enough to revenge themselves on the Officers they should get in their power, for the shameful Retreat they saw themselves reduced to make. After a great many Persons had refused the Employment, two venerable old Men presented themselves; and having recommended their Children to their Fellow-Citizens, put themselves at the head of those who carried the Present. But they were no sooner carried before the Generals, and had presented what they...
they brought, but the Moguls were really so bafe as to imbrue their Hands in the Blood of these old Men. At laft the Siege was raised, and the Country ravaged by the two Nevians. After which, Suida himself came to meet them, and they all three went to Hubbe Nevian, who was busied on another Expedition. They marched by the Desart and other Roads to Damegan, to attack it, which was a considerable Town situate in thirty fix degrees and twenty minutes of Latitude.

They had not much trouble to take it, because all the rich Men and Nobility were retired with their best Effects into the Woods and Mountains which at some distance encompass’d the City. It was situate in a vast Plain, water’d by many Brooks of clear wholesome Water, which sprung out of the Rocks. These Streams were for their Excellency called the Water of Cosroes, because that King of Persia convey’d them by fine Aqueducts into this City, and would always drink of them, in whatsoever part of his Empire he resided. It was in the Orchards and Gardens of Damegan those Apples grew that were so much esteem’d for their Beauty and Taste, which they carried in former Ages into the Parthians Country to grace the Tables of the Rich and Great.

* From Damegan, which the Moguls found quite deferted, and nothing left to content their Avarice, they went before Amol, which they easly reduced, as also several other Towns in the Eastern Tabarestan, which was part of the antient Hircania. The City of Amol was

* Some have called Comas or Comifene the Province of which Damegan was the Capital,
in thirty six degrees and thirty five minutes of Latitude. It was in this Country that Thales-
tris Queen of the Amazons, came to visit Alex-
ander the Great. She was attended by three
hundred Women, and staid thirty days with
the Macedonian Hero; and tho' at first sight she
found not his Person answerable to the Repu-
tation he had gain'd, yet at last she told him that
she thought him worthy to give Heirs to her
Kingdom.

C H A P. IX.

The taking of the Fortress of Ylale. The
Captive of the Queen Turcan-Catun,
The Mother of Sultan Mehemed. The
Conquest of the Cities of Re, Com, and
other Places in the Persian Hircania.

Hubbe Nevian on his part made an Expedition no less famous and successful
than that of the other Generals. He
reduced not only the Western Part of Tabarestan, which is called Mazendran; but he even
seized upon the Sultan's, who was retir'd
there with her immense Riches, which was
one of the things Genghizcan most passionately
wish'd for. It is true, the Emperor gave him
the Informations and Instructions of which he
flood in need for this Expedition; for this
Prince, whose Vigilance was such that nothing
could escape his Knowledge, having Spies or
Correspondents in every Place, who gave him
T
intelligence of all that past, had by the means of one of his Spies, learn'd that the Queen Mother was retired into the Fortres of Tiale: he presently dispatch'd a Courier to Hubbe, to acquaint him with it, giving him leave to run all hazards to take this Place, and to borrow, if there was occasion, Forces of the other Generals.

Hubbe fail'd not to execute his Prince's Orders. He besieged this strong Place in Form; but he had for three Months batter'd it in vain, when the Grand Can being informed of the Condition the Place was in, and thence concluding that he might more easily reduce it by Famine, order'd Hubbe to cause a strong Wall to be built without side his Lines, with Gates to be kept shut in the Night, and open in the Day, and to take care that Guard was strictly kept in all Places, that the Place should receive no Succours. These the Emperor's last Orders were as punctually executed as the first, and the Citadel received no kind of Succours. Yet three Weeks more pass'd, and the Governor had no thoughts of yielding; but boasted, as they learn'd from the Deserters who came over to them, that he stood not in need of any thing. But this was a false Report, for the Place had wanted Water a long time, and one part of the Garifon and Inhabitants were already dead with Thirst, and all other sorts of Provisions grew by degrees extremely scarce, and at last entirely fail'd; so that the Queen was forced to capitulate.

This Want of Water past in the Country for a Miracle, because this Place was always known to be better furnish'd with it, than any other in Mazendrene, Rain commonly falling there every day; and yet there fell not one Drop during
Genghizcan the Great.

An Dom 1221.

Heg 618.

Mog. The Horse.

ring the whole Siege. They therefore said publicly that it was a Judgment of God to punish the Queen for having unjustly put to death so many Princes and Kings. And what confirmed the Mahometans in their opinion of this Drought being miracular, was, that the Place was no sooner surrender’d, but there fell such abundance of Rain, that the Cisterns overflow’d, and the Water ran out of the Gates of the Citadel in a Flood.

Hubbe Nevian knowing the Extremities to which the Place was reduced, would not grant any thing to the Queen but her Life; and he declared that he expected to have all things else left to his Discretion, and they were forced to yield to his Terms. So soon as the Moguls were enter’d the Place, they seiz’d of all the Queen’s Treasure, and treated this Princess as a Captive. They sent her to Genghizcan under a strong and safe Guard, with her Women and Grandchildren, and all the Lords of the Empire who had retired with her into the Fortrefs of Thale. One may say she was herself the Cause of her ill Fortune, or rather that the Hatred she bore her Grandson Gelaleddin ruin’d her: For when she heard that Sultan Mehemed had at his Death declared him his Heir, she was even distracted. And some days before this Place was besieged, having found a way to retire with Safety to this young Prince, she would not make her advantage of this Opportunity, whatever Remonstrances her Officers made to her. They in vain represented, that Gelaleddin was her Nisavi’s Son’s Child, and consequently a Part of her self, and that his Valour might still dispute the Fate of his Father’s Kingdoms with Genghizcan. Instead of being persuaded by these Arguments, she did nothing but with all sorts of
Misfortunes to Gelaleddin, protesting she would never stoop to so base a thing, as she call'd it, as to put herself under the Protection of the Son of Aigeac, her mortal Enemy; and that she would even prefer any Slavery before all that Gelaleddin could do to serve her: that the lowest Condition, and the most rigorous Treatment would be more agreeable to her than all the Marks of Friendship she could receive from him.

These were the Sentiments of the implacable Queen Turcan-Catun; but God punished her, and to mortify her Pride, reduced her to suffer the most insupportable Treatment: For the Grand Can sometimes had her brought into his Presence when he was at Table, and threw her Bits of the Meat which he had eat of, as if she had been a Dog. What Mortification must this be to a Woman who but a little before could confer her Favours, and whose Sovereign Commands made the most part of the Kings and Princes of the East to tremble!

They put to death her Son's Grandsons before she arrived at Genghizcan's Court, and left only the youngest alive to comfort her; nay, it was not long before they tore that from her also: for one day, as she was combing his Head, a Person came and snatched him away from her Arms. She said she was more sensibly touched with this Loss than with any she had before felt, and her Grief for it was most bitter. He met with the same Fate as his Brothers. The young Princesses her Great Grand-daughters were not so unfortunate; not only their Lives were spared, but they were even married to Mogul Lords of the first Rank, and Prince Touschi espoused Can Sultane, who had before been married to Osman Can, Prince of Samarcand. This was the Fate of this great Queen, who was led, as
Genghizcan the Great.

in Triumph, some Years after, thro' the same An. Dom. 1221.
Countries where she had govern'd.

But to return to the Expeditions of Hubbe Nevan, after he left the strong Fortrefs of Tlale, he went directly to Rei, where Saida and the other Mogul Commanders came to join him in their return from Coraffana, of which they had reduced both the North and West Parts, excepting Nisshabour, which according to the Capitulation granted them by the two Generals, remain'd quiet till Gelaleddin took shelter there.

The City Rei, which was situate in Trac Agemi, or the Persian Hircania, five days Journey from Nisshabour, in thirty five degrees and thirty five minutes of Latitude, seem'd able to make a vigorous defence; but the Moguls easily took it. The Inhabitants were divided into two Factions: one of which followed the Doctrines of Abouhanifa, one of the four Doctors who were the Heads of the four pretended Orthodox Sects among the Mahometans; and the others were attached to the Opinions of Doctor Schafay. So soon as the Cady of the City, who was of the last Sect, was inform'd that Hubbe was coming, he went out to meet him with the Chief of his Sect, and offer'd him the Place in the Name of all Schafay's Sectaries. Hubbe accepted this Offer with Joy, promising to spare all that were of that Belief. By this means he enter'd without Trouble into the City by two Gates, of which the Faction of Schafay were Masters. But the other Party had fortify'd themselves, and made some Resistance, more out of Hatred to the Schafaites, than to the Moguls themselves. But General Hubbe forced them to yield, and, induced by the ill Opinion the Cady had created in him of the Sect.
The History of

An. Dom. 1221.
Heg. 618.
Mog. The Horsa.

Sec of Abouhanifa, put them almost all to death; so that not above one half of the Inhabitants of Rei were left alive.

Before this, Hubbe imagining he had not Troops sufficient to take this Place, sent to Suida, who soon came and join’d him. These two Generals remain’d some time at Rei, invited by the Beauty of that City, which was one of the four most considerable in Yrac Ageri: the three others were Hamadan, Com, and Isphahan. So soon as the Season permitted to take the Field, they again parted; Hubbe marched to Hamadan, and Suida to Casbin. The first, before he marched to the City of Com, which was twenty Leagues off from Rei, encamped in a great Plain wherein it stood. This Plain was sixteen Leagues long, and as many broad. He summon’d the Town to surrender; and they made so little Resistance, that they might justly have deserved the Mercy which was granted the Places that open’d their Gates to him: But the Deputies of the Schasaites, having an implacable Hatred for the Hanafites, whom they called Rafezis, that is to say, Heretics, told Hubbe Nevian, whom they always accompanied, because he much confid’d in them, that the People of Com were very mutinous, at which one need not wonder, since they follow’d the Doctrines of Abouhanifa; and, in fine, they so incensed him against the Inhabitants of this City, that the Mogul General, under the pretext that one of his Orders had not been well observed, caused the greatest part of them to be kill’d or carried away Slaves. After which, Com was plunder’d.

This City was situate in thirty four Degrees and forty five Minutes of Latitude, about the middle of the way between Casbin and Isphahan. Altho

Abulfeda, p. 199.
Genghizcan the Great.

Altho this Place had been very much defaced, it has been since perfectly repair'd, some Kings having kept their Court there; and there are still to be seen the Tombs of two Kings of Persia, Schah-Sefi and Schah Abbas II, which Tombs are very magnificent. Hubbe departed from Com, some few days after, and marched to Hadraman, having made Preparations for besieging it. So soon as he arrived in its Neighbourhood, and had made all things ready to storm this Place, all of a sudden he made a Peace with Magededdin who commanded it: At which the Army were the more surprized, because these People had appear'd more insolent than others who had not been pardon'd; nay, they had even committed some Outrages on the Moguls. The General's Enemies reported that he had suffer'd himself to be corrupted; but his Friends maintain'd that he had only follow'd the Grand Can's Orders.

Hamadan was situate in thirty five degrees Abulfeda, and ten minutes of Latitude, fifty Leagues distant from Com. 'Twas a great and populous Mirconde City, and had often been the Abode of Kings. At the time when the Moguls approached it, it had very strong Walls, and a good Castle, which is now in Ruins. Its Beauty at present consists in its Gardens and Fountains, which take their Rise from the Mountain Alvende, not far from this Place, and where there are to the number of a thousand Springs. The Persians say this City was built by Jemshide, one of the first Kings of the antient Persians.

Hubbe Nevian led his Troops thence to Dine-Mirconde, ver, Carmish, Sorwan, Halvan, Nehavende, and several other Towns in Trac Agemi, of which he render'd himself Master, and got great Riches. As for Suida Behadeur, who was gone

T 4
to besiege the City of Casbin, situate on the Confines of Deilem, he carry’d it by Storm, and put to the Sword fifty thousand Persons, in this City, in Deilem, and other the adjacent Countries. The Inhabitants of Ispahan by a quick Submision prevented the last Extremities of War. Casbin was situate in the thirty seventh Degree of Latitude, between Rei and Abhar. All these Expeditions were made in the Year of our Lord 1221, and of the Hegira 618. at the time when Philip Augustus was King of France, and Henry III. King of England. Genghizcan was then sixty seven Years old.

The End of the Third Book.
THE HISTORY OF GENGHIZCAN the Great, THE First Emperor of the Antient Moguls and Tartars.

The Fourth Book.
The Argument.

The Conquests of Genghizcan continued to make in his own Person, or by his Lieutenants in Hircania, Azerbijana or the Country of the Medes, and in one Part of Fars; that is to say, in the Kingdoms of the Parthians, Medes, and Persians: in the Provinces of India beyond the River Indus, in that of the Alans, and other Countries bordering on Muscovy. The Misery of the great Queen Turcan-Catun; and what past between the Sultan Gelaleddin her Grandson, and the Mogul Princes. The Punishment of Cande-Tangut, a Rebel who was Tributary to Genghizcan. And, lastly, the Death of Genghizcan, which happen'd soon after he had disposed of his Empire, and at the time when he was going to carry the War into the Southern China, called Mangi or Matchin, of which Nanquin is the Capital City.
BOOK IV.

CHAP. I.

Genghizcan's Expedition to the Country of Balc, antiently called Bactriana. The Siege of Talcan.

HILST Genghizcan made War in Transoxiana, and his Lieutenants subdued the Countries of the antient Parthians, Gelaleddin, Son of the King of Carizme, was in the Eastern Parts of Coressiana, called Balc, or Bactriana, where he got together some Troops. He dwelt many Weeks in the City of Balc, which was the Capital, as it had been in times past when it was called Bactra.

The favourable Reception the Inhabitants of this City gave Prince Gelaleddin, displeased Genghizcan, and conceiv'd in him a mortal Hatred against
against them. And this Emperor's Army being extremely formidable, how valiant for ever the Prince of Carizme was, yet he did not care to tempt his Fate by venturing a Battle, but remain'd in this Country only to fatigue the Moguls with the Troops he had with him: To accomplish which, he made use of all the Advantages the narrow Lanes and Passages, the Woods and Rivers could afford an able General, who found himself much inferior in Strength to his Enemy.

At last the Grand Can having secured all the Countries situate beyond the Oxus, caus'd his Army to pass over this River, and led them with all the speed imaginable to the City of Balk. The great Success of this fortunate Conqueror, the numerous Troops that follow'd him, and Fame, which magnifies every thing, all put together, soon determined the Inhabitants to open their Gates to him, without staying to feel his Fury. The great Lords of the Country who had retired thither, went out with the City Officers to meet him, and make their Submissions to him, carrying with them an infinite number of rich Presents. But he rejected their Offers, and said, That People who had so kindly received and entertain'd his Enemy, could not have a sincere Friendship for him, and that their Protestations were faithless. He recounted to them the Particulars wherein they had assist'd Gelaleddin: He mentioned the Troops they had rais'd for him even in their City, the Sums of Money they had furnish'd him withal to pay his Army: In fine, being fully informed by his Spies, how far they had assist'd Gelaleddin, he forgot not to remem-ber to them every Particular. Then he reproached them in this manner: Ought you not, said
Genghizcan the Great.

said he, to blush for shame, for having so little love for your natural Prince, and so little aver-
son to the Tyrants who have put him in irons? Is
it thus you ought to treat those, who, after having
ripp’d Amededdin your Sovereign of his Kingdoms,
have cruelly put him and his Son to death? Mean-
time, the Mogul Army marched to the City, and
the Inhabitants, knowing it was agreed to
open the Gates, did not shut them against the
Vanguard, which their Leaders would have go
into the City. So that the Emperor seeing him-
self Master of the Place, caused an Order to be
published, commanding all the Men immedi-
ately to go forth of the City into the Plain. They
obey’d, tho they were not ignorant what the
Moguls were used to do after their taking a City.
When they were all assembled, the Grand Can
Fadallah, caused the young People who were fit for Slaves
to be set in a Place apart, and order’d the grea-
test part of the old Men to be beheaded. Then
the City was plunder’d, and the Booty distrib-
uted according to the Mogul Law. The
Walls were beaten down, and the Castle de-
molish’d. The Mogul Army was greatly en-
riched by this City’s Ruin; for there were all
forts of Merchandize and Treasure in Balc,
because it had always been a Place of great
Trade. Moreover, it was full of Monuments
of exquisite Workmanship, and all things that
could serve to adorn so great a City, it having
been the Abode of many illustrious Persons
famous in all Arts, who had much contributed
to its Beauty. The publick Buildings were
spacious and regular. The Caravanferas, or
Inns to lodge the Caravans in, appear’d magni-
ificent, as did also the Colleges and Molques;
and, according to Mirconde’s Report, there
The History of

were no less than twelve hundred Baths or Hot-houses, in this City.

It was situate in thirty six degrees and forty one minutes of Latitude, in a most fertile Plain, four Leagues distant from the Mountains, and eight from the Oxus. The Country round it was planted with Sugar-Canes and Lemon-Trees. Schicardus assures us it was first built by Cayumaras, one of the Pischedaden Kings, who was the first that reign'd in Persia and Media. It was afterwards ruined by Semiramis, as Diodorus of Sicily reports, and repair'd by Loraspe the Father of Hydaspes, as Herodotus assures us, at the same that Nebuchadnebosfor ruin'd the City of Jerusalem. Its Suburbs were water'd by a River called Debas, which having run thro all the Country, discharges itself into the River Oxus, about twelve Leagues from the City. It is to this day one of the capital Cities of the Uzebecks, and has its particular Sovereign, who wants not Forces, as well as the other Princes of his Nation, to oppose the Persians when they make war with them.

After the Mogul Emperor had thus reduced the City of Bals to his Obedience, he sent Detachments out of his Army to India and Persia, and left a considerable part of his Troops in Transoxiana to keep it in awe, whilst he went to Tocaristan, to besiege the City of Talcan, which was but seven days Journey from Bals, and was esteemed the strongest City in all Asia for its Situation, it being built upon a very steep Mountain called Noorecoub. But he had but just began the Siege, when he had Infor-

* That is to say, the first of the Kings of Persia.
Genghizcan the Great.

An. Dom. 1221.
Heg. 618.
Mog. The Horse.

mation that the Sultan Gelaleddin, not finding himself in a condition to venture a Battel, was retired towards the strongest Places of Corasfana with what Forces he had been able to get together, and that it was believed he was already got to Nischarbour. On this News he detached sixty thousand Men to pursue him, and prevent his making any farther progresse; he join'd these with another Detachment of twenty thousand Men, whom he had a little before sent into Mazendane to recruit the Army of the Generals Hubbe and Suida, which when they first went on their Expeditions consisted of thirty thousand Moguls, and was now diminisht by the Loss of ten thousand. He gave the Command of this great Detachment to Prince Tuli, and order'd him to go and find out the Sultan Gelaleddin, and to besiege the City of Nischarbour, if he was still there; but if he was gone thence, to lay siege to Merou before he undertook any thing against Nischarbour or Herat, to the end he might weaken Corasfana as much as he possibly could, and so facilitate the conquering the rest of this Country, in which the other Generals had already taken some Towns.

Whilst Tuli went to execute his Father's Commands, Genghizcan planted the Engines before Talcum, which he vigorously attack'd, but the Besieged defended themselves with great Resolution. They answer'd his Engines with theirs, and threw Fire for Fire. All who were in the Place strove to outvie each other in Bravery; and having a great store of Ammunition, and Provisions of all sorts, they flatter'd themselves they should be able to hold out a long time. Besides which, the Besiegers had neither Ground nor Trenches to shelter them when
when they made their Attacks; they had only some Blinds to defend them from the Darts and Wildfire. The Besieged killed so great a number of them, that the Emperor's Army was considerably diminished. This Prince repented his having meddled with this Place, yet could not bear to be disappointed; and fearing he had not Troops enough to reduce it, he sent two Couriers, one after another, to Tuli, with Orders to return to him forthwith, without mentioning his Reasons for so doing: He only told him he recall'd him because of the excessive Heats which now began to be sensibly felt. In the mean time, the Grand Can made his Army rest for some Weeks, and took care they were well fed, which perfectly recover'd and put them in good heart.

He then called all the Engineers together, to consult with them of the means by which they might be able to reduce Talcum; but the Methods they proposed seeming to him very uncertain, he resolved to scale the Mountain on all sides, let the Danger be what it would, that so he might oblige the Besieged, being everywhere assaulted, to divide their Forces. In order to this, he caused to be made with all speed, a great number of Grappiling-Irons, long Nails, Hooks, Ladders, and Ropes, to ascend the Rock, and made many vain Attempts to scale it several times; for the Besieged, who kept on their Guard, received the Moguls with their usual Bravery, and kill'd a very great number of them. Yet Genghis can had them supported with so many sorts of Engines when they mounted the Ladders, that at last a great many Soldiers were got together on the top of the Mountain with their Arms, which they had fasten'd round them; which so

astonish'd
astonished the Befieg'd, that running hastily to
repulse them, they imprudently left some Posts
unguarded, of which the Moguls immediately
seized, and enter'd the Town. The Befieg'd
soon having notice of this Misfortune, returned
in Confusion to oppose their Enemies, and
drive them out; but the Moguls were too strong
for them, and put them all to the Sword: and
being animated by the Remembrance of the
Fatigues they had suffer'd for seven Monthspast,
which time the Siege had lasted, they exercised
all the Cruelties imaginable.

Talcan was situate between Merou and Bale, in thirty seven degrees and twenty five minutes of Latitude, and dependant on Tocareslan. The
first City of this Name, which had been here-
tofore very flourishing, was not standing in the
time of Genghiscan, and there was nothing left
to be seen of it but the Citadel, which a Prince
of Tocareslan had caus'd to be built on the top
of the Mountain Noçrecaùh, so called because of Abulfarag;
the Mines of Silver which it enclosed. This
Citadel being very large, they gave it the Ti-
tle of a City or Fortrefs, with the Name of
Talcan. Thus the Emperor took this Place
without Prince Tuli's Assistance, who did not
arrive before its Reduction. The Princes Ora-
tai and Zagatai also return'd from Carizone at
the same time; but Touschi was gone to his Go-
vernments. We shall now make mention of
what Tuli did during the seven Months that he
was gone from the Emperor.
Prince Tuli's Expedition against the Sultan Gelaleddin, Son of Sultan Mehemed, The Sieges of the Cities of Merou and Nischabour.

Prince Tuli was no sooner enter'd Corassana, but he sent Orders to twenty thousand Men, of whom we have spoke before, to hold themselves always in a readiness to join him in case of need. He sent word also to Habbe and Suida to come to him; and after having consulted with them about the Enterprizes he design'd to undertake, he sent them back into Persia, where their Troops were encamp'd.

Tis true, Gelaleddin had taken the Road to Nischabour with all the Troops he had, designing there to get such an Army together as should be able to resist the Moguls. For this purpose he flaid a whole Month in this City, having writ to the Governours of the Frontier Towns, and other Places which were still obedient to him, to send him all the Soldiers they could furnish; and order'd the Lords who in the Confusion his Empire now was in, had made themselves Masters of the Provinces they lived in, to come and join him with speed, with all the Troops they could possibly raise. He assured them in his Letters, that he would never think of what was past, but would con-
Genghizcan the Great.

confirm them in the Possession of the Governments they had gotten: and he thence dispatched Messenger upon Messenger to get his Orders perform’d.

Prince Tuli did not give him time to get a great Army together, but marched towards him with extraordinary Diligence. So soon as Geladeddin was inform’d of his being enter’d into Corassana, and that he was marching towards Nisshahour, he went out of this City, Nisavi in and it was as much as he could do, to conduct his Life of Geladed-
din, p. 88.

and the Troops he had with him in safety to the Fortrefs of Cabrera, where he received the News of Talcin’s being besieged. Tho Geladeddin was brave and wise, yet he was at this time almost distracted. He cursed his Fate, which seem’d now bent against him, and yielded himself up to Despair. He had an Inclination to shut himself up in Cabrera, and wait the Moguls coming; but the Governor persuaded him from this Design, representing to him, That a Prince of his Reputation and Merit ought not to shut himself up in Forts and Citadels, tho they were built on the Heads of the Twin-Stars, or Horns of Taurus or the Pleiades. These are the Words of the Histirion Nisavi.

This bold Remonstrance awaked the Prince’s Courage, who trait caused to be brought to him all the Money he had saved, to distribute to his Soldiers. After which, he went to the City of Boh, in the Province of Segestan, where he found one of the Officers of his Army who had escaped the Massacre of Balc, and he inform’d him of the Forces Genghizcan had with him before Talcin and in other Places, and told him it was believed he had near eight hundred thousand Men in pay, including the Garisons he had in the Cities. This News made Gelade-
eddin
leddin tremble, who comparing his own Weaknesses with the Enemy's Strength that pursued him, wished, says Marrakeschi, that thick Darkness would cover the whole World, and take place of the Light.

Tulican after a long March into Corassana, learn'd that Gelaleddin was gone from Nishabour, and therefore, according to the Emperor his Father's Orders, he took a Resolution to go and besiege Merou. So soon as it was known in this City that his Army approached, Factions and Dissentions began to arise. A general Council was held, where some, to support their Advice which was to yield, reason'd thus, that all the Countries and Places which had resisted, were entirely ruined; others, who were willing to defend the City, represented to the Assembly, to support their Opinion, the Cruelties executed on the Inhabitants of Balc, who had submit'ted. After many Disputes, the Muf'ty's Party, who were resolved to surrender the Place, carried it against the Cady's, who opposed it, and protest't against all that should be done contrary to the Interest of the City.

The Muf'ty's Party immediately sent Deputies to meet the Mogul General, who received them kindly, and granted them the Conditions they desired, which was, not to enter the City with more than seven thousand Men, on condition that the People should obey, and pay the Grand Can the yearly Tribute then to be agreed on. But it so happen'd during these Transactions, that a certain Turk named Bou-ga, who had been Captain of the Sultan Mehemed's Guides, knowing it was resolved by some to surrender the City, enter'd into it, and fully resolved to defend it. The Turcomans, whose number were considerable, supported him;
Genghizcan the Great.

him; and the Cady's Party, who wish'd no better, join'd with them. Bouga had for some days the absolute Command of all, and finding how sweet it was to govern a great People, resolved to spare nothing that could secure him in the Post which Fortune had raised him to. Therefore when Megir, a great Lord who had belong'd to the old Sultan's Court, a Man who had the greatest part of his Estate in that Country, and a Palace in the City, would have come into it, Bouga used all his Endeavours to keep him out; but that Lord enter'd in spite of him, and all the Cady's Party chose rather to obey him than Bouga, who was soon forced to quit a Station which he had found so agreeable in the few days he enjoy'd it.

Megir was the Son of a Lady whom Sultan Mehemed had loved, and afterwards given in Marriage to one of his Courtiers. He put himself at the Head of those who seem'd resolv'd to defend the Place; and notwithstanding the Mufry's Party opposed it, the Gates of the City were shut, and Preparations made to maintain a Siege. Mean time, Prince Tuli came up, and encamp'd before the Walls of the City, and dispos'd all things to assault it. He learned by some Prisoners that were taken and brought before him, the State of the Place, and promised Mirconde, himself to be soon Master of it, yet he found more Resistance than he expected. Megir tired the Besiegers with frequent Sallies, amongst which he made one so successful, that he cut above a thousand of the Grand Can's best Household-Troops in pieces. Tuli much regretted these brave Men, and to be revenged, gave a general Assault, which the Besieged sustaine'd with a most amazing Resolution, and the Moguls were repuls'd with Loss for twenty two days.
days together: in which time the Besieged were greatly weaken'd, and Megir finding that he should soon be overcome, chose to submit. Gemaleddin, one of the chief Men of the City, was of his opinion; and both having persuaded their Faction to it, sent great Presents to Tul, offering him the City. The Mogul Prince treated them better than they expected; for he gave them Protection for their Goods and four hundred of their Friends, on condition that they gave him a faithful account of all the Rich People in the City, which they did, giving him a Lift of them. After which, the Moguls enter'd the Place, and according to their usual Custom, made all the Inhabitants go forth of it, one part of whom they made Slaves of, and they cut the Throats of the rest. Tulican gave the Government of Merou to Ziaeddin, a Lord of that Country, who had done him considerable Services. But when the Mogul Prince was gone away from this City, Ziaeddin was kill'd by Barmaze his Lieutenant, and the Country fell again into Confusion.

The City of Merou, call'd also Schabigeban, was situate in thirty seven degrees and forty minutes of Latitude, to the Northward of another City called Merou Errourd, and from which it was but five Leagues distant. Schabigeban signifies King of the World; and this Name was given to the City because Sultan Malefsha, one of the greatest of the Seljukides, extremely loved it, by reason of its fine Situation, the Serenity of the Air, and the Fertility of the Ground. He had caused it to be built with design to make it the Place of his Residence, and accordingly past the greatest part of his Life in it, and died there, for whom they erected a most magnificent Tomb.
This City produced several learned Men, and Jacut assures us that he had seen there three publick Libraries, in one of which there were twelve thousand Volumes in Manuscript. Some will have it that this City was first built by Tahmuras, the fourth of the first Kings of Persia, called Pischedians; and others say it was built by Jamann, the Daughter of Artaxerxes Longimanus King of Persia. It was situate in a sandy Plain, which produced Salt. Three Rivers render'd it a delicious Place; and it was equally distant, that is, twelve days Journey, from Nischabour, Herat, Balk, and Bocara.

Since the Death of Sultan Mehemed, the Moguls under the Conduct of the Generals Hubbe Nevian and Suida Behadewr, had render'd themselves Masters of all the Western Parts of Corassana by taking a great number of Cities: But they had still left Nischabour in Peace, because at the beginning of their Expedition, as has been before related, they had made a Treaty with the Inhabitants of this City, who had sworn Fidelity to them. Nevertheless, when they saw Gelateddin, the Son of the Sultan their Master, appear in their Country, they were so touched with seeing this Prince wander from one Province to another, that they could not refrain from giving him some Assistance, and secretly furnish'd him with all the Refreshments of which his Troops stood in need; nay, they even gave him Money to raise Forces. But they took all the Precaution imaginable to hide what they did for him. And in effect, Tulcan came not to the knowledge of it; but by misfortune the Grand Can was inform'd of it by his Spies, and was so enraged, that he resolved that Hour to besiege Nischabour. He writ to Prince Tuli, who was then in the Eastern Parts of
of Coraffana, to lay aside all his other Designs, and go and besiege Nischabour, and make them feel the severest Chastisements that could be inflicted on rebellious Cities. On the receipt of these Orders, Prince Tulicau quitte the Country of Merou, of which he had just before taken the Capital, and went to Nischabour, the Inhabitants of which not hoping for any Pardon or Mercy, resolved to defend themselves to the last Extremity.

The Command of the Vanguard of the Moguls was given to Prince Tusar, who had brought the Troops from Mazendran; but this Captain, at his Arrival at Nischabour, had the ill Fortune to be wounded with an Arrow in the Navel in a Sally which the Inhabitants made upon the Moguls, and died of his Wound. This Accident obliged Tuli to take more care and precaution than he had before done to render his Enterprize successful. He defer'd the Siege for some days, because the Engines were not ready, and made his Army encamp to the Eastward of the City, near a Town call'd Toufchanjan. The Country round it was full of pleasant Springs and Trees, and here the Workmen could conveniently make Blinds, Battering-Rams, and other Instruments for War. So soon as all was ready, they batter'd the City with above twelve hundred Engines. The Besieged defended it like Lions; but after three days Siege the Moguls having perceived a secret Passage which the Ruins of a Wall falling down discover'd, enter'd by that Way, and surprized the Place, making a terrible Slaughter of the Inhabitants. They spent a Day and a Night in plundering this miserable City, and reduced to Slavery an infinite number of young People; nay, the greatest part of all those who escaped the
Genghizcan the Great.

... the Edge of the Sword, died underground in Caves and Vaults which they had made to save themselves in. In fine, all the City was destroy’d, and there was nothing left standing neither Mosque, Fortresses, Houles, Towers, nor Walls, all was razed to the very Foundations; and they levelled the Ground in such a manner, that if the History of Corassana may be credited, Horses might run over it without stumbling. It is also related that they spent twelve days in counting the Dead who belonged to the City, and that comprehending those who were slain in some other Places which belonged to Nishabour, where Tuli sent some of his Troops, ’tis computed that the Moguls kill’d to the number of seventeen hundred and forty seven thousand Persons, which seems altogether incredible, at least if they do not comprehend in this number all those who perished in the Ruins, and in some other Towns which were dependant on Nishabour, and taken at the same time.

After the Destruction of this City, Tulican received an Order from the Emperor his Father to repair to him. Nishabour had often been the Capital City of Corassana. One Historian pretends that it took its Original from Sapor King of Persia, who had caused it to be built, and named it the Closet of the East, because in his time it was full of all sorts of Curiosities, which its great Trade drew into it. And tho the Moguls had put it into the Condition we have just before related, yet in some time after it was restored to its former Greatness, being rebuilt, and all things done that could contribute to adorn a City, and the finest Water in the World, which sprung from the neighbouring Mountains was brought into it by Canals. It is out
out of these Mountains that they get the Oriental Turquoise Stones, which are called in the Levant, Pirouze Nyshabouri, to distinguish them from others. This City was but twelve Leagues from Tous, or thereabouts, where the celebrated Naffir Eddin Tousi, a great Astrologer, and Author of certain Ephemerides, was born, as likewise many other learned Men. This Naffir puts the Situation of these two City in thirty seven degrees of Latitude. Tous was only a little more to the South East of Nyshabour. The City of Tous was at the same time ruined by the Moguls, but it was rebuilt a few Years afterwards, and has been since this Misfortune one of the most beautiful and most celebrated Cities in the Persia Empire. Ismael Selevi, the first King of the Family of Selevi's, that is to say, of the Descendants of Sebei-Seff, who at that time reign'd in Persia, caused it to be enclosed with strong Walls, and three hundred Towers. This King then made it the Capital of Corassana, by the Name of Meschebed; and as several other Princes before him had chose to have their Tombs there, so he chose to have his: and many of his Successors, after his Example, have been buried there.

When Prince Tuli had finished the Sieges of Nyshabour and Tous, he led his Army before Herat, whither he had been told that Gelaeddin was retired; but it was a false Information, for this Prince had taken the Road to Boff, a City in the Province of Segastan, and had no thoughts of retiring to Herat, which was governed by a Mahometan Lord, who tho he was his Subject, yet was his Enemy: This Lord's Name was Schamseddin. He had surprized this City in the Absence of Emin Melic the Sultan's Uncle, who possesse'd this Country by Agreement.
Genghizcan the Great.

And this Schamsheddn was not the only Person who had been guilty of these sort of Usurpations; for the greatest part of the Governors had done the same thing in the other Provinces during the Confusion the Empire was in. And thus Sultan Gelaleddin was despoiled of almost all his Provinces.

The Mogul General arrived at Herat in twelve days, and immediately laid Siege to the City. Schamsheddn defended it courageously, and there past not a day in which he did not come to Blows with the Moguls. And tho this Lord was not generally beloved because of his Usurpation; yet the Advantages he daily gained over the Befiegers, established his Authority, and gave them hopes of good Success: But the eighth Day of the Siege he was kill’d in fighting, and the Inhabitants of Herat believing that no other amongst them was so well able to sustain the Charge against the Moguls, resolved to yield, and Deputies were sent to Tului, to make Proposals. The Resistance he had already met with before this City, and the Bravery of the General, whose Death he knew nothing of, made him condescend to Terms with them, after he was well assured that Gelaleddin was not in the Place. He required nothing of the Inhabitants but to submit themselves, and swore that no Man in the City should receive damage either in his Goods or Person, and told them they should every Year pay to the Grand Can but one half of the Tribute they used to pay to Sultan Mehemed. When the Moguls enter’d the City, they exactly observed this Capitulation with respect to the People of Herat; but the Garison, and all the Officers belonging to the Sultan, who were to the number of twelve thousand, were put
300

The History of

An. Dom. 1221.
Heg. 618.
Mog. The Horse.

to death. Tulcan made Aboubequir Governor of this City, and caused an Oath of Fidelity to be administert'd to the Inhabitants, and with sixty thousand Men went for Tulcan, whither his Father had recalled him.

Herat has always past for a very strong City, and at present serves for a Rampart to the Persians, and prefers their Frontiers against the Uzbecks. It is situate on the River Herivoude, in the thirty fourth degree and thirty minutes of Latitude, within two Leagues of a Mountain which had on its Top a celebrated Place, where the Persians with their Magi's went to worship the Fire, and perform the other Rights and Ceremonies of their Religion; which some Worshippers of Fire, whom the Persians call Guebres, or Antefhperes, to this day perform in a Place built out of its Ruins.

That particular Country in which the City of Herat stood, was the Aria of the Antients. Alexander the Great was its Founder, according to Mirconde's Opinion; and it was no small Honour to Herat, that it was the native Country of this illustrious Author, who has given the Description of it in the Oriental History, which he composed in the Persian Language, entitled Raouzestesafa, that is to say, the Garden of Pleasure. The City and Country is very populous. The Inhabitants are for the most part honest and courteous People, and the Air is excellent.

Herat the Birth-place of Mirconde.
Genghizcan the Great.

C H A P. III.

The Sieges of the Cities of Bamian, Caudahar, Frontier-Towns of India on the side of Persia.

After the taking of Talcan, the Emperors held several Councils with Tulpian, still waiting for News of Sultan Gelleddin, and the Troops whom he had sent towards India, to search for him, if he came that way, or take such Places as might be useful to his farther Designs.

The Sultan Gelleddin stayed long enough in the City of Bost to raise Troops; but when he learnt the Strength of the Mogul Army, he found himself in a great Dilemma, and knew not what course to take, whether to resist or fly, both appearing equally dangerous. At last the extreme Danger he was in awakend his Courage, and he resolved to oppose his Enemies, even to Death. Thus determined, he departed from Bost, endeavouring to get into Gazna before the Moguls could arrive there to take it; so he led his Army, which consisted of about twenty thousand Men, towards Zebulistan, without staying in any Place by the way, and arrived safely at Gazna, which was twenty four days Journey from Bost.

Gaza, which Ptolemy places in Quirman, was Abulfeda, situate in thirty three degrees and five minutes p. 219.
of Latitude, and had always been a City of great Trade for all sorts of Merchandize brought from Zagatai, Persia and India. It had been the Capital of the Sultan Mahr- moud Gazyavi's Empire, the most potent Prince of all the East in the time that the Seljukides began to make any Figure. A Lord called Kerber Melic commanded in this City, during the Absence of the Sultan Gelaleddin; but the Misfortunes of the Sultan his Father had much alienated the Minds of the People, so that there remain'd but little Obedience in the People of Gazyia, as well as in most other Places. For which reason, some time before this Prince's Arrival in that Place, there had been many Disturbances caused by the Divisions amongst the great Lords. Yet the Sultan Gelaleddin was received in Gazyia with all the Affection that a People who passionately loved their King, could testify at his Return after a long Absence. The Author who relates this, says, That the Inhabitants were as much overjoy'd at his Arrival, as the Mussulmen at the end of the Ramad'an, when the new Moon, which puts an end to the Fast, appears. This Prince would not mix Sorrow with their Joy, by punishing those who had been guilty of Crimes against him, which he might justly have done; but he dispelled his Resentments, and defer'd till another time the Punishment of their Crimes.

The Grand Can having information that Gelaleddin was at Gazyia, halt'en'd his March, that he might surprize him; but he was flop'd in Zabulistan by the Garison of Bamian, which he hoped to take without Opposition, but it cost him more time and trouble than he imagined.
Genghizcan the Great.

The Governor absolutely refused to surrender, whatever Summons were sent him, and protested that notwithstanding all the Moguls Mean-aces, he would defend the Place to the last Drop of its Blood; since it was intrusted to him. This Answer obliging Genghizcan to besiege it in form, he had many Difficulties to surmount, because the Inhabitants, having long expected to be attack'd, had ruined all the Country round about the City, to deprive the Enemy of all means of Subsistence. The very People of the Province had carried away all the Stones, and other things that might be of use to the Besiegers; so that for four or five Leagues round Bamian there was nothing to be found that could be of any Service to the Moguls. They had just begun to batter the Place, when a Courier arrived in the Camp from the General who commanded the Forces Genghiz-can had sent towards India, to inform him of the total Defeat of his Army by Gelaeddin, chy, p. 16, which happen'd in the following manner.

Two or three days after Gelaeddin was got into the City of Gazna, he learnt that there were Moguls in that Neighbourhood who besieged the City of Candahar, and had Orders to watch his Motions. This News was the more afflicting to him, because he could not relieve the Place; but he knew at the same time that Emin Melic, the Son of his Uncle by the Mother's side, was not far off from him. This Lord was come out of Herat, not only to watch the Moguls, whom he saw every where victorious, but also to seize of some Places situate in the Mountains in the Country of Segestan, which were very necessary to be secured, for the Preservation of Herat. In his Absence, Schamsed-din,
The History of

An. Dom, 1221.
Heg. 618.
Mog. The Horse.

Emin Melic had with him ten thousand Turkisli Horse, well mounted, and well equipp'd, all resolute Men. Gelaleddin sent to compliment him, and let him know that he desired him to come to him since they were so near one another, and that if he would come, it must be quickly, for there was no time to lose. Emin Melic made no scruple to go and offer him his Service. The Sultan shew'd him all the Demontrations of Friendship and Confidence in him, and to try his Sincerity, told him, that a Body of Moguls were now before Candahar, and that he design'd to go and raise the Siege. Emin Melic contented to join his Troops with the Sultan's. And thus agreed, the next day they began their March, conducted by skilful and trutliy Guides, having sent a Man for, before they set out, to the Governour, to give him notice that he should be relieved. This Person made such haste, that he arrived at Candahar before the Citadel was taken. There he learnt by some Spies the State of things; that the Moguls were no ways afraid of any Succours arriving, and the Befiged still made a vigorous Defence, but that they were not able to do so much longer.

Gelaleddin held a Council to consider what was to be done; and it was resolved to attack the Enemies in the dead of the night. In order to which, the Troops marched without being discover'd, and surprized the Moguls who were besieging the Citadel, having already taken and plunder'd the Town. They finding themselves briskly attack'd by Men who appear'd to be brave, and not knowing their Number, and at the same time by the Governour, who
Genghizcan the Great.

who came out of the Citadel upon them with all his Garrison, suffer'd themselves, as one may say, to be kill'd without making any resistance; so much Power has Fear and Surprize over the Minds of Men, that it can intimidate the most Daring. In a few Hours the Town was seen full of dead Bodies of Moguls and Tartars; and Gelaleddin having had the Prudence to post Troops at all the Avenues of the City, few of those who thought to find Safety by Flight, escap'd the Sword of the Carizmeans. All the Mogul Army that was at Candahar perished. The Soldiers of the Sultan and Emin Melic, got the Booty the Enemies had acquir'd in their March thither; and had been greatly enriched, had they not been obliged to restore to the Inhabitants one part of what the Moguls had taken from them, when they plunder'd the City. After this good Success the Sultan endeavour'd to animate his Soldiers with further hopes. He repair'd Candahar, and return'd to Gazna, which he enter'd in triumph. Emin Melic engaged himself afresh to him, and professed never to abandon him, for which reason their Troops did not separate. And this Lord ever after shew'd himself a good Relation, and a faithful Servant to Gelaleddin.
Prince Coutoucou's Expedition against the Sultan Gelaleddin. The Continuation of the Siege of Bamian.

Abulsarag.
p. 293.

The News of this Defeat was carried to Genghizcan by a Captain who had escaped from Candahar. This Prince was extremely affliced, and resolved to be revenged as soon as possible. In order to which, he caused the Attacks to be redoubled; but not being able to take Bamian so soon as he desired, he determin'd to send Tulican against Gelaleddin with an Army of eighty thousand Men. He was just going to send away this Detachment out of his Army, when another Courier arrived, to advertise him of the Revolt of the Country of Herat, in breach of the Treaty they had made with Prince Tulican. The Emperor was greatly enraged: He order'd this Prince to be called before him, and blamed him for not having put to the Sword all the Inhabitants of the City of Herat. 'I forbid you, said he, ever to show any mercy to my Enemies without express Order from me. Know henceforward, that Compassion resides only in mean Souls; 'tis only Rigour that keeps Men in their Duty, and a vanquished Enemy is not tamed, but will ever hate his new Master. Then he bid him go and apply himself to the Duties of his Post as usual, and named Coutouc...
Genghizcan the Great.

Not Neuvian to go against Geladeddin. Contou-

departed at the Head of eighty thousand

Men.

After his Departure, the Grand Can caused
a Mount of Earth to be cast up before the City
in a Place where he designd'd to make the fiercest
Assault; and they by his Order built Towers of Wood, the Height of which was equal to
that of the Walls of the Place, to the end he
might more conveniently incommode the Be-
fiegers with his Engines which were placed on
the Platforms. He fear'd the Fire which the
Befieged threw, left it should burn his Towers
and Machines; but an Engineer promised to
preserve them, provided he would permit him to
have every day kil'd as many Cows and Horses
as would cover the Works with their wet Skins,
which the Emperor gave him leave to do; and
by this means the Fire thrown from the City
had no effect, because it was extinguished, or
to the Ground, so soon as it came against
the Skins, to which it would not stick or fasten. The Engines in the City did not fail
to cast down a great many of those of the Mo-
guls; and the Resistance of the Befieged being
very obstinate, because their Walls were ex-
ceeding strong, the Befiegers at last began to
be in want both of Stones and Wildfire: so
that they ceased for some time to attack the
City, because they were obliged to send far-
ther off for Flint-stones, Mill-stones, and oth-
er things proper to batter the Walls, and
slung out of the Engines. When they renew'd
their Attacks, the Befieged made such furious
Sallies upon them, that they overthrew whole
Squadrons of them, and ruined their Towers
and Engines; and it is certain, that if the Em-
peror
The History of

An. Dom. 1221.
Heg. 618.
Mog. The Horse.

The Emperor had not had so vast an Army, he had been obliged to raise the Siege.

He was just returned to his Tent from making an Attack, when a Courier arrived from Contoucou Nevian, who informed him that he was within a day's Journey of Gelaleddin, and gave him a particular Account of his March, and the Order he had made the Army to march in, to avoid several Ambuscades that had been laid for him; and likewise in what manner the Enemy was encamp'd, of the number of their Troops, and in fine, of all that he had learnt by his Scouts. When the Grand Can understood that the Sultan Gelaleddin, with the Reinforcement of Turks that had join'd him, could make up an Army of sixty thousand Men, he seem'd much surprized; and this Supply made him apprehensive left some other new ones should arrive to join him, which might molest his Moguls.

In truth, Sultan Gelaleddin had received thirty thousand Men more, which were brought him by three Lords of his Father's Court, who were join'd in League together, and dwelt in this Country in fortified Places. They told him that having learn'd the Mogul Emperor had sent an Army towards the Frontiers of India to fight him, they were come to offer him their Affittance, and to join their Troops to his.

He received them with much Joy, and proteste'd he would never forget the Favour they had now done him. These Captains were Turks, and had belong'd to the Sultan, his Grandmother, and by consequence were no Friends to Gelaleddin; but the Danger that threaten'd them if this Prince was conquer'd, made them resolve to assist him.

He
Genghiscan the Great.

He put himself at the Head of his Army; and tho' he very well knew the Moguls Army was by a fourth part superior to his, yet he delayed not to go and meet them. He came up with them just beyond a Town called Birouan, within a days Journey from Gazna, where they were entrenching themselves. In truth, Coutoucou being inform'd that Gelaedddin's Troops, flush'd with the Success they had had at Canda-bar, were marching towards him with great Vigour, judged it best to delay the time with them, and let them cool a little, rather than venture to provoke them to a Battel. But the Fadallah, Sultan broke all his measures to avoid fighting, and took the Advantage of the good Disposition his Army was in; so he marched directly up to the Moguls, and resolved to force them even in their Intrenchments. Coutoucou had advice of their coming by his Scouts; and not being willing that any Should have cause to reproach him that he had hid himself, and yet had an Army superior to his Enemies, he caused them to march out of their Intrenchments, and went to meet the Sultan.

The Moguls Vanguard, commanded by an Emir, immediately charged Gelaedddin's, which was led by Emin Melic, who overthrew the foremost Squadrions; but Coutoucou detached fresh Troops to support his Vanguard, which routed that of the Enemy's. The Sultan immediately caused his main Body to advance, and putting himself at their Head, attack'd the Moguls in the Center, where Coutoucou was. The Shock was terrible, and during some hours both Sides had the Advantage by turns; but at last Victory declared herself on Gelaedddin's side.

The Moguls were obliged to abandon the Field Fadallah, of Battel, and fled in disorder, and all those who.
The History of

An. Dom. remained not in the Field wounded or slain, retired to the Mountains.

1221. Heg. 613. The Sultan after the Action gave the Praises due to his Lieutenant Generals, and to others the Rewards they merited. They took a great number of Prisoners in the Fight; and 'tis said of Gelaleddin, that having caused them to be all brought into his Presence, he reproached them with their Cruelties, and caused Nails to be thrust into their Ears, to revenge, as he said, the Miseries his Subjects had suffered for so long a time from the Moguls and Tartars.

Nefàvi, p. 110. There was, some days Journey from thence, a Party of Tartars who were besieging a Fortress call'd Ouala; who when they heard the Event of the Battel at Biruan, raised the Siege, and fled.

X. The Defeat of the Moguls and Tartars was quickly known to the Emperor, who was still before Bamiyan. This Prince grieved at the Loss of several Officers whom he much valued, could not receive this News without being in a Passion. He was so enraged, that he swore the City of Bamiyan and the Sultan himself should give him satisfaction. His Fury cost the Life of one of his Grandsons, who exposing himself, to please him, to the greatest dangers, was kill'd by an Arrow shot from over the Walls of the City. This young Prince fell dead at his Grandfather's Feet. He was a Son of Prince Oelai. The Emperor, who tenderly loved him, because he discover'd in him all the Marks of good Conduct, was not proof against this Misfortune. He was mollified, groan'd, and mix'd his Tears with those of the Mother of this young Prince, who was present, and bathed the Body of her dead Son with Tears, appearing like one distracted.

This
Genghizcan the Great.

This Accident cost the Besieged very dear. The Grand Can recovering from his Extasy of Sorrow, endeavour'd to comfort this Lady, and left to her discretion the punishing the Inhabitants of this Place, the Reduction of which could not be far off. He lavished his Gold and Silver to encourage his Soldiers, who night and day continued the Assault, and at last ruind the Walls of the City in many Places, and made themselves Masters of Bamian. The bravest Abulcair, of the Officers and Soldiers of the Garison had already lost their Lives in defending the Place; the rest perished by the Swords of the Victors. The Mother of the young Prince who was killed, entering with the Mogul Soldiers into the City, and thirsting after Blood, could not be satisfy'd with Murders, but spared neither Age nor Sex. And far from suffering any to be save'd for a Slave, this incensed Mother, or rather this Fury, caused the Throats of all the Inhabitants to be cut, without exceping one; and even gave Orders to rip up the Bellies of Women with Child, for fear there should remain alive one Infant of this unfortunate People. This was not all; for to assuage her Rage, the Beasts underwent the same Fate as the Men and Women, and the caused every living Creature to be kill'd. Besides which, even all the Mosques and Houses were pull'd down, the City became a heap of Ruins, and the Country round about a frightful Desart: Insomuch, that ever since this Misfortune Bamian has always born the Name of Maubalig, which signifies in the Mogul Language the unfortunate Dwelling.

Ostai was not in the Camp when his Son was killed, and the Emperor forbid that any Body should carry him the News, because he would
himself tell it him; which he did in a very extraordinary manner. One day having called all his family together, he pretended to talk of something in very unintelligible Terms; at last turning towards Octai, who did not understand nor made no answer to him, Whence comes it, said he, with a fierce Look, that you do not answer me when I speak to you? The Prince, believing the Emperor was angry, threw himself immediately at his Feet, and said, My Lord, if I have displeased you, put me to death, I will not murmur. The Grand Can made him repeat these Words three times; and asked him whether it was true that he so much feared to displease him. Yes, my Lord, answer'd Octai. Well then, reply'd the Emperor, hear me, and if you fear to displease me, take care not to disobey me: Mutou-Can your Son has been kill'd, and I forbid you to abandon your self to Grief. It was not without much pain that Octai obey'd a Command so contrary to Nature: However he constrained himself; and soon after, the Charge of an Expedition which his Father order'd him, diminished the afflicting Sense he had of the Loss of so dear an Object.

Bamian was situate in thirty four degrees and five minutes of Latitude, on a Mountain, whose Foot was water'd by a River which after having run thro another Mountain of that Country, from thence flows into the Oxus, and makes one Branch of this great River. This City was in the Province of Zabulestan, and the Capital of a small Country which bore its Name, ten days Journey from Bale, and eight from the City of Gazna. A Castle enclos'd with strong Walls, has been since built upon its Ruins.
C H A P. V.

The Battel between Genghizcan and Gelleddin. This Sultan's Passage to India.

BARMIAN being now no longer in a condition to retard the Grand Can's Conquest, and having no more Victims left to offer up to the Rage of his Daughter-in-Law; this Prince, impatient to come to Blows with Gelleddin, marched his Army with so much Precipitation, that he hardly gave his Soldiers time to get ready their Vi'tuals. And notwithstanding the Losses he had had, his Army was still so numerous, that he believed the Sultan would not dare to make head against him in the open Field, but expected to find him in the City of Gazna, knowing this Place was very strong, and that Provisions for a long Siege had been carried into it. Yet he did not find Gelleddin there as he imagin'd. This Sultan had judged Mirconde, it proper to retire elsewhere, and to secure the narrow Passes of the Mountains and Brooks, to be the better able to manage to advantage the Troops he had.

He was gone out of Gazna fifteen Days before the Moguls appear'd in that Country: but a vexatious Accident had happen'd in his Army after the Battel of Birouan; Discord began to get into his Army when the Booty was to be divided. The three Turkish Lords pretended that the best Spoils of the Moguls belong'd to them,
them, because of the Succours they had brought. 

Emin Melic's Troops, who were now united 
with the Sultan's, were willing that the Booty 
should be equally divided, and that the Custom 
of War should be follow'd. The Quarrel be-
gan about a very fine Arabian Horse which one 
of the three Turkish Captains demanded, and 
the others refused to yield to him. Gelaleddin 
could never bring them to agree; so that the 
Turkish Lords retired with their Troops, and 
left him. This Deferment did him much Injury; 
and the principal Reason that obliged him to go 
from Gazna, was to give time to his disunited 
Troops to rejoin him, to oppose the common E-
nemy; and in reality he did all that was possible 
to bring the three Turkish Captains to hearken to 
Reason. He writ to them several times, and 
sent Persons who were his Friends, to represent 
to them, that they must perish if they remain'd 
separated from him; and that on the contrary, 
if they rejoin'd him, they might gain a Vic-
tory over Genghizcan, that would render them 
Masters of all the Riches that Prince had a-
quired together ever since the Carizmean War 
began. They at last suffer'd themselves to be 
persuaded, but too late; for the Grand Can ha-
vying Knowledge of their Division, and not 
doubting but the common Danger would re-
unite them, if he did not prevent it, detached 
from his Army sixty thousand Horse to stop 
them in the way. These Troops seized upon 
all the Passages by which these auxiliary Troops 
could march to join Gelaleddin, who finding him-
self deprived of this powerful Aid, retired to-
wards the River Indus.

Some Authors take here an Opportunity to 
blame the Conduct of the Sultan of Carizme, 
in having always employ'd Turkish Commanders 
rather
rather than those of their own Nation: yet we must confess that Gelaeddin, not being able since the Death of his Father to raise any considerable Army, found himself under a necessity of making use of these Troops. This Prince knowing that the Mogul Emperor swiftly pursued him, stopp'd on the Banks of the River Indus, in a Place where the Stream was most rapid, to the end that the Necessity of either conquering or dying might redouble his Soldiers Courage. He also believed that the Straitness of the Place where he was posted would deprive the Moguls of the Advantage of bringing up all their Army together to fight. He then mark'd out a Camp with all the Judgment imaginable. Since his Departure from Gazan he was tormented with a cruel Cholick, which gave him little rest, and would scarce permit him to go even in a Horse-Litter. Nevertheless, at the time when he suffer'd most, he saw himself obliged to mount on horseback, having learnt that the Enemy's Vanguard was already arrived at a Place call'd Hardir. On this News he marched in the night with the bravest of his People, and surprized the Moguls in their Camp; he cut them almost all to pieces, without losing one Man, and then returned to his Camp on the Bank of the River Indus, with a considerable Booty.

Till this time Genghis can had marched with Abulcair, all the Assurance of a Conqueror, who believed that Gelaeddin thought of nothing else than to find an Asylum; but after this last Action he always mistrusted this vigilant Enemy, and did every thing with a great deal of Circumspection. When he saw himself near the Sultan, he put his Army in Battel Array, giving the Command of the right Wing to Zagatai, the left to Oflai, and put himself in the Center in the midst of fix
six thousand of his own Guards, stout veteran Troops, of whom he ever made use in his greatest Necessity.

On the other side, Ghelaleddin being inform'd by his Scouts how the Enemies were ranged, immediately caused the Boats on the Indus to be sent farther off, to take from his Soldiers all hopes of Safety, reserving only one of the largest for the Security of the Ladies, and to carry over to India the Sultana his Mother, the Queen his Wife, and his Children: but by an unforeseen Misfortune the Boat split when they had occasion to embark, so that they remain'd in the Camp. The Army being ranged in Order of Battel, the Sultan refered to himself the Command of the main Body of his Army. His left Wing, drawn up under the shelter of a Mountain, which hinder'd the Moguls Right from fighting them all together, was commanded by his chief Vizier, and his right Wing by Emin Melic. This Lord began the Fight, and gaul'd the Enemy's left Wing so, that they gave ground, notwithstanding all the Troops that sustaine'd them. And the Moguls right Wing wanting room to extend it self, the Sultan made use of his Left, as of a Body of Reserve, and detached from time to time Squadrions to sustaine the Troops that had occasion. He also took one part of them, when he went at the Head of his main Body to charge Genghizcan's. The Tartars at this shock sent forth most horrible Cries; but Ghelaleddin's Soldiers were not startled, but following their Prince's Example, fell on them with so much Courage and Vigour, that they put the Moguls main Body into disorder. The Sultan open'd a broad way to penetrate even into the midst, where the Grand Can should have been; but this Prince, was
was not there. Having had a Horse kill'd under him, he had caused another to be brought him, and was retired to give Orders for all the Troops to engage.

This Disadvantage had like to have lost the Moguls the Battel; for the News being spread all over the Army that the Sultan had broken thro' the main Body, all the Troops were shocked, and had infallibly fled, if the Emperor had not immediately given Orders, and shou'd himself publickly, riding from Place to Place. And, in fine, that which gain'd him the Battel, was, that having observed Gelaeddin had weaken'd his left Wing, he order'd Bela Nevian to go and attack it by some Byways over the Mountain, which a Native of the Country told him was possible. In effect, Bela, conducted by this Guide, marched without losing many Soldiers, betwixt Rocks and dreadful Precipices, and fell upon the Sultan's left Wing behind, which being much weaken'd could not long resist.

The Victory is by one Author attributed to a Body of Horse composed of chosen Men, fir-named Pehlevans, who, supported by ten thousand fresh Men, fell upon Gelaeddin's right Wing, which were at that time victorious, and defeated them, driving them back upon his main Body, against whom Genghizcan had renew'd the Charge. The Sultan's Troops, much fatigued with having fought ten whole Hours against more than three hundred thousand Men, were seiz'd with Fear, and fled, and his eldest Son was made Prisoner in the Disorder. One part of the Troops retired to the Rocks which were on the Shore of the Indus, where the Enemy's Horse could not follow them; and many others, closely pursu'd by the Tartars, threw them-
themselves into the River, which some of them happened to cross over. Others placing themselves round their Prince, being sensible that there was no hope left for them, continued the Fight.

Mean time, the Emperor, desirous to take Gelaedden alive, forbid that any should kill him; and in order to seize his Person, shut in this Sultan with his Army, which ranged themselves in form of a Bow, of which the River Indus represented the String. Gelaedden used his Reason perfectly in this extreme Danger. And seeing that of thirty thousand Men whom he had at the beginning of the Battle, there remain’d scarce seven thousand, and that if he continued the Fight any longer, he should certainly fall alive into his Enemies’ hands, he began to think of his Safety. And having no other course to take than to cross over into India; and though the River was very rapid in the Place he must cross to escape, yet he resolved to venture it. But before he put this Resolution in practice, he dismounted, and went to embrace his Mother, Wives, Children and Friends, and bid them an eternal Farewell. It is easy to imagine how melting a Sight this was: Nature and Love in this sad moment shou’d itself in the most tender manner. Gelaedden with Tears in his Eyes broke from those dear Objects of his Affection; and after having put off his Armour and Arms, except his Sword, Bow, and Quiver full of Arrows, he mounted a fresh Horse, and spurr’d him into the River, the Furiousness of whose Waves astonish’d the Beast so much, that he went not in but by Force. He was of such Service to the Sultan in carrying him safely over, that in gratitude he had him carefully kept ever after, and would not even for
for four or five Years after ride him in any dangerous Action.

Whilst he was crossing the Indus, Genghizcan being informed of it, ran to the Shore side, and was not a little surprized to see him braving the Fury of the Waves; but he was much more to see the Sultan, forgetful of the Danger his Life was in, stop in the midst of the River to insult him, and empty his Quiver of Arrows, which he shot against him and his Retinue. Several brave Mogul Captains would have thrown themselves into the River to swim after Gelleddin; but the Grand Can hinder'd them, telling them this Prince would disappoyt all their Attempts. Then putting his Finger on his Mouth, and turning towards his Children, he cried, 'Any Son should wish to spring from such a Father. He that dares defy such Dangers as p. 422.

this Prince has now escaped, may expose himself to a thousand others; and a wife Man who has him for his Enemy, must be always upon his guard.'

Mehemed Nisavi, Author of the History of Sultan Gelleddin's Life, reports, that the Sultan being ready to enter the River, and pierced with the Shrieks of those he had took his leave of, who begg'd him to deliver them from being Slaves to the Moguls, commanded them to be drowned, and that this his Order was immediately executed. But other Historians, who have given a very full Relation of all that past in this Battel, make no mention of this Sultan's Family's being thrown into the Indus; but assure us that the Grand Can, after this Prince was past over, caused to be brought before him his Wives and all his Children, and order'd all the Males to be kill'd: and by this means the Sultan's eldest Son taken at the Rout of the Army,
Army, being eight Years old, loft his Life.

The Emperor having learn'd that Gelaleddin had thrown into the River what Gold and Silver he had either in Plate or Money, had it searched for by the Divers, who took up a great part of it, of which he put into his Treasury what was most rare and valuable, and distributed the rest to his Army.

Gelaleddin being got on the Shore of India, returned Thanks to God for having deliver'd him from the Dangers he had been expos'd to in the Battel, and thro' the Rapidity of the River. He got up into a Tree to pass the Night, and secure himself from the wild Beasts, which were very numerous in this Country. The next day, as he was walking, much disquieted in his Thoughts, on the Banks of the River, and looking about on every side to see if any of his People appear'd, who might have past over at some other Part of the River than that he cros'd at, he perceiv'd a Troop of Soldiers with some Officers, who at the first beginning of the Army's Defeat had found a Boat a-float, and seizing upon it, had pass'd all Night with much danger, because of the Rocks, Shelves, and Violence of the Current, which had drove them almost as low as where Gelaleddin cros'd, tho' they embark'd above a League higher than where the Battel was fought. Among these were three Officers his particular Friends, with whom a few days after he concert'd Measures suitable to the Condition they were now reduc'd to. He soon after saw coming up to him three hundred Horse, which he discover'd to be also some of his own Forces, at which he rejoiced as much as possible in the melancholy State he was in. They told him that four thousand more of his Army had sav'd themselves by swimming over,
over, two Leagues from thence, by a Place in the River which was less rapid, but that they were naked, and so fatigued, that they look'd like Men just risen from the Grave. He went immediately to seek them, met, and cares'd them, assuring them of his Affection to them, and promised to provide for their Necessities. These unfortunate Creatures made him sensible, by the loud Acclamations of Joy they felt at the sight of him, that they were comforted for all the Ills they had suffer'd by his Presence alone.

From this time all things proceeded happily to Gelaleddin. An Officer of his Household named Gemalarrazad, who was not present at the Battel because he was employ'd elsewhere, having knowledge that his Master was escaped, and that many of his People had passe the River by swimming, ventured to load a very large Boat with all that he could find proper for the Sultan's Use, and cross'd over the Indus, and join'd Gelaleddin; who seeing that this Boat had brought Food, Money, Stuff's to clothe the Soldiers, Bows, Arrows, Swords, and many other things of which he stood in need, he thanked God for this so singular a Favour, and embraced this faithful Servant, making him great Steward of his Household, and surnamed him Esliareddin, which signifies the Chosen or the Glory of the Faith.

As we have no design to write a compleat History of Sultan Gelaleddin, we shall only acquaint those who have a Curiosity to know what became of so great a Man, that he fought several Battels in Indostan, in which he was at first victorious; that he made Conquests and Alliances, but that his Prosperity excited Jealousy in many Princes of India, who judging he would one day or other give them trouble,
if they did not put a stop to his good Fortune; composed together against him, and obliged him to repass the Indus. Nevertheless there are Historians who say that his Departure from India was voluntary; and that this Prince being informed that Genghizcan was gone a great way from Persia, and that there were Commotions in Tangut and China, hoping to recover by his Valour, and the Assistance of his Friends, a part of what he had lost beyond the River Oxus, he left the Care of his Conquests in Indostan to one of his General Officers. But we shall have occasion to speak of this Prince again, and of his last Actions, before we finish this Book.

To return now to the Grand Can: he was much pleased at the Advantage he had gotten over Gelaleddin; but Grief succeeded his Joy, when, upon making a review of his Army, he saw it was considerably diminished, and that he had lost the Flower of his Soldiers, with a great number of his Officers. The Sieges of Talcan and Bamian, the hasty Marches he had made, and the Battle of Indus, which alone had cost him twenty thousand Men, all these had consumed a great part of this formidable Army, whose Number and Strength had even astonished Sultan Mehemed at Caracou. In fine, he found he had lost two hundred thousand Men since the Beginning of the Siege of Talcan, reckoning the two Bodies of Troops which Gelaleddin had defeated. Yet he neglected not to send Advice to the Governours of the Provinces and Generals of his Armies of his good Success; and particularly to Hubbe and Suida, who had by this time finished the Conquest of Tac Agemi, otherwise called the Persian Hircania, or Northern Persia. He commanded them to make pub-
Genghizcan the Great.

publick Rejoicings; and at the same time gave them Orders to enter Azerbijana, or the Country of the Medes, so soon as the Spring came on, and to use all their Endeavours to bring this Kingdom under his Obedience.

C H A P. VI.

The Reduction of Azerbijana, or the antient Media, to Genghizcan's Obedience. The Moguls War against the Georgians.

When Suida Behadeur and Hubbe receiv'd Fadalalak's Orders to enter into Azerbijana, they were in Winter-Quarters in Træc, at Senoravende; a City they had taken by Storm. And their Army being much weaken'd by reason of the great Garisons they had been obliged to put into several Places, they writ to some Tartar Captains who kept the open Country in Coraffana to fend them the best part of their Troops, and to raise more, and keep the Country they were in quiet. These Troops were no sooner on their March to go and join those with the two Generals, but the Mogul Captain who led them, met with a Carizmean called Tequin, who had under his Command three or four thousand Horse, and who some little time before had surpriz'd and kill'd the Governour of Bocara. These Captains and their Troops fought, and the Mogul Captain had the better. He oblig'd Tequin to fly for Safety to the City of Jorgean, situate in Tabareslan, whither Amangecan, an
Officer of the Sultan of Carizme, was retired; and there he found them together in a Plain, with their Troops in Battel Array, between the Cities of Jorgean and Esterabade. He there attack'd them, and after a sharp Dispute, in which Tequin was killed, the Mogul Officer remain'd Victor, and Ainangean fled to Prince Cayeseddin, who was Brother to the Sultan Gela-leddin, where he died soon after. This Action was in the beginning of the Year of our Lord 1222. and of the Hegira 619.

The victorious Troops join'd themselves to those under Hubbe and Suida about the end of March this Year. After which, these two Generals marched toward Ardebile, a strong City, and a Place of great Trade, situate within two Leagues of the Mountain of Savelane, which was at that time cover'd with Snow. This City was in the thirty eighth degree of Latitude, and was the Arsacia of the Antients.

The Inhabitants refused at first to open their Gates, and seem'd determined to defend the Place; but their Courage did not answer their Pride, for after some Resistance they surrender'd at discretion. The Moguls killed the greatest part of the People, and plunder'd and burnt the City; since which it has been rebuilt, and is at present one of the finest in the Persian Empire. 'Twas in Ardebile that the famous Chec Seffy, the Head of the Royal Family of Sefevi's, which at this time fills the Throne, was born, and here his Tomb was erected; which for its Magnificence surpasses the most pompous Sepulchres of the Kings who have been since buried there.  

When

Olearius's
Voyages,
p. 284.

1 The Persians believe that Chec Seffy did spring from the Race of Aly Mahomet's Son-in-Law, and that he descended from
Genghizcan the Great.

When Hubbe and Suida had taken Ardebile, they went to Tauris, the Capital of Azerbijan. The Governor, who was a Man of Courage, resolved to make a stout defence. He refused them everything they demanded. He fell out of the City himself with his Soldiers, and knowing the Country better than the Enemies, he tired and fatigued them by an infinite number of Skirmishes, and drew them into the Ambushes he laid for them; and if he had not been too confident of his good Fortune, the Moguls had had a great deal of Trouble to subdue him. But at last they forced him to a pitch'd Battel in the open Field, in which he was beaten, but escaped to Tauris with the Troops that were able to follow him; and there getting together all the Soldiers he had left, he flatter'd himself he should be able to sustain a long Siege: which he had perhaps done, if the Inhabitants, not daring any more to trust in their Strength after the ill Success he had had in the Battel, had not forced him immediately to make Proposals for Peace to the Mogul Generals, who easily consented to them, fearing left the Georgians, who were esteem'd the most valiant People of all Asia, should declare for the Inhabitants of Tauris. So they agreed on a Sum of Money, which was paid by the City, and a certain quantity of Corn and Cattle for the Moguls Subsistence.

from Huseyn the Son of Aly in a direct Line, by one named Imam Mouja, the seventh of the twelve Imams who succeeded him. And thus they do not scruple to affirm that their Kings are of the Race of their false Prophet Mahomet as well as the Kings of Morocco, who pretend to be kinsmen descended from Mahomet by Hasan the second Son of Aly.
Tauris was situate in thirty eight degrees of Latitude. Several Authors believe it was the Ecbatana of the Antients, the Capital of the Kingdom of the Medes. Let that be as it will, all the Advantage it at present enjoys consists in its being the principal City of Azerbijana, now a Province of the Persia Empire. Its Outside is very agreeable, its Buildings very fine, its Mosques are magnificent: there are likewise Colleges and publick Baths.

The Moguls, after this, returned into Erac Age-mi towards Ispa-han; where they were informed there were some Commotions; but he who was the Author of them had been already punished, even by those who were the chief Promoters of it, and persuaded him to it. They did not make the Town suffer any Chaflifement for these Disorders, but were content to take only the usual Duties for the War, and past a part of the Winter in hunting in this Country, according to Custom.

The Georgians, fearing to be in their turn attacked by the Moguls, held a Council at Tepsa; their Capital City, to consult what they had to do. There were some who, desirous to prevent this Misfortune, proposed to make an Alliance with Genghizcan; but the Majority were of opinion that it was best to secure themselves by their Swords. Thus War was resolved on;

---

a Others assure us it is Hamadan that was the antient Ecbatana. Abulseda, p. 191.

b There is much probability that this City of Ispa-han was the Afa of Ptolomy, altho' some pretend it was the Grecian Hecatompolis, built by the Greeks in the Parthians Country where Alexander resided. It is at present the Capital of the Persia Empire, and situate in thirty two degrees and twenty five minutes of Latitude.
and they immediately got into the Field ten thousand Horse under the Command of a very experienced Captain who had made War with Sultan Mehemed the King of Carizme with good Success. The Desire they had for Action did not permit them to wait the coming of the Spring. They enter'd in the midst of Winter into Azerbijana, to go in search of the Moguls whom the two Generals had left there; but they found more Troops than they expected, for all the Garisons had joined: and the Georgians, after having been twice worsted in two Ren- counters, returned to Teflis.

But having thus declared War against the Fadlallah, Moguls, they imagined they should soon have been pursu'd by them. For which reason they sent Deputies to all their Neighbours to ask their Assistance, but none would lend them any; for which cause they sent out strong Parties, and molested all those who favour'd the Moguls, or submitted to them. Hubbe and Suida, tho the Distance was so far between the Place they were at and this, sent Troops against the Georgians; and when the Season would permit, march'd themselves with all their Forces, returning into Azerbijana, and thence enter'd into Georgia; but they found all the Passages stopp'd, a few being able to defend them against many. They chose rather to defer to attack them, than to run the risque of sacrific- ing their Soldiers perhaps to no purpose.

During these Transactions they received Advice that the Inhabitants of Maraga had affliicted the Georgians. To revenge themselves, they set down before their City, took, and plunder'd it. Maraga was situate in thirty seven degrees and twenty minutes of Latitude, within seventeen Leagues of Tauris to the Westward in the same
Province. 'Twas a modern built City, foun
d by Order of the Calif Merouane, and was
very considerable both for its Trade and fine
Situation.

After the taking of Maraga, the Moguls went
to refresh themselves at Ardebile: There they
learn'd that some of the Sultan's Relations had
excited a Revolt at Hamadan, and that even
the Governour of the City was one of the
Revolters. At the same time it was resolved that
Hubbe should go and appease these Troubles,
whilst Suida continued in Azerbijana to observe
the Inhabitants of Tauris, with whom they had
reason to be displeased, because they had secret-
ly assisted the Georgians. Hubbe being arrived
before Hamadan, and Gemaleddin the Governour
seeing himself abandon'd by all the rest of the
Revolters, sent Deputies to the Mogul General
to assure him of his Obedience, and to present
him all that he thought worthy his Acceptance.
But his Prefents and Submission avail'd him no-
thing: Hubbe was inexorable, and would abso-
lutely have him yield at discretion. The Go-
vernour was going to satisfy his Commands,
if a Captain named Faquihi had not hinder'd
him. Faquihi excited the People to defend
him, and prevail'd. They put him at the head
of the Troops that were in the City, and he
was so bold as to rally forth and attack the Moguls.
They repulsed him smartly, and all he could do

4 It was in the Suburbs of Maraga that the illustrious Naffir
Eddin Toosy, accompanied with some other Astrologers,
made his Observations and his Ephemerides, by the Order of
Hulacou King of Persia, and Grandson to Genghizean, who
there built for him a magnificent Observatory. There are
few Ephemerides in the Levant more esteem'd than this
Astrologer's.
Genghizcan the Great.

was to get back into the Place. A great number of Tartars entering promiscuously with his Soldiers, seiz'd the Gates, and made themselves Masters of Hamadan.

After which, Hubbe returned back, and marched against Tauris with Suida; but the Governor of this City, inform'd of their Design by some hired Spies, sent them the Tribute that he owed, by Persons of Address, who justifed him so to these Generals, that the Moguls, instead of continuing their March to Tauris, went to Selmas and to Cony, to subdue these Cities, which were at the farthest part of Azerbijana, on the West Side.

They had no sooner taken and plundered them, than they turned their Arms to the North, and went to Naşirivan a City of Aran, situate between Azerbijana and Armenia. This Place was treated like the others, yet with less Rigour than Pilecan, which also lay in Aran, and was the chief Place of Trade in all the Province. Pilecan being a Town well fortify'd, it cost the Enemy a great deal of time to take it, who to revenge themselves for this Resistance, committed most cruel Actions. Gangea, another City of Aran, was more fortunate, for it immediately open'd its Gates, which was the reason no damage was done to its Inhabitants.

The Moguls were in this last mention'd City, when they were informed by some Spies that a great number of Georgians were preparing to come and attack them. On this Advice they resolved to wait their coming in the Province.

---

5 These two Cities were no farther than seven Leagues off from one another, and Selmas is to this day very famous for the Commerce there carry'd on.
of Aran; and these Generals agreed that, when the Enemy was not far off from them, Hubbe should put himself in ambush with five thousand chosen Men, and that Suida should march with the gross of the Army as if he went to give them battle, but that as soon as they appeared, he should leave his Baggage, and retire with Precipitation, yet without Disorder, and in such a manner that he could face about at a Signal which Hubbe should give him in coming out of his Ambuscade, to the end the Georgians might be charged both before and behind at the same Instant.

This Design being executed as it was agreed, the Enemy took Suida’s Retreat for a real Flight, and pursued him. Hubbe coming out of his Ambuscade, these two Generals cut the Georgians in pieces, who in this one day loft thirty thousand Men. The rest escaped back to Georgia; where they were hardly arrived, when News was spread over the Country that the Moguls were coming to besiege Tefts; on which account Terror seiz’d the Inhabitants of this City, and those on the Frontiers, whom the Moguls Approach caus’d to fly farther up into the Country. Yet notwithstanding the Fright the People were in, the Commanders and Soldiers knowing the Difficulty of the Ways and Lanes, ran to guard them; and the Moguls met with so many Turnings and narrow Lanes, that they were dishearten’d, and immediately retreated. ’Tis said that in this Juncture a Mogul who advanced too far was made Prisoner; and that his own Misfortune and the Shame of seeing his Companions retire back, so afflicted him, that he kill’d himself.

Abulfeda, Tefts is situatate in forty three degrees of Latitude. It was a great trading City, where there were
Genghizcan the Great.

were Baths of hot Water so excellent for Health, that Abulfeda the Geographer compares them to those of Tiberias in Palestine.

CHAP. VII.

Genghizcan's Employments during the Expedition of the Generals Hubbe and Suida in Azerbaijan, and what the other Generals of the Army did.

AFTER the Battel of Indus, thro' the Fadallah, Severity of the Winter, Genghizcan was p. 430. obliged to take up his Quarters on the Frontiers of India, and to let his Army rest, which was extremely fatigued. After he had a little recover'd them, he order'd a Hunting, which lasted one part of the Season. But when he saw the Spring approaching, he distributed to his Lieutenants, that they might continue to make new Conquests, those of his Troops who were in good Condition, and kept the rest that were most out of order to manage himself.

He sent into the Country of Herat, which had revolted, fourscore thousand Men under the Command of Ilenou Nevian, and order'd him to watch the Motions of the thirty thousand Malecontents who had abandon'd Gelaleddin's Army, after having so bravely fought the Battel of Birouan. He sent away twenty thousand Men under the Command of Bela, to the Country of Multane, to resist the Sultan if he appear'd on that side the Country.
He charged his Son Osta to go with the Troops under his Command and conquer Gazna, and to chastise the Inhabitants of that City for having supplied his greatest Enemy with Succours. He gave to Zagatai sixty thousand Tartars to go into the Provinces of Sendé and Quirman, to shut up those Countries from the Sultan. A needless Precaution! for Glededdin was returned into Quirman so soon as he heard the Emperor was got into Mogolistan.

The Grand Can, on the receipt of some Letters from China, resolved to quit the Provinces of Persia to return nearer to the Oxus, where they informed him that his long Absence had caused the Chinese to grow every day more insolent, and with nothing more than to see China again governed by its natural Prince; that they seem'd disposed to revolt, and follow the Example of Chidusco the Can of Tangut, who, seconded by the Moguls secret Enemies, had surprized the City of Campion, in spite of the Resistance made by the Governor. On this Information Genghizcan sent Orders to his Brother Utakin, and went up as far as Candahar with the Remainder of his Troops, besieged and took this City, and there waited a long time, expecting to hear News of his Army.

The City of Candahar was situate in thirty three Degrees of Latitude. It was an antient City, and the Capital of a Province of that Name. Several Historians will have it to be one of those which Alexander caused to be built in those Parts, and named Alexandria. Geographers are divided as to its Situation; some place it in the Country of Sendé, others in India, and others in Persia: and the Kings of both these last mention'd Countries willingly 

Abulfeda, p. 171.
Genghizcan the Great

crediting the Opinion of those Writers who favour their Pretensions to it, fail not alternately to seize of this City every time an Opportunity presents, and plead that it belongs to him, whoever gets it. The Trade this City carries on with the three Countries before-mention’d, to which it serves as a Frontier-Town, makes the Inhabitants very rich.

Multane, a City in India, situate in twenty nine degrees and forty minutes of Latitude, fell also some time after into the Moguls Hands by the Valour of Bela Nevian; but this General did not go so far as Labor, as he was order’d, because he knew there was in that Place a stronger Army than his. A Patan, named Cobadia, had sent those Forces there, believing he ought rather to provide against the Moguls and Tartars than against Gelaeddin, tho this Sultan was in Arms even then on the Frontiers of his Country. 'Tis true, Gelaeddin was not in a condition to be much feared, having so few Troops with him; nor had he done any thing but made a slight Irruption on the Territories of a Prince named Rana, who had insulted him, and whom he kill’d.

Ilencou executed the Orders he had received concerning Herat with much Cruelty. We have already related how the People of this Country had made peace with Tulican, who gave them a Governour; but loving their native Prince Fodallah, extremely, and the Mahometan Religion, which indeed was the strongesr Motive, they soon revolted from the Moguls, and threw off their Yoke so soon as they saw their Prince appear, and tumultuously killed Aboubeguir who govern’d them, put to the Sword all those who took Genghizcan’s part in that City, and chose a Governour named Moubarezeddin. This Action was

Abulfseda

The taking of Mul-

eane

Nisavi’s Life of Ge-

hleddin

p. 117
was done at the time when the thirty thousand Malecontents joined the Sultan; for the Inhabitants of the Country of Herat, seeing to fine an Army under their Prince's Command, believed his Affairs would take a better turn, and that he would be re-established, and so thought they might revolt with Impunity.

Prince Coutoucou had immediately received orders to chastise them; but having been beat at Bironan, the Emperor had been obliged to defer his Vengeance for some time. At last he sent Ilencou to Herat with orders to ruin all the Country, and to destroy the thirty thousand Men who had assisted the Sultan. This General employ'd six whole Months in accomplishing himself of this Commission; and being sensible that the more Cruelty he shou'd, the more his Master would be pleased with him, he set all on fire, and fill'd with Blood all the City and Country. The Moguls boasted they had killed above sixteen hundred thousand Persons; comprehending the thirty thousand Malecontents which Ilencou had orders to fight, and which he entirely defeated, tho' with much difficulty.

Ofai also set out from the Borders of India to go to the Country of Gazna, to execute the Emperor's Orders. He was no sooner arrived there, but he exercised all sorts of Cruelties; not that this Prince was naturally bloody, but he knew his Father was so, and that he hated these People, to whom he imputed the Loss of his Armies: in truth, they had always assisted the Sultan Gelateddin as much as they were able. After Ofai had got possession of all the Places in this Country that were of least Strength, he sat down before the principal City, at that time called Darahmulke, or the Royal City, because
Genghizcan the Great.

caused it had been the Capital of the Kingdom of the Children of Subuțequin, who had heretofore possessed both the Empires of Persia and India. This City, which is now called Gazna, was furnished with all things necessary to sustain a Siege; and besides a strong Garison, Gelaled-din had placed there a very brave and experienced Man for their Governor.

This Governor represented to the Inhabitants that the Mogul Emperor hated them more than all the rest of the Sultan’s Subjects; that they ought not to expect any Mercy from a Prince who was both an Idolater and a cruel Person; that he had sworn their Ruin, and that by consequence it was in vain for them to imagine to melt or soften him by any Submissions: in fine, he so well animated the People of Gazna against Genghizcan, that they all resolved to lose their Lives in the Defence of their City, rather than vainly sue to him. Nor did they by their Actions bely their Words, or act below this generous Resolution. They made frequent Sallies, and with good Success, upon the Labourers, and several times overthrew their Works. They twice beat down the Mounts of Earth the Enemies raised to place their Engines on; they broke above a hundred of their Battening-Rams. But all these Attempts proved useles, for one night, after an obstinate Fight they had had in the day time, in which Othai himself had fought in Person to encourage his Soldiers, who began to be daunted, one side of the Walls of the City fell down, and unfortunately filled up the Ditch with its Ruins, so that a great number of the Moguls and Tartars entered with ease into the Place Sword in hand. The Governor perceiving how much this Accident had dashed the Inhabitants’ Courage, and
and that he could not long sustain the Mogul's Attacks, resolved to die like a gallant Man; and putting himself at the head of the bravest of his Soldiers, charged amidst the thickest of the Enemies, where he and all with him were slain, after having killed many of the Enemies. Nevertheless the City of Gazna was not entirely ruin'd, nor did all its Inhabitants perish, like those of some other Cities we have mentioned: for the plundering it did not last above four or five Hours, Ogtae causing it to cease, and taxing the Inhabitants who were left alive, at a certain Sum, which they gave to buy the City off from being burnt, and themselves from Death. This Prince continued in this City till such time as all the Province was reduced to the Obedience of the Emperor his Father, whom he afterwards went to join in Tartary, to give an account of his Conduct.

When Prince Zagatai was come into the Country of Quirman with his numerous Army, he took by degrees all the Places in that Country, according to the Orders he had received from the Grand Can, who being well informed of the Unhealthfulness of this Province, had charged him to take great care of the Soldiers. The Capital City was called Quirman. It was situate in thirty degrees of Latitude. The Antients called this Province by the Name of Carmania. It had on the West Persia, on the East Sende, on the South the Indian Sea, and on the North Corassana. When he was possess'd of Quirman, he led his Troops into Mecran, which formerly was compriz'd in this Province, but at this time made a part of Sende.

After being seized of Tiz, which was one of the best Cities, situate in twenty six degrees of
of Latitude, and of some other Places which he destroy'd, he past the Winter in Quelanger, a Country situate on the Borders of the Indies. As he design'd to stay a long time in this Place, the Soldiers made themselves a great number of Houses. There were some who even got very fine Flocks of Sheep; and they subsisted with greater ease, because the Prince had made the Quarters for the Troops of so great an extent, that they did not incommode one another. Every Soldier had his Slaves who served him. The Troops employ'd themselves in cultivating Gardens, and began to solace themselves as if they had been in a Country which they supposed was going to be divided amongst them, and which they were to settle in for the rest of their Lives. But being in a Country whose Climate was very different from that they were born in, when the scorching Winds customary in this Place, began to blow, they fell sick almost all of them, and a great number died; and the greatest part of those that lived, remain'd so weak and languishing, that if the Sultan had then had any Army to oppose them, it is not to be doubted but he had entirely ruined this of the Moguls.

The Advantages the Persians gain'd from their Sickness, were, that their Enemies could not attack the Country of Fars, nor one part of Couzistan, which according to the Disposal the late King of Carizme made of his Kingdoms, belong'd to Cayafeddin, Sultan Gelaleddin's younger Brother. It contain'd strong Cities, which would have defended themselves. Thus Cayafeddin escaped the Tartars for the present. Zagatai judging his Troops unable to execute his Designs, made them several times remove from one Place to another to recover them;
and to ease them, order'd that the greatest part of the Slaves whom they had taken in the neighbouring Places, should be put to death, because they were a burden to the Soldiers who were charged with the care of them. In one day then these miserable Slaves had all their Throats cut. After which the Army encamped in a more temperate Country: The Change of Air and good Treatment cured the Sick; so that in a little time Zagatai having received Orders to repair to the Grand Can with his Troops, found them in a condition to march. He put Garisons into the Cities and Countries he had conquer'd, and committed the whole Government of them all to one of his Lieutenants. After which, he march'd Northward, and made one part of his Army go along the Borders of India, under the Conduct of a Lieutenant General, and with the rest he himself cross'd over the Countries to go for Bals, where the general Rendezvous was appointed.

C H A P. VIII.

Genghizcan's Return from the Country of Iran to the Country of Touran, that is, from Persia to Tartary.

The Emperor having decamp'd from before Candabar, continued to march to the Oxus. He past the rest of the Summer of the Year 1222. on this side of that River, in a Place whose Pleasantsnes and Beauty invited him
Genghizcan the Great.

him to stay there, till the return of his Generals. Whilfst he was there, Deputies came from Balc to wait on him; he order'd them to send him some Men of Skill, who were able to inform him of all the Particularities of their Country. They obey'd; and soon after their return, several learned Persons arrived at the Court. The Grand Can confer'd with them concerning the Antiquities of Balc, and Bactriana, and they inform'd him of all they knew.

Nor did he omit to talk with them about Zoroaster, whom the Orientals call Zeridesche Behram. They told him that this great Man had been King of their Country, and that he alone of all Mankind had laugh'd when he was born; that it was he who first studied the Motion of the Stars, and invented Magick; that he had a great number of Followers, who became so well versed in those Arts, that they had the Titles of Wisemen and Philosophers, and that he himself was called the King of the Magi; lastly, that he had no other Priests but them to teach and improve the Religion of the Worshippers of Fire, who were the Medes, Persians, and Bactrians, who all had some of those Magi in their Countries. Their chief Employment was to see that every particular Person or Family preferred the consecrated Fire in their Houses, so that it did not go out. These Idolaters had in every Province a great and magnificent Temple for the publick Exercise of their Religion. There are some Authors who affirm, that in Azerbijana this Fire, which was so rever'd, burnt for the space of seven hundred Years without Interruption. These Temples were called Ateschkele; and there are to be seen at this day the magnificent Remains of these great Buildings.
The Grand Can received Letters from Schidafshon the Can of Tangut, who made him offers of Submission, and to be tributary to him, if he would pardon what was past. A Council was held on this Subject, and it was resolved an Answer should be sent him that his Offers were accepted, because they were not willing he should form any more Enterprizes; so that the Emperor might make himself Master of Mogolistan after he had finished all his Affairs in Persia and Tartary. It was also agreed he should pass over the Oxus, to daunt all the People who had any Inclination to rebel. With this design he pres'd the return of his Troops, and sent to his Generals to set out immediately from the Places where they now were to follow him, after having put good Garisons and able Governours into the Places requisite. After this he pass over the Oxus with the Troops he had with him, and went to Bocara, where some had already begun to make Reparations. One Historian says he went directly to Samarcand: But those who say it was to Bocara, prove it by a Conversation which was found in Writing, between the Emperor, the Cady, and the Catibe, that is to say, the Orator of the City. These two Men were sent to him to give him an Account of their Religion and Laws, as he desired: These Doctors, says one, being come into his Presence, he asked them what their Faith was, in general Terms; they answer'd, That they believed, as all the Mahometans did, there was but One God, and that this God did create all things, and had no Equal. The Grand Can told them he believed the same. Then he asked them what was their Opinion of Mahomet; they answer'd that God had sent this Prophet to his Servants.
Servants with his Seal, and Orders to instruct them in the Laws they must follow, both as to what is permitted, and what is forbidden them. Genghizcan approv'd this Answer, and said, I believe it, since I, who am but the Servant of God, do daily send Ambassadors into divers Countries, and even to my own Subjects, to make my Pleasure known to them. The two learned Men after this entertain'd him on the Subject of Prayers, and the Times in which it was their Custom to pray daily. This Institution he liked very well, as also that of Fasting, which the Mahometans observe in the Month of Ramadan: As to which he told them that it was but reasonable they should use some Abstinence for one Month's space, since all the rest of the Year they drank and eat what they pleased, and past whole Nights in Debauches, nay, even in this Month of Ramadan, altho they called it out of respect the Venerable. He also approved that a Man should distribute to the Poor a part of his Goods; for example, that of twenty Ducats of Gold, he should give them the half of one. But when these Doctors told him that the Mussulmans were obliged to have Temples or Mosques to worship God in, and that they called these Mosques the Houses of God, where they ought to pray, and render him their Homage; he told them, that the whole World was the House of God, and that he heard the Prayers of Men in all Parts of the World. He asked many other Questions of the Orator and Cady of Bocara concerning their Customs. After which, they returned to their Houses, and affirmed that Genghizcan had Sentiments very conformable to theirs, and that he might be reckon'd of the number of the Mussulmans. Nevertheless the Orator was not pleased with the
the Answer this Prince gave concerning the Temples, because it maintain'd that there was no need of them; which was to deny that a Man was obliged to perform a Pilgrimage to Mecca, since Men went not thither but to worship God at Quiabe, which is his chief Temple, according to the Mahometan's Belief.

The Grand Can did nothing at Bocara worthy mentioning. He past the Winter there, the Season not permitting him to march so far as from the Country of Balc to Samarcand, whither he went not till the Year of our Lord 1223, and of the Hegira 620; and then he sent his Troops before, and order'd them to treat the People gently, and to use no Violence to them; but to be content with what was order'd them for their Subsistence, by those who had the care of it; in a word, to live as they ought in a Country belonging to him. They punctually observ'd these Orders. The Emperor soon follow'd his Army with all his Houshold. Presents were made him in every Place he pass'd thro; and as soon as they learn'd he was near Samarcand, the chief Merchants and principal Officers of the Country came out to meet him, with rich Presents, which he receiv'd very graciously. They assure'd him, by the Mouth of their Orator, of their Fidelity: And he ever after treated them with Kindness, as a People whose Affection to him he believed sincere and unfeigned.

When he was come into his Tent, he enter'd into Conversation with the Deputies whom the City had sent to welcome him: He recounted to them all the Transactions between him and

---

1. Lewis VIII, began at this time to reign in France.
Genghizcan the Great.

The two Sultans, and particularly imputed to Mehemed all the ills the Empire had suffer'd, as being the sole Cause of them. He even gave them the Detail of the Victory he had gain'd over Gelaeddin; and after having told them that they had now no other Emperor but himself, he declared to them, that it was to him they ought for the time to come to address their Requests, and make Prayers for him in the Mosques, which he call'd, making the Coutbe in his Name; and that He alone ought to be the Subject of their Praisers. He past the greatest part of this Year at Samarcand, in settling the Affairs of his Empire, and in giving time to his Troops, which he expected from very remote Parts, to come up to the Place he had appointed. He at this time made several Regulations, which he annexed to his other Laws: And being now something at ease, he forgot not any thing that he thought would conduce to the Preservation of his Kingdoms. He resolved to hold a General Diet at Tuncat in the beginning of the Year following, that is, in 1224, and of the Heg. 621. For this Reason he sent his Orders into all the Provinces, to the Princes his Children, the Governors, and Generals of the Army: Nay, he desired Suida and Hubbe should be there also, and therefore sent them word to come to Tuncat by the way of Capschac, after having pass'd by Derbende, that is to say, by the Caspian Gates. But he commanded them, above all things, to follow the Orders of Touischican his Son, who was then in Capschac, or that great Western Tartary situate on this side the River Jaxartes, and reaching even to Muscovy, as has been before mentioned.
Chap. IX.

The Generals Hubbe and Suida's Expedition to the Kingdom of Schirouane: Their Travels by Derbende, or the Caspian Ports.

Hubbe and Suida had no sooner receiv'd the Grand Can's Orders, but they prepared to execute them; and after having settled what Methods they should take to pass into Caffexac, on the western side of the Caspian Sea, they sent some before to view the Roads and Passages, who brought back word to them, That there was nothing but Rocks and Precipices, so that it was impossible to pass any other way than by the Straits of Derbende. But the two Generals having learnt that the King of Schirouane was Master of them, and that none could pass that way without his leave, they march'd directly into his Country, where they had not yet been, altho' it was a part of the Country of Azerbijana, the rest of which they had already conquer'd. They concei'd this their Design, and pretend only, that they went to establish the Grand Can's Empire there, as well as in the other Parts of Asia. They first besieg'd Schamagui, a City situate in 40 Degrees 50 Minutes of Latitude, and soon took it.

They there treated the People rigorously, because they had resifted them: But afterwards, to gain the King of Schirouane's good Will, they said...
said publickly, that Genghizcan desired of this An. Dom. Prince only a slight Acknowledgement of his Submission, and a small Tribute. The King refused to pay the Tribute, but the Generals did not much trouble themselves about that, having no other Design but cunningly to obtain from him a Passage by Derbende. They spared the Country of Schirouane, and made their Soldiers live very regularly. They even punished several for having abused the People. They sent Presents to the King, and received also some from him: But when they proceeded to ask him to give them the Liberty to pass by the way of Derbende into Tartary, and that he perceived that this was the only Aim to which all their Civilities tended, and the Motives of the respectful Treatment they had given his People, he gave off answering their Compliments, and believed that they only sought how to seize on this important Passage, to hold all the Country in Subjection, and drive him out of his Kingdom. For this Reason, when they again pressed him importunately for leave to pass by the Straits of Derbende; he answered them, That this did not lie in his power, since the People who inhabited those Straits, did not acknowledge any one for their Master; and were so jealous, that they would not suffer more than ten Men at a time to pass that way, and those Men too must not be Strangers or suspected Persons. Notwithstanding this Answer, the Moguls, after having used Intreaties to no purpose, proceeded to Threats, and told the King of Schirouane, That since they found that nothing could be obtained from him by fair means, whatever Assurance they gave him of their Sincerity, they now declared to him, that they not only expected that the Gates of those Straits
Strait's should be open'd to them to pass thro', to return into their own Country thro' the Countries of the Alani, Tartary, and Capchac, according to the Orders that had been given them: but moreover, that his Officers should be their Guides. The King having consider'd of it, granted the Mogul Generals their Demands.

After fifteen Days March, during which they went above forty Leagues by the Woods, Rocks and narrow Passages of Mount Caucasus, the Mogul Army, led by the King of Shirvane's Guides, arriv'd safely at Derbende, having pass'd thro' those Straits, not without Admiration of the Manner, Nature and Art had wrought together for the Defence of this Passage. Hubbe and Suida freely confess, that it was not to be forced. The very Walls, which were six Foot thick, were made of a certain Matter composed of Lumps of Gravel and Shells pounded together, which was much harder than any kind of Stone whatsoever.

This Passage was call'd by the Antients Porta Caspia, or the Caspian Gates; and the Word Derbende in Persian properly signifies, The Fastnings of the Gates. It is situate in 43 Degrees of Latitude, betwixt the Caspian Sea and a Mountain of the same Name, by which one must of necessity pass to go into Tartary, to the Alani, the Circassians, and the People of Capchac, when one comes from Trac, Azerbija, Syria, and Armenia. There is between the Sea and the Mountain a Space a quarter of a League broad; in this Space were built, at three or four hundred Paces from one another, two thick Walls, founded on the Rock, and reaching from the Mountain to the Sea; so that all Passengers were obliged to pass thro' by the Iron Gates
Genghizcan the Great.

Gates which were in these Walls. The Space taken in by these Walls made a third part of the City call'd Scheheryounan, that is to say, the City of Greeks, because it was built by the Command of Alexander the Great; Tor in antient Greek signifying Greece. But it was not in this Quarter of it that Derbende was best peopled, nor in the higher Parts which were on the side of the Mountain towards the top, altho it was much more peopled than Scheheryounan. The greatest number of Inhabitants were in a Place call'd the Moyenne, a City at the foot of the Mountain. These three Parts which compos'd the City, were near three quarters of a League in length, tho they were not very broad. It was a Place of no great Trade, by reaason of the proud and untractable Humour of the Inhabitants.

The Persians say, that Derbende having been once ruin'd, the Great Cæsars caus'd it to be rebuilt, in the Reign of Justinian the Emperor of Constantinople. There was also a kind of Port where Boats and Vessels daily arrived, and which was shut in by a Chain fallen'd to two Forts, which hinder'd any from entering into the Place by Sea without leave. All this at present is defended by a Castle which is on the top of the Mountain; and the Orientals say, That since Alexander led his Army by the way of Derbende, none can remember that any other but Genghizcan's pass'd that way.

When Hubbe and Suida were got beyond Derbende, they found themselves in the Country of the Alani, who, according to Strabo's Report, could speak twenty five Languages. This Country is the antient Albania, situate between the Caspian Sea and Iberia, in 37 Degrees of Latitude. These People, who are at present call'd...
call'd the Tartars of Daguestan, were extremely surpriz'd to see on a sudden these two Generals appear, of whom they had not so much as heard any mention: And fearing they had some design upon their Liberties, they at first did them all the Mischief, and put them to all the Trouble imaginable. They cut down the Woods to stop up the Lanes, broke up the Roads, and spoil'd all the Corn and Provisions, to cause the Moguls to perish; yet all this did not hinder Tarcou, the chief of their Cities, from being taken and ruin'd.

The Circassians having join'd the Alani, they much embarass'd Suida and Hubbe, till such time as these two Generals having found the way to surprize Terqui, the Capital of Circassia, conquer'd both, notwithstanding the Succours these People receiv'd from the Calmuck Tartars bordering on the Volga and Caspian Sea, whom they desired to enter into a League with them.

The Mogul Generals foreseeing, that if these other Tartars join'd in the League with the Alani and Circassians, and that if these Nations rais'd all the Forces they could against them, they could not withstand them, wholly apply'd themselves to break this Confederacy; to effect which, they sent Messengers to the Calmucks, to represent to them that they were Tartars as well as they, and all of the same Nation; whereas the Alani and Circassians were their profest Enemies; and that they ask'd nothing but to return to their own Country, and desired them to be the Arbitrators of this War. The Moguls Reafons, attended with several Presents for the Heads of the Calmuck Hords, who were not willing to provoke them farther, made them change their Minds, and recall their Troops; so that the Alani and Circassians seeing themselves depriv'd of their Assistance,
Genghizcan the Great.

Affianse, soon lost all Courage, and gave way to their Enemies.

Whilst these two Mogul Generals held Correspondence with the Calmuck Tartars, they pass'd the Volga with ease, and enter'd into Capschac: but it being late in the Year before they arriv'd, they were obliged to pass the Winter there, which very much displeas'd their Hosts; and their long continuance there having in the end given birth to several Feuds, their Friendship ended. Nevertheless, the Moguls having fortify'd themselves in the Country, and learnt that they might be reliev'd by Toufchican, who was near; they sent an Express to him, to inform him of the Condition they were in.

This Prince immediately sent away the best part of his Troops to them, led by such skilful Commanders, that they found means to join these two Generals, notwithstanding all the Efforts of their Enemies to hinder them. And all these Troops thus join'd, made a considerable Army, who without much trouble constrain'd these People to acknowledge Genghizcan for their Emperor, as well as the major part of the other Tartars who acknowledg'd him. Toufchican being obliged to go to Court, sent Advice of his Departure to Hubbe and Suida, whom he left Masters of Capschac in his Absence, with Order to attack the Nogays, who had offended him.

The Winter having frozen the Rivers, gave the Moguls an easy Passage over Places, which would have otherwise much embaras'd them. By this means they went as far as Afracan, which they subdued: And this War, which lasted six or seven Months, was not finish'd till such
such time as the Nogays had acknowledg'd Touschi for their Sovereign, and Genghiscan for their Grand Can. Hubbe and Suida remain'd in this Country till the Autumn of the Year following, 1224; and then Touschi being return'd from Court, and from the Diet which was held at Toncar, they left it with the Troops they had brought with them, before those this Prince sent them, had join'd them.

The City of Astraracan, which the Mahometans call'd Hadgi Tarcan, is in the Isle of Elgoi, which separates Europe from Asia, and makes part of the Countries of the Tartars of Nogay. It is situate in 46 Degrees 22 Minutes of Latitude, about fifty Leagues from the Caspian Sea, into which several Rivers discharge themselves. Its Walls, instead of Bastions, have Towers of Stone; and are furnish'd with several Pieces of Brass Cannon. The Garifon of the City is always a strong one. The Trade is carry'd on with the Nogays by the Calmucks and other Tartars; as also by the Muscovites, Persians and Armenians. Its principal Traffick is in Silks and Brandy. The Czar of Muscovy rais'd a great Revenue by the Taxes he lays upon them.
CHAP. X.

Genghiscan's Departure from Sogdiana for the Diet at Toncat. The Arrival of the Princes his Sons at this Diet.

When the Mogul Emperor had resolved on his Departure from Sogdiana to go to the Diet which he had called together at Toncat, he freed the People of this Province for several Years from the Payment of the usual Tribute, because he was well pleased with their Deportment to him. And to give the Lords of this Country some particular Marks of his Affection, he remitted to them during their whole Lives the Taxes which the Nobility of each Kingdom were obliged to pay to their Prince. This Proceeding of the Emperor caused much Joy to the Inhabitants of Samarcand. But the Joy was not so universal in the City, it being damp'd with seeing the Queen Turcan-Catum, who had been brought thither a Prisoner with her Court, and all the great Officers of the Empire that had been taken, led as in Triumph before the Grand Can's Army, who was going to pass thro' those Countries where she was still beloved. Her Haram, or the Ladies of her Seraglio, follow'd her. The great Officers belonging once to Sultan Mebemed marched after. Then the Throne and Crown which he had taken from the Sultan, and his Mother, were borne in State. In this manner Genghiscan marched
marched out of Sogdiana, after having lived there near a Year, and went to the River Jaxartes which he crossed over.

He arrived at Toncag the beginning of the Year of our Lord 1224, and of the Hegira 621. He had made choice of this City to hold the Diet in, both because of its agreeable Situation, and by reason it was able to furnish in a sufficient manner Provisions and all other things needful for so numerous an Assembly. The Princes Oehai and Zagatai repair'd to Court as soon as it was possible for them, after having distributed into different Places the Armies they commanded. The two Bodies of Forces under Zagatai were rejoin'd in Tocaristan; but having ruined the Countries of talean and Bamiyan, he was obliged to return up to the Oxus to subdue them, and did not cross over it till he came to Bedacchian. From thence he continued his way Eastward by the Confines of Turquestan, and went as far as Otrar, where he fix'd the Head Quarters for his Army, whom he caused to encamp in the Turks Country.

Oehai used the same diligence; for when he had finished the Conquest of Gzana, and the Troops of the other Generals, with those who were not design'd for Persia, had join'd his Army, he went back up the Country as far as Becana, from whence he went to Samarcand, because he had Orders to leave his Troops in Sogdiana, quartering along the Territory of Samarcand as far as the Jaxartes.

Touchechian repair'd also to Court, as has been already said. It had been a long time since he had seen the Emperor his Father; for immediately after the Reduction of Casimne he had been sent into Capsebac, where in spite of all the Troops of Hords and their Cans joined in
league against him, in less than four Years' time he made himself Master of these great Provinces, except that part which was situate in the South, from Nogai to the Caspian Sea, which Hubbe and Suida reduced in their return home by the Country of the Alani. In fine, Touschi had push'd his Conquests as far as the Frontiers of Muscovy.

When this Prince came into the Grand Can's Presence, he kneel'd down, and the Emperor gave him his Hand to kiss. The Princes his Brothers had the same Honour at their Arrival before him, after having laid their Presents at the foot of the Imperial Throne, according to the usual Custom: but altho' their Presents were very considerable, Touschic'an's surpass'd them all by much; for besides several rare things, he presented a hundred thousand Horses, amongst which there were twenty thousand all Bay-colour'd. After the Emperor had embraced his Sons, and testify'd by his Carefulness how well satisfy'd he was with their Conduct, he open'd his Treasures, and loaded them with Gifts. After which he order'd a great Feast to be made, and gave publick Banquets for a whole Month. But the most sumptuous Treat was on their return from a general Hunting, in which there had been kill'd several thousand Beasts of all kinds, of which the best were made use of, and dress'd after the Tartars Fashion. The Grand Can's Falconers furnished also abundance of all sorts of Birds. They drank not only the usual Drink among the Moguls and Tartars, and Sherbets, the way of making which they had learnt from the Persians, but also exquisite fine Wines.

---

A Bay-colour'd Horse is a reddish brown.

A a which
which the Emperor had caused to be brought from the Southern Countries, which he prefer'd before the Tartarian Balpiringe, Gruit, Beer, or Cammez. Yet they besides these,consumed a prodigious quantity of Balpiringe, which was a kind of Hydromel, or Methelgin, made of Honey, Rice, and Millet, which they clarify'd so well that nothing could look of a finer Colour. They generally drank a great deal of this Liquor, because of its pleasant Taste; but it made them drunk as soon as Wine, being as strong.

This Feast was made in the Winter when little Cammez was used, and was now drank no where but at the Tables of great Lords, where the Butlers, to shew their Skill, served up a Drink which was as hard to make good in this Season as it was easy to make pleasant in Summer. They made this Cammez of Mares Milk, which is very sweet. They poured it into a great Churn, where they churn'd it extraordinary well, in the same manner as they make Butter. But this Mares Milk must be well beat, if one would make good Cammez; for which reason this Work is always reserved for Men to do, and the Women do not meddle with it. Neither do they milk the Mares, who are generally very troublesome, because they will not stand still to be milk'd, at least if their Foals be not held near them, which are not easily governed. When the Butter is made, they take it out of the Churn, and the Butter-milk is the Cammez; but it is different from our Butter-milk, because it is sharp on the Tongue like the best Wine, and as pleasant. This

* The Way to make Cammez: Drink
Drink is of a greyish Colour; but the Grand Can's Officers of his Table know how to give it a more agreeable Colour, and to render it still more pleasant: for by much churning this Liquor they make another, which is called Caracammmez, that is, black Cammmez, which they reserve for their Master's drinking only. Those who have drank of it affirm that the other Cammmez is not so pleasant; which is not to be wonder'd at, because they draw out the purest Part of it, which swims on the top, and the groser Part remains at the bottom, and is reserved for other Uses. But let this be as it will, the Authors who make mention of it, assure us it is a very wholesome Drink, and attribute great Vertues to it. The Beer made of Rice and Gritt, which is the common Drink in Winter, was plentifully distributed among the Domesticks at the Feast. This Gritt is very pleasant, tho a little sour. It is, by means of a Curd made of Goats Milk, render'd very hard and dry, which they keep for the Winter; and never spoils, because they make it extreme hard after the Butter is taken out: and this Drink is afterwards made by steeping this Curd in Water.
CHAP. XI.

The General Diet held in the City of Toncat.

The Feast being ended, the Grand Can caused all things to be got ready for holding the Assembly he had conven'd, and had so well concerted his Measures, that all the Members of this great Council appear'd in Toncat at the Day assign'd them. The Can of the Mongols, whom he had heretofore adopt'd, had been summon'd to take his Place as his adopted Son; and several other Sovereign Princes, who had voluntarily submitted to Genghiscan, or were in Alliance with him, fail'd not to come thither. Besides these, the Governours of the Provinces of Cathai, Mogolistan, Caracatai, Iran, and Toncat, were also there, and set up their Tents in the Plain of Toncat.

Altho this Plain was seven Leagues long, yet it could hardly contain the Tents and Attendants of all these great Persons who were to be present at this Assembly: The greatest part of them had caused their moveable Houses to be drawn thither, and every Lord had a numerous Retinue. These Houses were built upon Wheels, which carried very long Pieces of Wood fasten'd to their Axeltrees, on which all the Machine was rested; and the Axeltrees bearing all the Weight, they made them of the hardest Wood they could get. These Houses
Genghizcan the Great.

Houses resembled our Tents in Europe, the Floor was of Wood, the four sides were enclosed with Cane-work or Laths. The Roof was raised in the Fashion of a Dome, and on the top there was a round Hole which served both for a Window and Chimney; but if the House was large, they used some other Opening lower, to render the Place more light. Some were cover'd with Felt, rubb'd with Sheep's Milk, so that the Rain might run off without penetrating it. But that was practis'd only by poor People; for the Rich caused the Felt to be plaister'd over with a Composition in which was a great deal of Tallow, which was less easy to be penetrated by the Rain. There are some curious People, who, to be distinguisht from the rest, cause their Houses to be cover'd with Stuffes of various Colours.

They make these Houses larger or smaller as they please, but they are always longer than broad; and however light the Wood is they are made of, they are sometimes so heavy, by reason of the Furniture they contain, that they are obliged to put to one of them thirty Oxen to draw it along. There are some that are made to take to pieces, and set together at pleasure; and others that always remain fix'd on their Wheels, which are those that can be drawn by two or three Oxen, which generally serve for Store-houses to put up the best of the Furniture, and Clothes. And the great Lords having abundance of these little Houses, caused them to be placed round about their principal Lodging; so that the dwelling Place of every Nobleman thus dispos'd appears a Camp. And we must observe, that the Door of every House is always turned to the South.

A 3

The
The History of

The Oxen which draw these Houses are the finest Ornament of the Moguls and Tartars Equepages, because they all strive to have fine ones. There are Oxen so dear, that they cannot be purchased but by very rich People. Those that are most esteem'd come from the Country of Tangut. These are extremely strong, and there are some of them have Hair like Horses; and the most part have that on their Tails white, and as soft as Silk. They make use of Camels in some Places; but the use of Oxen is much more common.

When they had marked out the King's Quar ters in the Plain, which took up near two Leagues in Compass, and the Streets, publick Places, Bazars or Markets were appointed, they pitched the Tents for the Emperor's Household. That which was made for the Diet to sit in, would contain at least two thousand Persons; and to distinguish it from the rest, it was cover'd with White. They erected a magnificent Throne for Genghisken, and forgot not to place on an Eminence the black Felt-Carpet on which this Prince was seated when he was proclamed Grand Can. And this Emblem of the poor Estate of the Moguls at that time was always held in great Veneration by them, so long as their Empire lasted. The Tent for the Diet had but two great Entrances, the one they named the Imperial Gate, the other the Publick. All the Members of the Assembly were not allow'd to enter or go forth but by the common Gate, altho they both flood open. The Imperial one was reserved for the Emperor only to come in at; and the People respected it in such a manner, that no Man, of what Quality soever, did once approach it, tho there was no Guard placed to keep them out. The
Genghizcan the Great.

Guards which were at the common Door, served only for a shew of Grandure; for the Orders given were so exactly observed by every body, that no Disorder ever happen'd amongst them.

Altho' the Luxury of the Princes and chief Mogul Lords was not yet come to the height it arrived at after Genghizcan's Death, yet there appear'd a great deal of Magnificence in their Habits and Equipages. On the greatest part of the Tents there were placed Streamers of divers Colours, made of the richest Silks; nothing could be a finer Sight. The Princes and Lord's Horses had Saddles and Furniture set with precious Stones and Gold, which seem'd to vie with each other. The Habits the Mo- guls wore, were like those the Turks and Otto- mans wear at this present time. Those of the great Lords were made of Gold and Silver Stuffs, and rich Silks, which they had brought from the Countries they had conquer'd; and it being still very cold Weather, they wore under their Robes a certain kind of fine Fur Garment, called Sables, that is brought from Russia and Siberia, which they wore next their Skins. They wore, when abroad in the Field, over their Habits, to preserve them, great Coats of Wolv's Skins. Their Attendants had for the most part Coats made of Felt of divers Colours, lined with Wadding.

Altho' this Assembly was called together to settle the Affairs of the Empire, yet there needed not much time to do it: for notwithstanding the great Conquests and vast number of People subdued, Zaga'tai, the Keeper of Genghizcan's Laws, had put them in so good a Method, that all things which were proposed...
The History of

An. Dom. 1224.
Heg. 621.

The extent of the Countries subdued by Genghiskan.

to be regulated, were immediately refer'd to these Laws, and by them determined without Trouble, so that nothing more was requisite than to ratify them, which extremely rejoiced the Legislator. Genghiskan, as has been before observed, much delighting to speak in publick, failed not before the Assembly broke up to make an Oration in praise of his Laws, and at the same time of himself. He recommended the exact Observation of them to all the People, and shew'd how advantageous and useful they were, since by their means so many important Affairs had been regulated in so short a time. He likewise said that the Observation of these very Laws had been the Cause of all his Conquests, and of the Honour the Moguls now shared with him. From hence he took occasion to recount his Victories, naming every Sovereign Prince he had conquer'd, not excepting even the Prince of Tartary, there present. If it may be forgiven a great Prince to praise himself, Genghiskan merits to be excused, considering he was posses'd of all Tartary, from the East as far as Muscovy, and from the uninhabitable Parts of the North as far as Transoxiana, and of the vast Country of Turkistan as far as China and India; nay, even of the half of China itself, which was subject to him, and which Prince Utaik his Brother had govern'd with such Prudence during his Absence, that at his return he found it quiet, notwithstanding the several Attempts the King of Mangi, which is the Southern China, had made to excite them by his Emmissaries to a Revolt. All the Countries between Turkistan, the Caspian Sea, and the Rivers Oxus and Jaxartes, were entirely subdued; as also the People of Sende beyond the Indus as far as the Persian Sea,
Genghizcan the Great.

Corassana, Mazendran, and other Parts of the great Empire of Persia, all acknowledged Genghizcan for their Sovereign, excepting the little Country of Fars, the Conquest of which he had been obliged to leave to his Lieutenants.

He was not content to relate the Number and Names of the Countries he had conquer'd, but order'd, as the most effectual means to convince the Diet of his Greatness, that all the Ambassadors should be call'd into the Assembly who had follow'd the Court, and who were at this time in their Tents, which were pitched round the Imperial Tent, as also all the Envoys and Deputies sent from the Kingdoms and Countries he had subdued. They all went to the foot of the Throne, and there he gave them Audience. After which he dismis'd the Assembly, and every one retired to his Home.

Toufchi, who look'd on Capshac as his own Kingdom, soon after took leave of the Emperor, who confirmed to him his Grant of the Sovereign Authority over it, and gave him leave to take under his Command the Troops which now were with Hubbe and Suida, the better to support his Dignity, and subdue the neighbouring Princes who should go about to molest him.

Prince Toufchi was no sooner arrived in Capshac, but the two Generals put their Troops into his hands, and returned to the Grand Can, whom they found still at Toncat. He gave them a good Reception, accepted their Prefents, and caused rich Veils to be given them. He went from Toncat soon after, attended with them and all his Court, making always the Captive Queen to follow him, mounted on a Chariot, and loaded with Irons, to shew to the Eyes of the Nations a proud Monument of his Victories.
When he was on his March, he gave an hour's Conversation every day to Hubbe and Suida, to relate to him their Expeditions, and the Rarities they had come to the knowledge of in the strange Countries they had been in, which they entertained him with; so that they had still something new to satisfy the Emperor's Curiosity till he arrived in Mogolistan.


cap. XII.

Genghizcan's Return to Caracorom, the Seat of his Empire. The Moguls Marriages. The Beginning of the War of Tangut.

The Grand Can past by the way of Turquestan, from whence he cross'd over the Kingdom of the Naimans, and enter'd into Caracatai, and some Months after went to Caracorom, the Seat of his Empire. This City, which was no less than twelve days Journey distant from the Place where this Prince was born in the Country of the Teca Moguls, was really a very inconsiderable Place when it was taken from Oungbcan; but Genghizcan had much improved and embellished it since, and after him, Oelai-Caan caused it to be rebuilt, and it became a very famous and populous City.

The Eastern Historians do not mention how Genghizcan was received by the Inhabitants of his Capital City, nor what became of the unfortunate Queen Turcan-Catun, nor of the Carizmen.
Genghizcan the Great.

Lords who bore her Company; but it is to be supposed that these illustrious Captives finish'd their Lives in Misery and Obscurity.

The first Pleasure the Emperor tasted at Caracorum was the Sight of some of his Grandsons, whom he had not seen for seven Years. Amongst these, there were two of whom he had conceived great Hopes, which they did not fail to answer. They were called Cublay and Hulacou. The first was then about ten years old, and the other nine. They continually employ'd themselves in Hunting, which among the Moguls was accounted a great Sign of Fire and Courage in those that were naturally addicted to this bold Exercise. The Inclination they shew'd for this Sport so extremely pleas'd the Grand Can, that he gave them Employments near him, and took the trouble to instruct them himself.

And now this Prince being recover'd of his Fatigues, applied himself to settle the State. He first cau'd the great Officers in China to be called to Court, to give him an account of their Behaviour; and his Brother Utakin having fully informed him of their Actions, some were punished, and others rewarded. He did the same by the great Lords of Mogolistan and Caracatay. He sent also for Schidacou the Sovereign of Tangut, who had offer'd to continue to be tributary to him. But this Prince fearing he would not pardon him his former Rebellion, took no care to obey his Orders, but rather thought of making a League with the Chinese of Mangi, and the Oriental Turks his Neighbours. However, to gain time, he us'd several Pretences to excuse himself to the Emperor, whose Troops not being all arrived, he dissembled his Anger till such time as he was
in a condition to make him feel his Resentments. Mean while Schidascou found the Chinese and Turks disposed to second him. The Chinese complain'd of Genghizcan's usurping the Country of Catai, and the Turks of the vile Usage he gave Queen Turcan-Catun, who had always used them well when they were her Subjects. Nevertheless, the Difficulty of forming Leagues where the Interests are different amongst those who compefe it, did not permit them to come to a conclusion before the Grand Can was able to begin a War against them. Schidascou had already levied a great many Troops, and prepared to receive the Moguls.

During this time the Emperor's Army arrived near Caracorum very much fatigued. This Prince suffer'd them to rest for some Weeks; but it was not his Custom to let them be long idle. He caused the usual Hunting to be proclaimed, and all the Troops were obliged to be present at it, altho' the Winter was very severe. The Hunting was not quite ended, when News came that Schidascou had so well befuddled himself to get a considerable Army together, that he had at last accomplish'd it. This Report being confirmed by several Couriers who were sent to the Grand Can by his Correspondents, he resolved to send some Troops towards Tana to observe his Enemy. And the Winter being yet very cold, he order'd the Captains to give their Soldiers Coats lined with Sheep-Skins. They also cover'd the Horses with Felt, and put them in a condition to support the Rigour of the Season.

The Care of providing for this War did not hinder the Diversions in the Court and City, where there were great Rejoicings. An infinite
nite number of Marriages were celebrated at Caracorum, and in Mogolistan. The Emperor himself married the Princesses his Son's Daughters to Princes of his own Blood; and their Marriages were kept with publick Feasts, suitable to the Quality of their Husbands. The Treats, and Horfe-Races after the Custom of the Moguls, a long time diverted the Court; and the Soldiers being loaden with rich plunder, several bought the handsomest Maids they could light on, and married them. Which was much practised amongst the Moguls and Tartars, their Laws permitting them so to do, provided those they married were neither their Sisters nor Aunts. A Man might marry two own Sisters, may, even his Father's Wives after his Decease, only her excepted of whom he was the Son.

They did not observe any great Ceremonies in their Marriages. They contented themselves with the mutual Consent of both Parties, managed by the Fathers and Mothers. The Marriage being concluded on, the Father of the Maid received from the Bridegroom the Sum of Money agreed upon; after which he gave a great Banquet to all his Son-in-Law's Relations, both Men and Women, at which his own likewise did not fail to be present. In the midst of this Feast, the Bride got away; and went to hide herself with some Female Relations; and when her Companions who were before acquainted with, and had contrived the Place of her Retreat, saw the Bridegroom perplex'd to find her, they were extremely diverted, and nothing could more torment him than their Laughter: but when he was so lucky as to find her, he immediately carried her home with him to his House, to which all the Relations and Friends accompanied them, and then taking
taking leave, left them to themselves. The next day after the Marriage, the Bride had her Hair cut off from the Top of her Head to her Forehead, and dressed herself in a large Garment or Vest which reached down to her Heels. This Vest is open before, and fasten'd or tied together on the right side. After this she put on her Head a Cap bow'd to a little light Hoop, which makes the Fashion of it round, and is tied on under her Chin with a Ribband. This sort of Cap or Turban is generally two or three Hands high; but those which Women wear who would appear above the Vulgar, are sometimes an Ell high. It is square at top, cover'd with a rich Stuff, and adorned with Plumes and Jewels, which give them a great Lustre when they are on horseback; and these Caps being hollow within, they put their Hair into them. The young People make Compliments to the married Couple during eight days, bringing Presents, which the Husband receives, without being obliged to make any Returns, or even to treat them; but the eight days being expired, he must treat all his and her Relations and Friends: and these Feasts seldom end without some Quarrel, because they are too profuse of their Liquors.

But to return to our History: So soon as the Emperor's Troops arrived in the Country of Tangut, the Mogul Captains stopp'd short to conceal and secure themselves and Soldiers from being surprized by Schidaisou. This Prince believed they would not begin to march towards him till the Spring, and was therefore much surprized to hear of their Approach, and even startled, altho they were still a great distance from him; for they stopp'd near a City named
Genghizcan the Great.

Exine or Azine, which was to the South of Caracorom, and that was twelve days hard Journey from Campion, where Schidiascou kept his Court.

The Moguls made great havock in his Country before he could send Troops enough to oppose them. They had even time to get together as much Forage and Provisions of Cattle and Corn in this Country, as would suffice not only to subsist them, but also to serve the other Troops that were on their march to come and join them.

The City of Campion was surrounded with strong Walls, Towers, and Ditches. The Caravans of the Muscovite, Tartar, Persian and Armenian Merchants, always stopp'd at this Place when they came to trade with China. And as none but the Ambassadors of Sovereign Princes were permitted to pass farther, all the Trade must of necessity be carried on in this City for the Merchandize they traffick'd with the Chinese for, who brought thither all the finest Commodities the neighbouring Provinces produced, as Linen Cloths, and other Stuffs made of Cotton, Gold and Silver Silks, and China Ware; which render'd Campion a very rich Place. There were in this Country likewise many good Towns; and among the rest, Sachion, which was a very large Town, but not a Place of much Trade. It was inhabited by Nestorian Christians, Mahometans, and many Pagans, who had each their Temples and free Exercise of their Religions. They were a People curious of knowing Secrets, and particularly applied themselves to the Syxia, which teaches to make things appear which were not in being, and those disappear which were present. Their Skill in this Science occa-
Succuir is still dependent on Tangut. It has its Cities, and its Capital is called also Succuir, in which all the Houses are built of Brick, and the Inhabitants are of the same Sects as those of Sachion. The Mountains adjacent do produce the best Rhubarb of any Place in all the Country of Tangut. They dig it up in the Winter, because in Summer the Root is full of Holes, and hollow like a Sponge; if gather'd in that Season. There are in this Province almost all sorts of Fruits that grow in Europe, except Grapes. The People are well-bred, and the Men are not debauched, as at Camul, a City near it. They believe in Tangut that it is a Sin for a Man to endeavour to seduce a Wife or a Maid; but at the same time they think it no Crime to lie with a Woman, if she makes the Offer. The Men are little of Stature, have black Hair; their Noses are short and small, and they have little Hair on their Chins. They generally have as many Wives as they are able to maintain. The Women and Men both wear black Caps made pecked at the top like a Sugar-Loaf. Their Money is little Bits of Silver without any Stamp on it, with which they buy what they want, and is valued by its Weight. 'Tis out of this Country that the fine wild Oxen come, of which mention is made before. There are also very large Elephants and beautiful Cows; and 'tis a thing worthy Observation, that these Cows will not suffer the Bull to come near them, unless they hear some body singing to excite them to it.

The Tartars of Tangut make use of Astrologers in almost all their Affairs, and they will
not undertake any Business without first consulting one who observes the Stars, and points out a lucky Moment to begin it. They even consult the Astrologers about burying their Dead, who are not inter’d till after very exact Observations made. And to prevent a dead Corps infecting the House if it be kept long unburied, they put it into a Coffin made of very thick hard Wood, and stop all the Crevices with Pitch, after having put into it Camphire and other Perfumes; and then cover it with some rich Pall. But because they serve their Dead with the same Meats they used whilst living, they uncover the Coffin, near which they set the Meats, and leave it so long a time as the Deceased used generally to sit at Dinner, being persuaded that his Spirit is present, and sees all that is done in the House, and that he feeds on the Scent of the Meats. When the Astrologer thinks it a proper time to bury the dead Person, he must still make farther Observations to know whether they must carry the Body out by the Door of the House as usual, or make another; for if they omit exactly to follow all his Directions, they fail not to impute to this In-observation all the Misfortunes that befal the Family. After all these Ceremonies they carry the Body out of the City to burn it. It is followed by his Relations and Friends, but several times set down by the way in Huts built on purpose, in every one of which they find a Table spread, and Meats upon it for him.
The History of

Genghizcan's March to Tangut. The last Actions of the Sultan Gelaleddin at his Return from India. The Battle fought with Schidalcou the Sovereign of Tangut.

The main part of Genghizcan's Army were not in a condition to march and join the Troops at Tangut till about the Month of June in the Year 1225. Heg. 622, and then they were obliged to provide against the Season, because the warm Weather did not usually begin in Tangut till about the end of that Month, and the Country could not furnish but very few Necessaries before that time.

This Emperor would always share the Fatigues and Hardships of War with his Soldiers. He made a review of his Troops; after which he order'd a hundred thousand Men for China, where he fear'd a Revolt, if Fortune favour'd Schidalcou: then with three hundred and fifty thousand which remain'd, including those that were already gone to Tangut, he began his March. He divided his Army into ten Bodies, to each of which he assign'd a particular General. The Princes Zagatai and Ottai commanded the two first; the others were under the Command of Caraschar, Ilencou, Bela, Hubbe, Suida, and other Lords who had signalized themselves in the past Wars. But all these Generals were subject to Prince Tuli.
Genghizcan the Great.

Besides these, he had a flying Camp of broken Officers for the Instruction of his Grandsons Cublay and Hulacou, who in the end became very great Men.

After several Weeks March from the Country of Mogolistan, the Army crossed a Desert which was forty days Journey over, in the Province that lay most Eastward of the Naimans; and when he was arrived on the Frontiers of Tangut, which was also called Cachin, the Emperor made his Coming known to Shidascou by taking of the City of Ezine, which his Troops that were before arrived had render'd unable to hold out long against him. The sudden Reduction of this City gave leave to his Troops to repose and refresh themselves after the long March they had undergone. Genghizcan not being willing to do any thing rashly, or run great hazards, chose this Place for his Residence during his Stay in Tangut; and acted so wisely, that some of the People of the Country, gain'd by his Presents to them, served as Spies for him, and gave him an account of the Strength and Disposition of his Enemies, informing him that Shidascou had sent out thirty thousand Horse, in several Parties, to endeavour to surprize him. And in reality these Troops, which were composed of select Men, soon appear'd on the Frontiers of the Country of Ezine, and at first defeated some Parties of Moguls whom they met with, but soon retired on the Advice given them that the Grand Can was marching with all his Army against Shidascou, who had got together an Army of five hundred thousand Men, the greatest part of whom were furnished him by the Chinese of Mangi.
The History of

An. Dom. 1225. Genghizcan, tho his Forces were much inferior in number, yet never was shock'd; but flatter'd himself that his Enemies Troops were unskilful in War, and undisciplined; whereas his were, on the contrary, inured to fighting, and used to conquer, and therefore would certainly gain the Victory. He went forward therefore in search of Schidascou. Zagatai and Caraschar Nevian had forty thousand Men under their Command; Hubbe and Suida had thirty thousand; Iencou commanded twenty thousand Carizmeans, who had in several Countries been on the Moguls side: a like number of Indians obey'd the Commands of Bela; and Bedreddin, who had serv'd the Grand Can against Mehemed, because that Sultan had put his Uncle to death, brought thirty thousand Men from the Country of the Getes, and the Frontiers of Capshau. A Can named Danischmende, a Favourite of the Emperor, had under his Command thirty thousand Carizmeans, new-rais'd Troops. The Can of the Tagares led the Prince's Auxiliary Troops, who had after his Example voluntarily submitted to Genghizcan. And all these Generals had as many Lieutenants under them, as they had ten thousands of Men. The old veteran Bands were commanded by the Prince Oftai, and made the Body of Reserve which attended the Emperor's Person; and in this Body was the flying Camp of Reformed Officers.

Altho all these Officers and Troops were very rich, they were all plainly dreft, because the Grand Can would have them so. The Enemy, on the contrary, were dreft in Cloth of Gold and Silver, and Silks brought from China; and the very common Soldiers had Habits much finer than the Mogul Officers.

Schidascou
Genghizcan the Great.

Schidoscoun having learnt that Genghizcan was but two Days March from him, sent a hundred thousand Horse, detach'd out of all the Squadrons in his Army, to go and surprize his Van-guard. They attack'd them with much Vigour, but found them so firm, that they could not so much as put one Rank into Disorder, whatever Efforts they made. The Night coming on, caus'd the Fight to cease; and Schidoscoun's Troops retired with Loss, and return'd to the main Army, which they met within a Day's Journey of the Place where they had fought. In the mean time Genghizcan still march'd forward; and at last the two Armies came in sight of one another.

Schidoscoun's Army took up a great space of Ground; but the Moguls were obliged to fight upon the Ice on a Lake, the Waters of which were furnish'd by a Canal from the River Cara-mouran, and were at this time frozen. A general Fight began, and the Moguls quickly had the Advantage. The Troops of Tangit, and others on the same Line in Front, were entirely routed; and all the Enemy's Army had been so at that instant, if the Chinesse commanded by Fadallah, Mayanean, whom Genghizcan had caus'd to be seized in the Chinesse War, and the Turks led by the Prince of Jurge, had not strongly withstood the Moguls Fury: But these two Generals charg'd the two Wings of the Grand Can's Army with so much Bravery, that it reviv'd the Courage of their Soldiers, and they made a terrible Slaughter, killing above thirty thousand Men. This good Success became fatal to the victorious Troops, who believing the Moguls vanquish'd, charg'd them boldly, without keeping their Ranks; whereas the Moguls, who always kept close and in order, suffer'd
The History of

An. Dom. 1225.
Heg. 622.
Mog. 787.
Dog. 1178.

suffer'd themselves with much difficulty to be broken. At last the resolute Resistance Maran-
can and the Prince of Jurge met with in the Center astonish'd them; and the Corps de Reserve coming up, and falling upon them all at once, made the Turks and Chinese give back, and betake themselves to flight. Schidaseou himself, after having shew'd an extraordinary Bravery, was oblig'd to fly, and leave the Field of Battel to the Enemy, who cut in pieces all the Troops that resist'd. And 'tis said, that there were kill'd in this Battel three hundred thousand Men, belonging to this Prince and his Allies.

The Mogul History makes no mention how many Genghizcan lost; but it speaks of all those who signaliz'd themselves in this great Action, and says, that the young Princes Cublay and Hulacou made appear by their Courage, that they should be able one Day to equal their Grandfather. After this Victory Genghizcan marched against the Turks of Jurge, but they submitted; and he was contented with their Submission and their rich Presents, because he design'd the Conquest of the Southern China, and would therefore preserve his Forces for a great an Enterprize. However, he imposed an annual Tribute on these Turks, and agreed with their Deputies as to the Garisons they should admit into their Towns, of his Soldiers; and likewise obliged them to furnish him some Troops to join with his own. So he went no farther, but past the Winter in the Western part of Tangut; where he receiv'd Letters from Bagdat, which acquainted him with the death of the Califf. On this News he order'd new Levies to be made: and whilst that was doing, he secured himself, not only of the Countries dependent on
Genghizcan the Great.

on Tangut, as Ergimul, Sinqui, and Egricaya; but also of the Countries adjacent, and particularly of the City of Sikon, which was distant from Pequin but fourscore Days Journey. It much imported him to have this Place, which might have given him great disquiet when he was enter'd into the Southern China.

There needed a Country of such vast extent, and so fertile as Tangut, to subsist so numerous an Army for so long a time: accordingly the Army was maintain'd there without Trouble, and past the Winter in encamping and decamping in the Southern parts of this Kingdom towards Turquestan, where there was abundance of fat Pasture Ground. They past the other Seafons in the Northern Quarters of this Country in the Mountains, marching always without stopping in any City, both to prevent their wanting Forage, as also to preserve the Horses from the Flies, and other Insects of that kind, of which there is great quantity in the Southern Countries.

After this good Success, it seem'd that the Mogul Emperor had nothing more to desire: His Empire was at Peace; his Court appear'd all Joy, and nothing was thought on but how to divert him. He said himself, That he wish'd for nothing more than to do good to his Subjects; and that he would wholly apply himself to render them happy, so soon as he had subdued the rest of China, of which the Conquest appear'd to him not difficult. But God had otherwise order'd it; and Fortune, which does not use to continue Men long in the same state, in a short time changed this Prince's Joy into Sorrow: whilst he was diverting himself in the midst of his Family, he was inform'd of the death of Touschican, his eldest Son. This News, which was

The Death of Touschican, his eldest Son. This News, which was

Bb 4
An. Dom. 1226.

The History was brought him from Cappadocia, afflicted all the Court. The Emperor shew’d at first much Constancy of Mind; but by degrees, insensibly, his Constraint gave way to his fatherly Affection, and he fell into a deep Melancholy, which from that time hinder’d him from relishing any Diversion.

He even appear’d scarcely sensible of the News they brought him, of a great Victory gained by his Lieutenant over Gelaleddin. This Sultan being inform’d that the Emperor was far off, return’d from India into Merawan with some Troops; from thence he went to Schiraz, afterwards to Ispahan, into which his Friends introduced him secretly, and there he augmented his little Army. From thence he went to Bagdat, and not being well received, he beat the Troops the Califf had sent against him, and retook Tauris. Then he march’d against the Georgians with thirty thousand Men, whom he employ’d, at his return to Azerbijana, against a more numerous Army of the Moguls, who pass’d over the Oxus in the beginning of the Year 1226, Hegira 623, to go to meet him; which Army defeated his, of which Advice was given the Grand Can, as is before mentioned. The Moguls made themselves Masters of Tauris after the Sultan’s Defeat; who rallying his Forces, harass’d his Enemies, and had something the better of them. He laid Siege to Erlat, the capital City of Armenia, where the Califf of Bagdat sent an Ambassador to him with Presents. From thence he pass’d into Anatolia, to oblige them to render him the same Respect they had done his Father; but he was there beaten by Aladdin Keicobad, a Seljukide Prince of the third Branch, and by other Sovereign Princes of that Country who were join’d to-
Genghizcan the Great.

gether; who nevertheless did not pursue him after the Battle, because they were willing he should keep the Moguls in play; who yet at last surpriz’d him, and entirely routed and pillag’d his Camp. He fled to Mahan on the Confinies of Azerbijana, where he lived a whole Winter without being known: But being at last discover’d, he retired into Curdistan, where he was kill’d four Years after Genghizcan’s Death, by a Native of that Country, in the House of one of his Friends, where he had taken Refuge.

So soon as the Spring of the Year 1226 was come, and that the Emperor’s Troops were arrived in the Place he had appointed them to meet, to enter into China, and march against the People of Mangi; there arrived an Officer from Schidascon, whom this Prince sent to the Grand Can, to intreat him to forget what was past, and to accept of his Service. Schidascon was resolved to make this Step, because he fear’d left the Moguls should carry his Fort of Arbaca, to which he was retir’d after his defeat. Fearing this, and hoping to better his Condition by submitting, he condescended, notwithstanding the Ambition and Hatred that continually animated him against them. His Envoy was well receiv’d at Genghizcan’s Court, who, in an Audience he gave him, told him, ‘You may assure your Master, that I will no more think of what is past betwixt him and me; and that I will grant him my Friendship.

Soon after the Emperor fell sick, and his Physicians attributed his Illness to the badness of the Air of the marshy Countries where he had a long time resided, and to the Grief the death of his Son Toufchi had occasion’d him. His Sickness having seiz’d him near to a Forest in
The History of

in the Road to China, the Generals of the Army were obliged to suspend the March of the Troops, and to take new measures for their Subsistence. All the Court was encamped near the Forest. The Camp, composed of a prodigious quantity of Tents and moving Houses, resembled a great City. The Quarter where the Grand Can was lodged, was farther off than usual, and the Chamber where this Prince lay was out of the hearing of the Noise and Hurry of the Court. But all these Precautions were in vain, he recover’d not his Health: On the contrary, whatever Care the Physicians and Astrologers took, the Difease daily increased upon him. At last, the Emperor, who never flatter’d himself in Matters of Importance, judging by the Pains he felt that his Life was in danger, resolved to dispose of his Dominions, and name a Successor.

CHAP. XIV.

The Advancement of Ootai Can to the great Empire of Asia. The Death of Genghiscan.

The Grand Can finding himself extremely ill, cau’d his Sons and their Children to come together into his Presence: The other Princes of the Blood also came, according to his Orders. He set himself upright, and notwithstanding the Pains that racked him, he put on, as much as possibly he could, that majestic Look which had always to that moment both
Genghizcan the Great.

both awed and gain'd respect even from his Children and the Sovereigns of the East. He told them that he found his Spirits sunk, and that he must of necessity dispose himself for Death: "I leave you, added he, the greatest Empire in the World. You are the peaceable Possessors of it; but if you will preserve it, be always united: for if Discord steals in amongst you, be assured that you will be all ruined."

It is even said, that the better to convince them that their Safety depended on their Union, he gave them a Bundle of Arrows which he had caused to be brought to him, and bid them break them all together; which they not being able to do, he caused the Bundle to be untied, and having made them break the Arrows separately, which they did with ease, he took this Occasion to represent to them the Effects of Union and Discord amongst Princes; and said thus, to conclude, "Be then but as one Tongue and one Soul, and you shall be secured from the Effects of all Curses; but if you do not observe the Laws I have established, but walk in the Paths of Division, your Subjects, that is to say, your Enemies, shall in short time become Masters of your Empire."

After having finished these Words, he asked of those who stood by, whether they were not of opinion he should make choice of a Prince who was capable to govern so many Kingdoms after him. Then his Sons and Grandsons fell on their knees, and said, "You are our Father, and our Emperor, and we are your Slaves; 'tis for us to bow down our Heads when you honour us with your Commands, and to execute them." Then they rising from the Ground, he named Prince Özbai for his Successor, and
and declared him the Can of Cans, by the Title of Caan, which he gave him, and which his Successors have kept. They all bowed the knee a second time, and cried, 'What the great Genghis can ordains is just, we will all obey him; and if he pleases to command us even to kiss the Rod with which we have merited to be chastised, we will do it without disputing.'

The Emperor gave to Zagatai, Transoxiana and several other Countries, of which he would have a particular Agreement made in Writing; and this Country from this time took the Name of his Sovereign, and was called Oulons-Tchagatai, that is to say, the Country of Zagatai. He commanded Cara-shar Nevian, in whom he had an entire Confidence, to accompany this Prince into Transoxiana, and to pursu Gelaleddin if this Sultan ventured to set foot in it. He made at this time some Laws to prevent the Differences that might arise between Zagatai and the rest of his Heirs, and would have them put in writing, that they might remain in full force, to be put in execution in case of need. The last Order he gave was concerning Schidafiou, whom he could not pardon his Revolting, notwithstanding what he had said to his Envoy. And to the end that this Prince might be no Gainer by his Death, if he got knowledge of it before his Arrival, he forbid it should be published till such time as Schidafiou, who was hourly expected in the Camp, was arrived; and commanded that they should then secure him, and treat him according to the utmost Rigour of the Laws. Some few days after this he expired, at the same time that those about him reported in the Camp that he was much better than usual, and that they
should quickly see him at the Head of the Army.

The Death of this Prince happen'd a Year or thereabouts after the Coronation of St. Lewis King of France, that is to say, towards the end of the Year 1226. Heg. 623, after he had reigned twenty five Years, he being then in the seventy third Year of his Age.

It was no difficult matter to conceal Genghizcan's Death, because amongst these People they knew little of what past in the Apartments of a great Person who was sick, and who generally would not be seen by any but those who waited on him in his Illness. It must also be observed, that when any one was sick, they put some Signal on the top of his House, to give notice that none should visit him; and those who were Commanders, or Persons of Distinction, had Centinels placed a good way from their Lodgings, to hinder any from approaching the House, but those who were sent for.

Schidaflou arrived eight days after Genghizcan's Death in the Camp, which he found in a great deal of Joy on account of the feigned Recovery of their Emperor, whose Orders concerning him were exactly executed. They seized on the unfortunate Schidaflou, on his Children and some Lords who accompanied him, and put them all to death; and by this bloody Execution, Tangut and the Provinces dependent remain'd annexed to the Empire of the Moguls.

After this the Death of the Grand Can was published. There was then nothing to be heard in every Place but Shrieks. All the Royal Family were drowned in Tears, the Officers of the Court in a general Conternation,
The History of

the Soldiers overwhelmed with Grief; and all the Officers made the Air echo with their Lamentations. When all things for the Funeral Pomp were got ready, and the Princes, Generals of the Army, and other martial Officers, were come together, the Drums beat, the Trumpets, Kettledrums, and other warlike Instruments, proclaimed the Funeral on all sides. Then they brought forth the Grand Can’s Body with the utmost Respect and Magnificence, and carried it to the Place he had chosen for his Body to be inter’d in. It was under a Tree of singular Beauty, where in his return from the Chace some days before he fell sick, he had rested himself with much Satisfaction. They buried him there with all the pompous Ceremonies of the Mogul Religion, and afterwards erected a most noble Monument in this Place upon his Grave.

There is no likelihood that the barbarous Custom, which has since been practised amongst the Tartars and Moguls, to kill those they meet in the way, when they are carrying to the Grave the Body of a Grand Can, was at this time observed; for the Historians mention no such thing, and besides, this Custom is not countenanced by any Law. Yet it is certain they exercised this Cruelty at the Funerals of the Emperors who have succeeded Genghizcan. The Gentlemen who accompany the Funeral Pomp, persuaded that the Men they kill are predelinated to die then, put to death those they meet in the way, and even cut the Throats of the finest Horses.

The People who came to visit the Tomb, planted other Trees round it, which so artfully cover’d it, and in such beautiful Order, as render’d it in time one of the finest Monu-
ments in the World. So great a Mourning and Loss could not continue long a Secret, or be confined to Tangut alone. It was spread all over the Empire. The Court was filled with Captains and great Lords, either Tributaries or Friends who came in Person to comfort the afflicted Princes; and this great Restor of Sovereigns lasted at least six Months.

All addressed themselves to Oelai, as the Emperor desired to succeed. But tho' this Prince had the Power to act with full Authority, he would do nothing without consulting those whom the Grand Can used to advise with in his Councils; nay, he even protested he would not act as their Sovereign till the Diet ordained by the Law had been held, and they had examined whether he was capable of reigning. Couriers had been already dispatched to all Parts of the Empire, to summon this Assembly; and it was not doubted but all those who had a right to assist at it would hasten to Caracorum, where it was summoned to meet.

It seemed at this time that in this great Empire there was an Inter-regnum. Yet the public Affairs did not suffer. Zagatai, who was the Guardian and Expounder of the Laws, made them be observed with great Exactness. They were held in greater Veneration than ever, because the Memory of the Legislator was still fresh in their Minds. And in truth, how could the People chuse but have a great Veneration for a Prince who had render'd them the most formidable and respected People in the World? A Prince who had, besides, all the Virtues requisite in great Conquerors. He had a Genius fit for the forming great Enterprizes, a consummate Wisdom, and Prudence to carry them on, a natural Eloquence of Speech to persuade,
The History, &c.

An. Dom. 1226.
Heg. 623.
Mog. The

A Patience proof against all Difficulties, and able to surmount all Obstacles; an admirable Temperance, a great Understanding, with a penetrating Judgment, which made him always choose the best of whatever was proposed in an Instant: yet it must be confessed that he was cruel and bloody, and treated his Enemies with too much Rigour. O Hai Caan pushed his Conquests much further into China; and his other Successors in succeeding Ages, seeing almost all Asia subjected to their Laws, carried their victorious Arms into Europe, even into some of our neighbouring Princes Dominions.

The End of the History of Genghizcan.
AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE HISTORY OF GENGHIZCAN'S Successors.

AFTER the Death of Genghizcan, his Dominions remained under the Government of his Children in the manner he had divided them in his Life-time. Capschac remain'd to Prince Batou, the eldest Son of Toufchi. Zagatai had for his Share Transoxiana, called likewise Mauvarlahhar, and by the Europeans Zagatai, or the Country of the Uzbecks, and Turquestan. Tuli had Corassana, Persia, and India. All the rest was Oolai's Share, that is to say, the great Hord called Ourdoubahe and Oloughyr, where Genghizcan usually resided, the Country of the Moguls, the Northern China called Catay or Cathay.
An Abridgment of the History

that, which had Peguin for its Capital; and in fine, the other Countries by the Oriental Sea, and the Straits of Anian. Oitai took the Title of Caan, which signifies Emperor. He began his Reign in 1228. and died in 1241.

It now concerns us to know what was the Fate of these four Princes, and the Order of their Successors down to Tamerlain, who having vanquished them all, left them only the Titles of Cans and Emperors of the Moguls; and to this present time the Descendants of Genghis can are still preserved in the Cans of the Lesser Tartary, or Crim, in a direct Line, and in the Branch of the Usbeck Cans who reign in Transoxiana.

The History of Toufchi, Genghizcan's eldest Son.

Touschi, whom some call Dgoudgy, and other Giongy, was a great Prince. His Race subsists at this day in the Lesser Tartary, notwithstanding the Invasions of the Muscovites into Great Tartary, since the Tartars acknowledged Selim Keray for their lawful Sovereign. Touschi in the Tartar Language signifies a welcome Guest. The Merkites having one day found a favourable opportunity to plunder Genghiscan's Camp, carried away his Wife who was big with Child, and brought her to Oungbacn her Father, who sent her back to him. She was brought to bed of a Prince on the Road, who was named Touschi because of this Adventure. This Prince grew very great, and much signalized himself by his brave Actions. He accompanied his Father in the
of Genghizcan's Successors.

Carizmean War, and took himself the City of Jund, situate on the Banks of the River Jaxartes. Genghizcan was so pleased with his Conduct, that he soon after gave him the Sovereignty of the Empire of Capschac, the Country of the Getes, and Turquestan. Toufchi settled himself in Capschac, and died six Months before his Father, in the same Year 1226. Fifty eight Princes of his Race in a direct Line have reigned after him, and sat on the Throne of Capschac.

His Son Batou-Can, his first Successor, conquer'd the Alani, the Assites, the Russians or Muscovites, the Bulgares, and several other Nations. He even crost'd thro' Russia, and pillaged and ravaged Poland, Moravia, Dalmatia, and marched into Hungary to go and beleige Constantinople; but Death came and interrupted his great Designs in the Year 1256. Batou did several other considerable Exploits; and it is reported that he was the most liberal and generous Prince in the World.

After the Death of Batou-Can, Bereke-Can his Brother succeeded him, and became a Mahometan. He had a bloody War with Hulacou, Prince Tuli's Son. After which, desirous to execute some part of Batou's Designs, he went as far as Constantinople, and ravaged all the Country. In fine, having reigned ten Years, he died in 1266.

After him the Empire of Capschac was posses'd by Manecutem or Mongamur, the Son of Dogan the Son of Batou; and this Manecutem

---

1 Capschac is situate on the North side of the Caspian Sea, where Astrakan is, and reaches as far as Siberia and the frozen Sea, where Archangel is.
An Abridgment of the History

was surnamed Kilk, which was the Name of Genghiscan’s Great Great-Grandfather.

Cazaz, the Son of Tazaz, called also Tondebencay, the Son of Dogan, was the fifth King of Capschac.

The 6th was named Toeta or Belgaba, the Son of Manoutem Kilk.

The 7th, Ertec, the Son of Toul, the Son of Kilk; and to him is attributed the first Original of the Tartar Tribe of Rous Ertec.

The 8th, Janibec, the Son of Ertec. This Janibec being informed that Afschraf, the Son of Timurtach, the Son of Tchouban, who had been before Vizier to Sultan Abousfaide, had usurped the Kingdom of Azerbijana or the Medes, from the Princes the Children of the Emperor Abofsaydan, the King of Persia and the Medes, who were the Descendants of Hulacou-Can, Genghiscan’s Grandson, he marched against this Usurper, past the Straits of Derbende, and arrived at Tauris, which he took. He afterwards vanquished Melik Afschraf, seized of his Treasures, and made himself Master of the Country; and after having left in Tauris Prince Birdi Bey his Son, he returned to Capschac, where he died in 1349.

The 9th, Birdi Bey, the Son of Janibec, who left Tauris as soon as he heard of his Father’s Death, and came to Capschac.

The 10th, Kildy Bec, another of Janibec’s Sons.

The 11th, Norouz, who fraudulently made himself pass for the Son of Janibec.

The 12th, Tcherkes Can, who was likewise set up for a Son of Janibec; such were the Conjunctions of that time.

The 13th, Khedercan.

The 14th, Mazoud Can, Son of Khedercan.

The 15th, Bazartebecan.

The
of Genghizcan's Successors.

The 16th, Tocay, the Son of Schabycan.
The 17th, Tocluc Timur Can, the Son of Tocay's Brother.
The 18th, Mourad Coja Can, Tocluc Timur's Brother.
The 19th, Coutlic Coja Can, Tocay's Brother.
The 20th, Ourouscan, who had for his Children Tocta Caya, Cotlucbouga who was kill'd by Tocatmichcan, and Timur Melic. He died in 1376.
The 21st, Tocta Caya, the eldest Son of Ourouscan. He also died in 1376.
The 22d, Timur Melic Aglew, the Son of Ourouscan, who fought against Tamerlain, and was wounded in the Fight.
The 23d, Tocatmichcan Aglew, who after having been assisted by Tamerlain against Ourouscan, Tocta Caya, and Timur Melic, and establish'd in the Throne by his Assistance, made war upon his Benefactor in 1376. and was vanquish'd by the same Prince Tamerlain in 1388, 1391, and 1395.
The 24th, Timur Cotluc Aglew, the Son of Timur Melic, who had also served Tamerlain in 1388, and in 1390, against Tocatmichcan; as likewise in 1391, and in 1395.
The 25th, was Schady Bec, notwithstanding the Installation of Coirytchac Aglew by Tamerlain, in the Month of April 1395.
The 26th, Poulad, the Son of Schady Bec, altho Tamerlain did not acknowledge him for Can.
The 27th, Timur, the Son of Timur Cotluc, altho not acknowledged by Tamerlain, who had install'd and acknowledged Ideocuan.
The 28th, Gelaleddin, Son of Tocatmich Can.
The 29th, Kerim Birdi, also the Son of Tocatmich.
The 30th, Kepeccan, the Son of Tocatmich.
The 31st, Babhira, another Son of Tocatmich.
An Abridgment of the History

The 32d, Cador Birdykan, another Son of Tocatmisb. He marched against Idecou, who was install'd by Tamerlaine, and was kill'd in the Fight.

The 33d, Idecou.

The 34th, Sidi Ahmed.

The 35th, Derwisb, the Son of Alchycan.

The 36th, Koutrchuk Mehemed Can, the Son of Tocatmisb.

The 37th, Dolet Birdy Can, the Son of Tash Timur.

The 38th, Borrac Can, the Son of Cabargic.

The 39th, Cayaefeddin Schadi Bec.

The 40th, Mehemed, the Son of Timurcan.

The 41st, Hadgy Keray Can, Son of Mehemed Can, who died in 1475, and left twelve Sons. This great number of Princes was the Caufe that the Empire of Capschac fell into Confusion, so that three Sons were seen to reign as Can at one time; which occasioned a War that ruined several Provinces, of which the Muscovites got possession. The great Empire of Capschac had been infallibly ruined, if Sultan Mahomet, the second Conqueror of Constantinople, touched with the Misfortunes of these Princes, had not taken care to succour them. For this purpose he sent Ghedic Ahmed Pacha, who took the City of Caffa from the Europeans, and afterwards that of Maneoup, out of which he carried away all the Inhabitants Prisoners. Prince Menghehi Keray, Son of Hadgy Keray, was found amongst them, and lost his Liberty. He had been Can for some days, but having been vanquished by his Brothers, he had taken refuge at Maneoup, which was then in the Christians' Hands, and waited an Opportunity to remount the Throne. But he was not long a Prisoner; Mahomet II. soon re-placed him in it.
Thus Mengheli Keray was the 42d King of Cappadocia.

The 43d, Mehemed Keraycan, the Son of Mengheli.

The 44th, Gazykeraycan the Son of Mehemed, who was depos’d after six Months Reign.

The 45th, Saadet Keray Can, who gave his Brother Sahibkeray in Hostage to Sultan Selim the Ottoman Emperor. From this time the Turks gave one thousand and fifty Alyphers per Day, as a Pension to the Cans of Crim Tartary, and other Penions to the Lords of this Can’s Court, as may be seen in the Book Kunhalakhbar.

The 46th, Iklam Keray Can, the Son of Mehemed Keray. In his Reign the Kingdom was divided into two Factions; the one were obedient to Saadet Keray Can, and the other to Iklam Keray Can; so that in 1517 the two Parties came to Blows on the Banks of the Borysthenes, and those on Iklam Keray's Side had the better. Saadet Keray was obliged to save himself by flying to Constantinople, where the Turkish Emperor gave him a Pension.

The 47th, Sahibkeray, who caused Iklam Keray to be kill’d, and was himself, after having reign’d a long time, depos’d by Sultan Soliman II. and sent to Rhodes, to be imprison’d there. The Muscovites took from him the City of Cazan on the 9th of July, 1552, a Place situate in Cappadocia, to the Northward of Astrakan, on the River Volga.

The 48th, Doleet Keray Can, the Son of Sultan Mecbarcc, the Son of Menghely Keray Can, who died in 1577.

The 49th, Mehemed Keray Can, who was depos’d for having disobey’d the Grand Seigneur.
The 50th, Ilam Keray Can, taken out of Prison again from Rhodes. He dy'd in 1588.

The 51st, Gazy Keray Can. He was an learned Prince, an excellent Poet, and an able Musician. The Grand Seignior increas'd his Pension to a hundred Livres a Day, because this Prince had done great Services to the Ottoman Empire in the War with Persia, where he shew'd, that he was endow'd with all the Qualifications requisite in a great Officer. Yet he was depos'd for some time, but afterwards re-established, and dy'd in 1607.

The 52d, Fatehkeray Can, who was almost immediately depos'd.

The 53d, Selamet Keray Can, the Son of Dolet Keray Can. He dy'd in 1610.

The 54th, Janibec Keray Can, who went into Persia in 1617, by Order of the Porte. He went to besiege Caffa at the Head of 40000 Tartars. He was nevertheless depos'd in 1621, and afterwards re-establish'd in 1627.

The 55th, Mehemed Keray Can, kill'd in 1627.

The 56th, Anayet Keray Can, the Son of Gazy Keray Can, depos'd in 1637; and afterwards put to death at Constantinople in the same Year.

The 57th, Behader Keray Can, the Son of Selamet Keray Can. He dy'd in 1641.

The 58th, Mehemed Keray Can, the Son of Selamet Keray Can; who was depos'd in 1644, and restor'd again; and a second time depos'd in 1664.

The 59th, Islam Keray Can, the Son of Selamet Keray Can, who dy'd in 1653, after having made War with Poland during the space of fourteen Years.

The 60th, Adelkeray Can, the Son of Tchoukan Keray Can. He was depos'd in 1671, and sent back Prisoner to Rhodes, from whence he had been taken.
of Genghizcan's Successors.

The 61st, Selim Keray Can, who reign'd in 1673.

The 62d, Dolet Keray Can, the Son of Selim Keray Can. He was depos'd, and sent away to Rhodes, and afterwards to Chio. This was a Prince who was much beloved by his Subjects, and was accounted a great General.

The 63d, Kaplan Keray Can, who was depos'd in 1708. He had gone into Circassia to reduce some Rebels; but being beaten and put to flight, the Grand Seignior depos'd him, and established in his Place Dolet Keray Can, the Son of Selim Keray Can.

The Branch of the Uzbek Cans, Kings of Transoxiana, descended from the same Tousschi Can, the Son of Genghizcan.

Uzbek Can King of Capschac, descended from Tousschi, was stript by Tamerlain, both he and his Successors, of the Province of Transoxiana. He had a Son named Gehan Bec, of whom descended Cheybec Can, the Founder of that Dynasty, named Dolet Uzbekyan.

Cheybec Can was the Son of Sultan Berrac, Son of Abulkayr Can. He retook Transoxiana from Tamerlain's Children in 1498, after the death of Sultan Mirza Huseyn, Tamerlain's Grandson; after which he enter'd Corassana in the Year of Grace 1507, from whence he drove out Badyazizaman; but he was himself at last defeated and kill'd, by Chac Ismael Sefewi, near the City of Merou, in the Year 1510.

The 2d was Couchican, who dy'd in 1529.

The 3d, Abousayd Son of Couchangi, who dy'd in 1532.
An Abridgment of the History

The 4th, Oubahdallah Can, Cousin of Cheyber, who dy’d in 1539.
The 5th, Abdallah Can, who dy’d in 1540.
The 6th, Abdaliiff Can, who reign’d in 1541.

All these Princes, and their Successors, have always been, and are still at this Day, at war with the Kings of Persia, of the Race of Chac Ismael Sefevi, Descendents of Chac Sefy. We do not know the Names of those who have reign’d since Abdaliiff Can: We only know that he had for his Successor Berrac Can of Samarcand, and Seid Burhan Can of Bocara in 1556, as may be seen in Mifsidy Aly’s Voyage, Sultan Soliman’s Envoy.

The Successors of these Princes still reign in Transoxiana, but each has his particular Dominions: one is Can of Bocara, another of Samarcand, another of Balc, &c.

The History of Zagatai Can, Genghizcan’s second Son.

ZAGATAI Can was a most accomplish’d Prince, and excell’d his Brothers. He was also more equitable, and more exactly observ’d the Laws made by his Father. He had for his part Transoxiana, the Country of the Yngures, the great City of Cacchgar near Teber, the Kingdom of Bedacchan, and the City of Balc, which several learned Men affirm to be the antient Bactria. He govern’d all these Countries with the Affiﬁance of Prince Caraschar Nevian, whom Genghizcan had given him for his Vizier, and who was Tamerlain’s Ancestor in the fifth Degree. This Caraschar was
was the Son of Sugougen, Genghizcan’s Kinsman.

Zagatai, after the death of his Father, chose the City of Bedhabac for his Abode. He was, however, almost always with his Brother Oc-tai, who loved and respected him as his Master, altho he was but his younger Brother. After him one and thirty Princes, his Children and Nephews, reign’d in this Country, which was some time after call’d by his Name Zagatai.

His first Successor was Bisoumecay Can.

The 2d, Cara Hulacou, the Son of Metouca; some call him Menouca the Son of Zagatai. He mounted the Throne after the death of his Brother Bisoumecay, by the Assistance of Carafohar, who dy’d during his Reign, in the Year 1254.

The 3d, the Queen Argana Cahun, Daughter of Nourehtchy Gourcan.

The 4th, Nalygou the Son of Baydar, Son of Zagatai.

The 5th, Mobarek Scha the Son of Cara Hula-cou, Zagatai’s Grandson.

The 6th, Berrac Can, the Son of Bisoum, or Bayfouroua, the Son of Menouca. He had a War with Abaca the Son of Hulacou, his Cousin, and against Coublay Can. He dy’d in 1260.

The 7th, Nikepey Can, the Son of Saryan, the Son of Zagatai.

The 8th, Bouca Timur.

The 9th, Davar Can, the Son of Berrac Can.

He was accounted a very just King.

The 10th, Kevendigikan.

The 11th, Balgon.

The 12th, Abisouca, the Son of Davar Can.

The 13th, Kepec Can.

The 14th, Elitchesday Can, the Son of Davar Can.

The 15th, Davatmur.
An Abridgment of the History

The 16th, Tumemehrin Can, who dy'd in 1336, much fear'd of his Neighbours.

The 17th, Djinkechy.

The 18th, Bisoun Timur Can, the Son of Abouken.

The 19th, Aly Sultan, of the Race of Oetai Can.

The 20th, Mehemed Can, the Son of Poulad, the Son of Kevendgik.

The 21st, Cazan Sultan Can, the Son of Ifsour Aglen.

The 22d, Daneschmendge Can, of the Race of Oetai Can.

The 23d, Beyan Couly Aglen, the Son of Sor-gadon, the Son of Dava Can.

The 24th, Timurchah Aglen, the Son of Bisoun Timur Can, the Son of Abouken. The great Lords in his Reign usurped the Authority, because he was a very weak Prince in his Under-standing.

The 25th, Togaltimur the Son of Aymelcoja, the Son of Dava Can. He a little re-settled the Affairs of the State, and obliged several Lords to obey him. He dy'd in 1372.

The 26th, Elias Coja Can. He return'd to Tranfoxiana at the Head of a numerous Army of Getes, and gave Battel to Tamerlain, who was join'd with Mir Hussein.

The 26th, Adel Sultan.

The 28th, Caboulchah Aglen, the Son of Dourg-gy, the Son of Elschykeday Can, the Son of Dava Can, who was install'd in 1373.

The 29th, Syorgatmich Aglen, the Son of Danielschmend Can; to whom Tamerlain gave the empty Title of Can, without leaving him the least part of the Power.

The 30th, Sultan Mahmoud Can, the Son of Syorgatmich. Tamerlain caus'd his Name to be written
of Genghizcan's Successors.

written on the top of his Orders, to make the People believe that he observ'd Genghizcan's Laws.

The 31st, Toumen Cotlus Aglen, also crown'd by Tamerlain in 1390.

Tamerlain dying, and his Successors not observing any longer the Law which ordain'd the Establishment of Cans in the Family of Zaga-tai, Genghizcan's Son, there is no more mention made but of the Successors of Tamerlain.

***************************************

The History of Octai Caan, Third Son of Genghizcan, and his Successor.

Octai I began to reign in 1226. He generally resided in Olooughyr, a City but a little way distant from Caracorom. He was just and liberal. He sent an Army in pursuit of Sultan Gelaleddin.

They reckon nineteen Successors of Octai's Race in the Empire of Olooughyr; but these Successors were some of them the Children of this Prince, and some the Children of Tulican his Brother. He sent Argounaga in 1235, into Corassana as Governour; and having heard of the Destruction of Herat, which was the Capital, he caused this City to be rebuilt by an Emir named Azzeddin Moccadem Heraouy, surnamed Jambasf; whom he sent thither for that purpose, who also caused the Lands in this Country to be again sow'd and manur'd in 1238. In fine, Octai Caan, after having reigned thir-teen Years with as much Gentleness as Justice, died much regretted of his People, in 1241.

Prince Keyouc Can, his Son, whose Mother was the celebrated Tourakina Catun, was his Suc-
An Abridgment of the History

Successor, and assembled a general Diet in his Father's Camp. He mounted the Throne with the universal consent of the People, at Oloughbyurt, in the Year 1245. But he did not long enjoy the Empire, for he died in the Year 1246.

Historians make no mention of the Princes the Children of Keyouc Can, nor of Oltai's other Children. They must doubtless have been too young to support the Grandure of the Imperial Throne; because Baton, the Son of Touschi King of Capshac, used all his Endeavours, after the Death of this Prince Keyouc Can, to make them receive a Prince of the Race of Tuli for their Emperor: And at last he effected his Design; for Mangou Can, the Son of Tulican, succeeded: and since that time no Prince of Oltai's Posterity has ascended the Throne.

The History of Tuli-Can, Genghizcan's fourth Son.

Prince Tuli had extremely distinguished himself by his Valour during Genghizcan his Father's Life-time, who gave him the honourable Title of Oluce Nevian, that is to say, Great Prince; and he was indeed a very great General. He had the Management of all the Money to pay the Army, as also of the great Hord or Royal Camp; and he was, besides that, great Steward of the Emperor's Household.

After the Death of his Father, he possessed the same Posts under Oltai Can his Brother, at Oloughyurt; and therefore was content to put Governors in Corassana, Persia, and in other Coun-
Countries which were left him by his Father the Emperor. But this great Prince did not live long; for he died in 1229, three Years after Genghizcan.

He left eight Sons, four of whom resembled their Father in Courage: The four others are not mention'd. The eldest of these Princes was called Mangou Can, the second Hulacou Can, the third Coublay Can, and the fourth Artichouga. When Prince Mangou Can was by the Interest of Batou Can advanced to the Empire after the Death of Keyoue Can, he did not renounce the Kingdoms left him by his Father Tuli, but united them to the rest of his Empire in 1250, and sent Hulacou Can his Brother into Corassana and Persia in quality of Governour. Mangou Can reigned seven Years with all the Justice and Conduct that could be expected from one of the greatest Princes in the World. He died in 1257.

After Mangou Can, the Kingdom was possess'd by Coublay, who had no sooner learnt the News of the Death of Mangou than he return'd from China, where he was at that time engaged in War, and sat in the Throne of Olonghyurt; but Artichouga, the youngest of the four Brothers, opposed Coublay's Advancement to the Empire, and set up his Standard at the Head of a great Army. These two Princes fought several Battels; and in the last, which was a very bloody one, Artichouga being vanquish'd, came and threw himself at his Brother's Feet, who only made him some Reproaches at first, but afterwards shut him up between four Walls cover'd with Thorns of the Tree Aadragn, where he order'd that a strict Guard should be set over him to his dying Day, which happen'd a Year after. Thus Coublay Can remained the peace...
peaceable Possessor of the Empire. He reign'd twenty five Years, in which he went on several great Expeditions both into China and other Places. In 1265 he was informed of the Death of his Brother Hulacoù, who was at that time in Persia; and he immediately took care to instil Abaca Can, the Son of Hulacoù, in the Throne of Persia, Corasena, and India: He also gave him several other Countries of great Extent, which had been newly conquer'd by Hulacoù Can. The Actions of Coublay, both in China and elsewhere, are too many to be related in this Abridgment. There are several entire Books of his Life and Exploits. He died in 1294.

Coublay had for his Successor his Grandson Timur Can, surnamed Olagaytou, the Son of Hukim or Dgetekem, who reign'd twelve Years, and died in 1306.

After him the Empire past to Couchilay Can, the Son of Dzenesc, Son of Termenay, Son of Dgetekeim, Son of Coublay.

The 5th Successor of Tuli was Togyay, the Son of Couchilay.

The 6th, Tayzy Can, the Son of Noulk, surnamed Bilelou.

The 7th, Anouchiroan, the Son of Dara, the Cousin of Tayzy. This Emperor was a Man of excellent Morals; but he gave too much Power to the Governors of Provinces, who acted as Sovereigns, and caused many Troubles in the Empire.

The 8th, Tocatmir, the Son of Timur Can. The 9th, Bifourdar. The 10th, Ayke, the Son of Bifourdar. The 11th, Yenc Can. The 12th, Keytomour. The 13th, Arkimour.
of Genghizcan's Successors.

The 14th, Elchby Timur Can, who went to Tamerlain, and lived in his Court till the Death of this Prince; after which he returned to Olo dynasty, where he ascended the Throne in 1405.

The 15th, Waltay Can, who descended in a direct Line from Prince Articbouga, the fourth Son of Tukitan.

The 16th, Ordyan, the Son of Ordyan, the Son of Melic Timur.

The 17th and last, Aday, the Son of Arkitinar. These two last Cans lived so obscurely, that they are looked on as their Great Ancestor Articbouga, from whom they descended, and who never was number'd amongst the Cans.

From this time there is no more Talk at Olo dynasty of the Princes descended from Genghizcan, but only of those who descended from Coublay, and who remained Kings of China, of whom there is mention made. The Princes of the Posterity of Hulacou Can, Kings of Persia and India, have also made some noise. These push'd their Conquests as far as the Straits of Anwan, the farthest Parts of the East, as will be show'd in the History of Hulacou Can, Tuli's Son.

The History of Hulacou Can, the second Son of Tuli, and of his Posterity.

When Mangoucan, the eldest Son of Prince Tuli, was rais'd to the Empire of Olo dynasty, after the Death of Keyouc Can,

---

* It must be read Mangou Can, and observed that those who have succeeded Octai had, like him, the Title of Can, that is today, Can of Can.
the Son of Oefai, he sent Prince Hulacou his Brother into Persia, to reign in his stead, in quality of his Viceroy, referring only to himself the Sovereign Right and Title of King. Hulacou being come to his Government in 1250, received the Petitions presented him against the Abysside Califf Mustafam Billah. On these Complaints, and particularly those made by the great Astrologer Nasreddin Toufi, who, being displeased with this Califf, was retired into Persia, he took up a Resolution to make War upon Chaldea, to punish Mustafam Billah for the Ills he had occasion’d. For this reason he sent to ask the Assistance of Mangou Can; and when he had received some Forces from him, he marched towards the Western Countries at the Head of three hundred thousand Tartars, and arrived before Bagdat, of which he form’d the Siege; and having soon render’d himself Master of this City, he put to death Mustafam Billah, the last of the Abysside Califfs, and entirely destroy’d their Race, in 1258.

After this Expedition, he went into Syria, and took all its Cities. Then he past into Anatolia, which he conquer’d, and gave the Government of it to Azzeddin Pervane. He put to death the Vizier Seifeddin Toufichy, and settled in his Place the learned Schamfeddin Mehemed Jouini, Author of the History of Genghis Can, entitled, Gebankuscha, and gave him for his Lieutenant his Brother Aladin Atalmule. After making these great Conquests, and having reigned for fifteen Years in Persia, Syria, Mesopotamia, Chaldea, and Anatolia, Hulacou Can died in 1265.

Abaca Can his Son succeeded him, and mounted his Throne by Order of Coublay Can his Uncle.
of Genghizcan's Successors.

Uncle. He gave battle to Bereke Can King of Capsicac, his Cousin, the Son of Touschi, who was at War with Hulaco, his Father, and who was advanced as far as Constantinople. He beat Bereke, and reigned sixteen Years with much Honour and Greatness, and died in 1281.

The 2d Successor was Nicouder, otherwise called Ahmed Can, Brother to Abaca, and Son to Hulaco. He embraced Mahometanism, reigned two Years and three Months, and died in 1284.

The 3d, Argoun Can, the Son of Abaca Can. He put to death the Grand Vizier Shamseddin Joumi, who had serv'd the State in four Reigns, and died himself, after seven Years Reign, in 1291.

The 4th, Ghendgiatou, the Brother of Argoun, and the Son of Abaca Can. He reigned but four Years, being kill'd by Baydou Can his Cousin, in the Year 1295.

The 5th, Baydou Can, the Son of Tragay, the Son of Hulaco Can. He died also in the Year 1295.

The 6th, Sultan Maymoud Gazan Can, the Son of Argoun, the Son of Abaca, the Son of Hulaco. He made a great noise in the World, and died in 1303, having reigned eight Years.

The 7th, Oladgiayton Sultan Mehemed Codabende, the Brother of Gazan. In his Reign was finished the History entitled, Tarikh Gazany, the Author of which was Fadlallah, which Monsieur Petit de la Croix translated into French in 1690. This Prince built the City of Soliani in Persia, which he made his Residence, and where he died in the Year 1317, after having done many great Exploits, and reigned fourteen Years.
An Abridgment of the History

The 8th, the great Sultan Abousayd Behadeur Can, the Son of Codabende. He render'd himself renowned for his Valour and Magnificence. He reigned twenty Years, and died in the Year 1335. He was buried near his Father Codabende, under the fine Dome of the Mosque of Soltanya, in which all the Alcoran is writ in Golden Letters round the Walls. After the Death of this great Prince, the Monarchy of the Moguls in Persia decay'd, and fell to Ruin. The Princes and great Lords of the Kingdom made themselves petty Kingdoms of their Governments. They indeed settled Cans of the Race of Hulacou over them, giving them the Title, but reserving to themselves all the Authority. We find the Names of eight Cans of Gempbizcan's Race, who reigned after these mention'd, but who had only the Name of Emperors; for the Princes the Children of Abousayd did not continue to live at Soltanya, but made war one against the other, and were overcome by the Ilcanians, whose Founder was Buzure Hassan, the Son of Chec Huseyn Gburcan, of the Race of Gempbizcan. These are the Names of the eight Cans.

The 1st was Arpacan, the Son of Aly, the Son of Baydon Can, the Son of Tragay, the Son of Hulacou, who reigned but one Year, and died in 1355.

The 2d, Mousa Can: he mounted the Throne of Azerbijana, in which the City of Soltanya was situate, built by Codabende. But Buzure Hassan set up at the same time for Emperor another Prince of the Race of Hulacou, called Mehemed, who attack'd Mousacan, who was joined with Alyschah, another Can of Hulacou's Race. Alyschah was killed, and Mousa put to Flight.
of Genghizcan's Successors.

Flight. Mehemed caused his Head to be cut off by the Assistance of Buzure Hassan, in 1336.

The 3d, Mehemed Can, whom some call Mahmoud; he was the Son of Magiouny, the Son of Amondin, the Son of Hulacou Can. He reigned after the Death of Ali, and died in 1337.

The 4th, Tagur Can, who was the presumptive Heir of the Empire, fled into the Country of Mazendran.

The 5th, Bouca Timur Can.

The 6th, the Princess Daughter of Mehemed Can. Her Name was Chahzade Chahibek Catun. She married a Prince of the Race of Hulacou, and gave him the Title of Can, in 1338.

The 7th, Soliman Can, the Son of Mehemed, the Son of Sanki, the Son of Ahmed, whom others called Chimed, the Son of Hulacou Can, the Husband of Chahzade Chabibek Catun.

The 8th, Dgeban Timur Can, the Son of Alatyanly, the Son of Rejetary Can, of the Race of Hulacou.

After this time the Cans were put down; and the Crown of Persia went to Melik Acref, the Son of Timur Tach, the Son of Tchouban, Vizier to Abousayed Can, who was vanquished by Janibec, the Emperor of Capssac. Mean while, the Son-in-Law of Emir Tchouban, who was called Buzure Hassan, the Son of Chec Husein Gurcan, the Son of Argoun, who was no more than a Bey, render'd himself so powerful by the yielding up of his Wife Dilmadaga, the Emir's Daughter, from whom he was divorced, to Sultan Abousayed, that this Can made him his chief Favourite, and gave him the Government of Anatolia. Hassan so well managed
An Abridgment of the History

naged his Affairs, that after the Death of Sultan Buzure Hasun, he put himself at the head of a great Party, and at last got himself crown'd King of the Medes, and afterwards of Chaldea, by the taking of the Cities of Bagdat, Hille, Vaset, and Bajra, which had been possessed by Melikachraf Tchoubamien, who was the Founder of the Monarchy of the Ilcanians.

Janibec Can of Caphschac, left his Son Birdy Bey at Tauris; but Birdy Bey returned to Caphschac after the Death of his Father, which happened in 1349, as has been before related in the History of the Emperors of Caphschac. He then left the Country of Azerbijana to Sultan Avis, the Son of Buzure Hasun, of whom Dickadaga was the Mother.

This Sultan killed the Rebel Ahmadjic, and retook the Cities of Tauris, Selmas, Solhanya, Ardville, Coy, Diarbekir and Chirowan. After which, having divided his Kingdoms betwixt four Children, he died in 1375.

Husyen, the Son of Avis, was crown'd after the Death of his Father; but the Faction who supported his Brother Ahmed, deprived him of his Life.

Ahmed, another Son of Avis, after having received great Succours from Cara Mehemed a Turcoman, the Founder of the Monarchy of the Black Weathers, or Cara Coudin. This Cara Mehemed put him and his Children to death in 1410. And thus ended the Race of the Ilcanians. Afterwards Tamerlain drove out of Tauris the Princes of the Black Weathers in 1388.

Such was the end of the Descendants of Hulacou Can in the Kingdom of Persia. After which, Tamerlain, who pretended to be descended
of Genghizcan's Successors.

descended from the Posterity of Genghizcan in the fifth Degree, by the Wives of Prince Cara-Char Nevian, from whom were sprung the Princes of the Family of Berlas, very famous in Transoxiana: Tamerlaine, I say, who was the Nephew of Hadji Berlas, the Heir of this Family, which was the fourth Tribe of the Oriental Turks, render'd himself absolute Master of Persia, and his Successors quite abolished in that Country the Name and Power of the Cans descended from Genghizcan.

The End of the Abridgment of the History of Genghizcan's Successors.
AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE LIVES of the Authors, out of whose Works the History of Genghizcan has been collected.

BULCAIR, a Turkish Author, who died in the Year 1554. Heg. 962. compiled a History of the Turks, entitled, Fatih Namefy Tawurtic Al Osman. It is in Quarto in the King's Library, numb. 1314, or 1499. The Preface to this History is a historical Poem, containing 389 Distichs, each of five Feet and a half, after the Measure Musfay-lon, Musfaylon-faylon. This is the Author we have made use of in forming the Plan of Genghizcan's History; but he not being ample enough to furnish a compleat History, we have translated several other Authors who have written ex professo the History of Genghizcan, who are hereafter mention'd in their Places. This Author is also called Tachkuprizade, and also Monalla Abdulcair Ahmed, the
An Account of the Authors, &c. 409

the Son of Mustapha, the Son of Tafl Kupri. He composed many Works, treating of all sorts of Sciences; and among the rest, one Encyclopedia, in which there are 150 sorts of Sciences treated of. He is Author of the History of the learned Turks and Arabians who flourished under the Ottomans, entitled Alchacic Amamamia; and also of a universal Chronicle, which is entitled, Naevadiralchab. There is another Abulcair Cazvini, who has writ a History of Ozman the third Califf after Mahomet; but he is not of the number of those Authors who have made mention of Genghiscan.

Abulsefa. This Author was the Sovereign Prince of Hima in Syria. His Name and Titles at length were, Sultan Almalic Abmuyd Amadaddin Abulsefa Ismael, the Son of Malic Alasfal Nouradin Aly, Son of Jumaladdin Mahmoud, Son of Omar, Son of Schabinschah, Son of Ayoub, of the Family of the Aloubites. He died in the Year 1331, Heg. 732. His Book treats of Geography, entitled Takouim Albuldan. He observes that he had read the Books of Geography composed by the Arabians, and that he found nothing in them that gave him Satisfaction. For example, Ibn Hauca, who was most skill’d, does not observe the true Pronunciation of the proper Names of Cities and Towns, nor the Longitude and Latitude; so that the Reader remains ignorant of their true Name, and the Climates in which they are situate. Alshefvaldirify, called in France the Arabian of Nubia, gives no better Satisfaction in these Points; no more than Bincourdadebe, nor the Books of Zidge or Ephemerides. Those who have taken the pains to put the true Pronunciation of the Names, such as Kitabalanfah par Samaany, Almufcherac par Yacut Hamavi, Mazilarvabe,
lalirtyabe, and Kitabalaesal, have not given the Longitudes nor the Latitudes, so that one is ignorant of the Situation of the Cities and Countries. This has obliged me, says Abulfeda, to collect in this Geography what has been dispersed in these Authors, yet without pretending to mention all the Cities in the World, nor even the greatest part of them, because all the Books which have been written on this Science contain but a very small number of them: For example, the Kingdom of China, in which the Arabs give the Description of but very few Cities; nay, they do not so much as mark the Pronunciation of their Names, or Situation, no more than of the Empires of India, Bulgaria, Circassia, Muscovy, Russia, Siberia, Poland, Valachia, nor the European Countries from the Thracian Bosphorus, which they call Alcalige Alconstantini, as far as the Western Ocean, where there are great and vast Kingdoms, whose Names and Histories are unknown to the Arabs; as well as the Countries of the Blacks in Africk on the South side, or the Abyssinia or Ethiopia, the Zanguebar, which some call Zendge, Nubia, Tencow, Zayla, of which the Arabians have scarce made mention: They have observed in their Books only the Countries of the Mahometans. Yet, as the Proverb says, one had better know one part, than be ignorant of all, and not abandon the Study of a thing entirely, because one does not know it perfectly. Abulfeda has divided his Book into Geographical Tables, in the manner of Bingezla's medicinal Tables. He has in the Preface described the whole World in general, the Kingdoms, Provinces, and Seas. He has given an account of 623 Countries, besides those marked down in his Tables, according to the Order of the Climates by Ptolemy. He gives the true
true Pronunciation of the Names of the Cities and Towns, with their Longitude and Latitude; the Names of the Authors out of which he has taken the Account of each City; the Name of the Province it is in, and a short Description of it. This Work was afterwards translated into the Turkish Language, with Notes upon it, by Sipabi Zade, and dedicated to Sultan Amurath III. Abulseda has also composed a Chronological History in two Volumes, called Montasfarfy Acharabalbaschar. His Manuscript is in the King's Library, numb. 734.

Abulsarage, is the Author of the Book of Dynasties. His Name is Almufrian Margrigorous Abulsarage Binalhakim Haroun Almalay. His Book is entitled, Alzayl a la Taric Montasfarad-doual, that is to say, the Supplement to the Abridgment of the Chronological History of the Dynasties. He was a Jacobite Christian of the City of Malatia in Cappadocia. It was writ in the Arabick Language, and divided into ten Chapters, which contain as many Dynasties, in this Order. 1. The Chronology of the Saints since Adam the first Man. 2. Of the Judges of Israel. 3. Of the Kings of Israel. 4. Of the Chaldean Kings. 5. Of the Kings called Magi. 6. Of the antient Greek Kings who were Idolaters. 7. Of the Latin Roman Kings. 8. Of the Greek Emperors who were Christians. 9. Of the Arabian Kings who were Mahometans. 10. Of the Mogul Kings. It is not certain when he was born or died. We only know that he finished his History in the Reign of Argoun Can, the laft of Genghiscan's Grandsons. The Manuscript of the Dynasties is in the King's Library, numb. 738. It has been translated into Latin by Mr. Pocock an Englishman, and printed in the Year 1663.
An Account of the Authors

Abou Muslim; he was likewise called Gazy Marouzy, that is to say, the Warrior of Merou. His Book, which is in the Turkish Language, is entitled, *Kitab Abou Muslim Mahani*, which signifies the Book of Abou Muslim born at Mahan. Mahan was a City of Corassana, situate in 37 deg. 30 min. of Latitude, and in 95 deg. 30 min. of Longitude. He was a martial Man, and did great Services to Aboulabbas Seffah; but this Califf, for Reasons of State, put him to death. The Book is in four Volumes in Folio, in the King's Library, numb. 1294.

Aduane, that is Mageddden Mohemed Aduane. His Book is entitled, *Tarikh Turkistan*, and treats of the Chronological History of Turkistan, of the Nations of the Turks and Tartars, and of the Rarities in those Countries. It is dedicated to Toemac Can, King of China.

Ahmed Bin Arabshah. See Arabshah.

Alfars, a Geographer cited in Abulfeda.

Alihab, is a Book of Geography cited in Abulfeda.

Almakine, or Almasine, that is Alschec Almakine Georgios, the Son of Alamid Abou Elias, the Son of Abilmakarim, the Son of Abittib a Christian. His Book is entitled *Tarikh Almamsimin*, that is to say, a History of the Saracens. It is an Extract of the History of Tabary, and of that of Armouny. It treats of the Life of Mahomet the false Prophet, of the Califfs his Successors, and of other Kings who reigned during the time of these Califfs, down to Malik Azzebiv Rucreddin Baybars, King of Egypt; and he ends at the Reign of the Arabecs in Egypt. There is a Manuscript in the King's Library, numb. 740, which seems to be the first part of the Universal History, of which this, which has
has been translated by Erpennius, is the second Part.

Alycoubby. See Couchtchy.
Aly Jouini. See Jouini.
Amadeddin; the same as Binketiv.
Atalmulc. See Jouini.

Beizavi, is the Cady Nasreddin Abdallah Bin
Omar Albeizavi, who died in the Year 1299.
Heg. 699. His Book is entitled, Nizam Attwarikh, and signifies the Order of Chronological Histories. He composed it in the Persian Language. He was a Cady, or Judge. He has treated of most of the Afghan Monarchs, and particularly of the antient Moguls. It is in the King's Library, num. 1513, and was brought thither from the Levant by M. Petr de la Croix jun.

Bin Abdallatif, that is to say, the Emir Tahya,
the Son of Abdallatif Alcasbini Alschiai, who died in the Year 1552. Heg. 960. His Book is writ in the Persian Language, and is named Lubbat-tavarikh, that is to say, the Marrow or Substance of History, which some corruptly pronounce in French, Lebtarie. He follow'd the Sect of Schias, that is to say, the Religion which the Persians profess'd. He treats of the general History of Asia in brief. He finisheth with the Reign of Schah Ismael Sevevi, the Son of Chec Haidar Ismael, who was crowned King of Persia in the Year 1514. The Author finish'd his Work in 1541, and died in 1552, in the City of Casbin, where he was born. His Manuscript is in the King's Library, numb. 1499. It has been translatred into Latin by Monsieur Gomin, and Monsieur Thevenot his Uncle had it printed.

Binalouyardy, that is, Zeinaddin Omar Bin Almuzaassar Binalouardy, who died in the Year 1358.
Heg. 760. This Arabian Author has treated of the
An Account of the Authors

the Geography he has extracted from the Eastern Authors. His Book is entitled Khari-
datalagyabin, that is to say, the admirable Pearl, in one Volume in Quarto. He treats of the seven Climates of Ptolomy, and of the Rarities found in the Earth, as Minerals, Plants, and Animals. There is in it a Geographical Map of the World, after the manner of the Orientals. It has been translated into the Türkîb Language, and dedicated to Mir Osman, the Son of Esseker Pacha. It is in M. Col-
bert's Library; and was brought from the Le-
vant by M. Petis de la Croix jun.

Bin Arabshah, that is, Alfasal Abmet Bin Me-
hemed Bin Arabshah, a Henbelite, who died in 1431. Heg. 854. This Author was an Arabian and Mahometan, born at Damascus. He wrote the Life of Tamerlain, which the learned M. Va-
tier, Professor in the Royal College, Uncle of M. Boivin, also Professor of Greek in the same College, has translated into French out of Arabic, and caused it to be printed at Paris in 1658. The Title of this Book is Adgnaib Al-
macdouar Fy Naouaib ou Achar Timur, that is to say, the Wonders of Predestination, touching the Scourge of the Life of Tamerlain. Tho
this Historian, forced by the Truth, has said fine things of Tamerlain concerning his Con-
quests; yet he has filled his Book with Inven-
tives against this Conqueror, in hatred to him for having caused to be trod under his Horse's Feet all the People of Damascus, this Author's Country. Yet these Calumnies have only ser-
ed to encrease the Glory of this Conqueror.

The Persian Scherefeddin Tazdy, who was an Eye-
witnes of Tamerlain's Exploits, has writ, in his own Tongue, a History of him, and in a very eloquent Stile related the Acts of this great
made use of in this Work.

General, in form of a Journal; so that he has undeceived the World, and freed them from the Prejudices that this Arabian Author had inspired them with against his Prince, in doing which he has gained himself a universal Esteem. Yet this Book of Bin Arabshah is writ in a fine Arabian Style, very nervous, and ends in Periods of Rhime, after the manner of the Arabian Eloquence. There is a fine Manuscript of this kind in the King's Library, brought thither by M. Paul Lucas, a celebrated Traveller.

Bin Ayas. See Mehemed Bin Ayas.

Bin Calican; this is the Cady Schamseddin Aboulabbas Ahmed Bin Mehemed Albarbaky Alarbery Alchafay, who died in 1281. Heg. 681. He composed in Arabick a Book entitled, Ouafat a la Ayan, the Deaths of Illustrious Men, on which he has formed this History. He was a Native of the City of Arbele in Assyria, and was made Cady of Grand Cairo. He was of the Chafaites Sect, which was esteemed one of the four Orthodox Sects by the Sunnis Mahometans. His Post of Cady so employ'd him, that he could not finish his Book; but several learned Persons have added Supplements to it: for he spoke but of 846 famous Men, to which one has added 30, others 60, and others 237; as Haroubi, Bin Aibec, Bin Habib Halaby, and others.

Bin Cavindeschab. See Mirconde.

Bin Courdadebe; that is, Abdallah the Son of Courdabebe. His Book treats of Geography, and is entitled, Almasfalic or Almamalic, that is to say, Roads and Empires. He has given the Distances from one City to another, the Revenues of Trac and other Provinces, and the Expences the Prince is obliged to live at. He has
has besides writ a Book of History, which Musaoudi much prai se in his Book entitled, Muroge Addahab; it is quoted by Abulfeda. He died in the Year 912. Heg. 300.

Bin Faddulah. See Kirmani.

Bin Houcal, a Geographer quoted by Abulfeda. His Book treats of abundance of Cities, but does not tell us the true Pronunciation of their Names, which renders it very obscure. The Title of it is Alma salic or Almamalic, Roads and Empires.

Bin Ketir Dimishqui; that is, the Historian Alimam Albasiz Amadeddin Abulfeda Ismael Bin Omar, who died in 1372. Heg. 774. His Book is entitled, Albydaya or Amayhaya Fittaric, that is to say, the Beginning and End of Chronicles. 'Tis a History in ten Volumes, divided by Millenaries, each containing five Monarchies. It reaches down to the Year 1337. Heg. 738. Several learned Men have made Comments on this Book; such as Bin Schahma, Alainy, Albarzali, Bin Hagiar, and Bin Difchad.

Bin Ketir Fergani; that is, Mehemed Bin Ketir Alfargani. His Book is entitled, Aljasoul Attalatin, that is to say, the thirty Chapters. It treats of the Motions of the Heavens, and of Geography. It has been translated by the learned Golius, a Dutchman, who calls it Elementa Astronomica, printed at Amsterdam in 1669. The Author lived in the time of the Califf Almamir, who died in 833. This same Author wrote another Book, entitled, Almouharrar Almakamal Fiszibhalkora, treating on the Planisphere. But the Book cited in this History of Genghiscan, is that which has been translated by Golius.

Bin Moncaffa. This Author has translated out of the Pahlavian Language, which is the antient Persian, into Arabian, the History of
the antient Persians, or Tavic Alfourse, under the Title of Schabname; on which Arabian Book of Bin Moucafta’s was made the celebrated Persian Poem containing 64000 Diftichs of Firdeouly, dedicated to Sultan Mahmoud Subuctekin King of Persia, as is reported in the Book of Masnoudy, called Murouge Addahab, or the Golden Mead.

Bin Mufraouy. See Hamdallah.

Bin Sayd Carnaty, that is, Aboulhajan Noured-din Ali, Son of Moufa, Son of Saide of Grenada. His Book is entitled, Almougarrab Fy Mabhafighi Abel Almagrib, that is to say, the Elogium of the People of Africk, and is in fifteen Volumes. He has compos’d a History of Maroc, entitled, Atlas Almoutrib Rouad Alcarotas, Fi Achar Abelalma gyib, or Bunian Madinatfas. It is quoted by Abulfeda, as having treated of Cambalee, which is the same City with Pequin in China.

Bin Schabna, that is, Mouhhib Addin Abiluelid Ibrahim Bin Mehemed Ibnal Achetbna, a Native of Aleppo, who died in 1478. Heg. 883. He has compos’d a Universal History, entitled, Rouad Almanadiv Fy Ilmalaouaill, or Anouakhir, that is to say, The Gardens of fine Prospect on the Sciences of the Antients and Moderns. He treats of the Creation of the World, and of the History from Adam down to the Hegira, and continues it as far as the Year 1403. Heg. 806. He foretells the Prodigies that must necessarily happen before the Day of Judgment. He made another Book of Law, entitled, Lisaf Alhouscan Fymarifat Alabhcam, that is to say, the Tongue of Judges on the determining Law-Suits. This last Book is in the King’s Library, numb. 612, and is the same that is quoted in this History of Genghizcan.

Bironini, that is, Abi Ribhan Mehemed Bin Amed Albironini Alcarismi. His Book treats of...
the Mathematicks and Astronomy, and is intitled, Canoun Almasaoudi, that is to say, the Masoudian Canon; thus called because he dedicated it to Sultan Masauod, the Son of Mahmoud Subudekeine, King of Persia, in the Year 1039. Heg. 431. It is one of the most compleat Works on these Subjects of any that has been writ. He also composed another Book, in which he has confuted and absolutely condemned the Use of Talismans, Magick, Conjurations, and the Predictions set forth in Almanacks. This Book is entitiled, Adgaiib Attabiaia, or Algarib Alsayyaya, that is to say, the Wonders of Art and Nature. It is quoted by Abulfeda, who calls it Canoun Almasaoudi.

Caschi; that is, Chamseddin Mehemed Alkaschi, a Native of Cachan in Persia. His History in Persian Verse, is entitiled, Tarikh Gazanisai. It treats of the History of Gazan Can, one of Genghizcan's Descendants.

Cavendescha. See Mironcha.

Caswini, or Casbini; that is, Zacavia Bin Mehemed Bin Mahmoud Alcoufi Alcasswini. His Book is entitiled, Adgaiib Almaclococar, that is to say, the wonderful Natures of Creatures, and is in the Arabian Tongue. It treats of Natural History, of the Qualities of Animals, Vegetables, and Minerals, as also of Waters, aerial Spirits, Faries, Genii, and Talismans; but all to confute the Jewish Rabbins. His Work is much esteem'd by the Orientals. It has been translated out of Arabick into the Turkish Language. It is in the King's Library, numb. 1346. There is another Caswini, who is the Person meant by Abdalletif, Author of the Book called Lubbattaivaric before-mentioned. He is cited by Golius in his Notes on Alfargani, p. 4, 5, 6, and 22.
Cherefeddin Tezde, is the learned Moula Cherefeddin Aly, a Native of Tezde in Persia, who died in the Year 1446. Heg. 850. He has composed the Journal of Tamerlain in Persian, entitled, Zafarname Emir Timur Gourcan, that is to say, the History of the Conquests made by Prince Timur the Can’s Son-in-Law, which he published at Shiraz, and dedicated to Mirza Ibrahim Ben Harage, having finished it in 1424. Heg. 828. He has made the Date very ingeniously in these Words; Kelam Soumifia Fy Schiraz, that is to say, Discourses composed at Shiraz, but the numerical Letters being added, make the number 828, which is the Date of the Book. An Encomium has been made upon him by Condemir in his Book entitled, Habibasuyar. He prefers him to all the Authors who have treated of the History of the Moguls and Tartars, both for the Purity of the Language, which is Persian, and also for the Strength of his Expressions, and Beauty of his Style. The Roads are exactly described, and he has given much Light into the Geography of his Country. It has been translated into the Turkish Language by Hafiz Mehemed Bin Ahmed Algemi. This Author had before composed a first Volume, entitled, Moucaddamay Zafarname, that is to say, a Prologue to the Book of Conquests. This Moucaddama contain’d a Description of Oulouk, that is to say, the Tribes and Mogul Families under the Government of Zagatay Can, the Son of Genghizcan. There was also a Supplement composed by Tadjé Assilgian, and finished in 1410. Heg. 813, containing the History of Scharoc, the Son of Tamerlain, and of his Son Ouloug Bek. This Book, which is in the King’s Library, n. 1508, has been
been translated into French by M. Petis de la Croix-Jun.

Cherif Edris, is the Cherif Mehemed Bin Mehemed Ahdris Alasif Alasacali. He was of the Race of the false Prophet Mahomet, of the Branch of Hafsan, and the Edrisites, of the Sect of the Sophists, or mystical Divines. He was an Inhabitant of Sicily in the Year 1453. Heg. 548. His Book treats of Geography, entitled, Nowzobat Almushhtac Ty Iftirac Alasaf, that is to say, the Divertissement of the Curious, or the Division of the Earth into Kingdoms. He shews the Distance and Length of Roads by Miles, and by Leagues, following the Order of Procopius's seven Climates. Roger King of Sicily ordered him to compose this Work. It has been translated out of Arabick into Latin by Gabriel Sionita, a Maronite, Interpreter to the King, and Professor in the Royal College; who, assisted by his Colleague John Hesronitas, have entitled their Work, Geographia Nubiensis, not knowing the Name or Country of the Author. It is rather the Book of Roger I. The two Maronite Translators believed the Author to be a Christian; but Casaubon, who was heretofore Librarian to the King, and other learned Men, have maintained that he was a Mahometan.

The Impression of this Book is full of Faults, because the Points of the Arabick Letters are not properly placed, so that one cannot be certain of the true Pronunciation of the Names of the Cities and Towns contained in it. The Author is elsewhere called Aboud Abdallah Mehemed Bin Mehemed Bin Abdallah Bin Eumir Almohomenin Idris.

Scicardus. Altho this Author was not an Oriental born, yet we put him here amongst the Eastern Authors, as being the Translator
made use of in this Work.

of a Book entitled, Taric Beni Adam, that is to say, the History of the Children of Adam. Marc Taler, of the City of Ulm in Germany, who was a Man of Letters as well as the Sword, in the War he had in the upper Hungary against the Turks, being at the plundering of the Castle of Filec, which had been before taken from the Christians, preserved a Manuscript written in the Turkish and Arabick Languages, which he found in the chief Mosque in this Place, entitled Taric Beni Adam; and being skilled in the Turkish Language, he translated all that was writ in that Tongue in the Manuscript, and made use of a Turk of that Place to translate the Arabick. Yet this did not content him; for being desirous to dedicate this Manuscript to the Emperor, with some Notes on the History it contained, he defer'd his Design till his return to his own Country, and met at Tubinge with a Professors of the Hebrew Tongue named William Schicard, with whom he labour'd to explain the learned part of this Manuscript, and found it to be a very compleat Account of the Genealogies and Histories of all the principal Families of the East, from Adam down to the last Kings of the Persians, Moguls, and Tartars, writ in Turkish and Arabick. This Manuscript was a Roll of Paper, like those the Latins call'd in times past Volumen, and which the Arabians at this day call Tumar, from which perhaps is derived the Name of Tume. After this Fashion the Treaties of Peace between France and the Turks are written, and kept roll'd up. And thus this Manuscript called Taric Beni Adam has had three Interpreters, namely, Marc Taler, the Turk who explained the Arabick, and William Schicard, much more learned than the other two.
An Account of the Authors

Condemir, that is to say, Caiusfedin Bin Houman Addin. His Book is intitled Habibassuyar By Afred Albaschar, that is to say, The curious part of the Lives of illustrious Men; is a History which he has extracted from that which his Father Mirconde had compos'd, and entitled, Raouz et Assafa, to which he has made Augmentations. He dedicated this Book to the Secretary of State belonging to the King of Persia, Schah Ismael Setevo, who gave him the Name of Habibullah; and for that Reason the Book had the Name of Habib given it in the Year 1508, Heg. 927, in the Reign of Lewis XII. He is Author of another History, which is intitled Coulaasat Alacbar; or, The Cream of Histories. 'Tis in the third part of the Book Habibassuyar that he treats of the Emperors of the Moguls and Tartars, and of Genghiscan and his Children. The Book is divided into three great Volumes, and is very much esteem'd in the Levant. The Manuscript is in the Library of the learned Monsieur Renaudot.

Coudaay, that is, the Cadi Aby Abdallah Mehemed Bin Salama Bin Cadar Alcouday. His Book is intitled, Ayoun Almarif, The Fountain of Sciences. 'Tis a chronological universal History, which treats of the Prophets, Caliphs, Kings, and Princes, and concludes with the Fatimite Caliphs. He dy'd in the Year 1062, Heg. 454. He has wrote another History of Egypt, but 'tis on account of the first that he is quoted in this Book of Genghiscan. There is another Coudaay, the Author of a Book of History, intitled, Toubbfat Alcadim; but it is not him we speak of.

Cousfrchchy, that is, Hafiz, Mehemed Bin Ali Alocuchtebi, the Fowler. His Book is intitled Tarikh Khitai, The Chronological History of China,
made use of in this Work.

China. 'Tis an Extract of a History of Turquestan, the Author of which was Adna\text{\textae} before mentioned. He has also compos'd a Book of Astronomy intitled, Risalat Hisab, or Hayat.

Dgouini, see Jouini.

Din an Alinscha. 'Tis a Collection of Epistolatory Letters in the Turkish Language. There are some in all the Eastern Languages. The learned Person who publish'd them at Constantinople, had collected so great a number of Letters, written to different Lords and Officers of the Ottoman Empire, on various Subjects, that there were very few People at the time of their Publication, who did not think themselves obliged to have one of the Books. It contain'd not only a large number of private Letters, but also a great many Acts of Justice and Law; which might be of use to Men to know in their way of Trade, in foreign Parts. It is in Monsieur Colber's Library.

Fadallah, that is, Coja Raschid Addin Fadallah Vizier, the Son of Abulcair Arraschide Attabib Alhamadani. His Book is intitled Taric Mobarec Gazani, that is to say, The August History of Gazan; dedicated to Sultan Gazan, the Son of Argoun Can, who then reign'd in Persia, and kept his Court at Tauris. Gazan was the Son of Argoun, the Son of Hulacou, Genghizcan's Grandson. In this Prince's time they had almost no knowledge of the History of the antient Moguls, but barely by Tradition; and it had been impossible to have compiled a compleat Account of them, if an old Mogul Officer, called Poulad Dgin Keslou, had not employ'd a long time in searching amongst the Oriental Nations, and in the Northern Parts of Asia, for some Memoirs recorded in Writing,
An Account of the Authors

of the Deeds of these Moguls and Tartars, and of the Victories gain'd by Genghizcan their first Emperor. This Poulad made a Collection of them, which he presented to Gazan Can; who put them into the Hands of his Vizier Fadallah, the Son of a Physician, a Native of the City of Hamadan in Persia, the most able Historiographer of his Time, who made a complete History in the Year 1294. And this Author, whose Manuscript in Folio was sent from Constantinople to the King, by the illustrious Ambassador Monfieur de Guilleragues, and is now in his Majesty's Library, assures us, that it is the first History of the antient Moguls that ever was writ in the Persian Language. It has been translated into French by Monfieur Petis de la Croix the Son, and was of great use to the Father in his perfecting this Book of Genghizcan. And this is what Hadji Califa says of this Author, in his Bibliotheque Orientale.

The Vizier Fadallah has compos'd in Persian, a complete History of the Reign of Genghizcan and his Children, intituled Jamyattabouarikh, that is to say, A Collection of Chronicles. He observes, that after he had begun to write it fair, the Sultan Gazan dy'd, in the Month of Schavval, in the Year of the Hegira 704, which was the Year of Grace 1304; and was succeeded by the Sultan Mehemed Godabende, who commanded him to finish it, to put his Name in the Title Page, and to add the Description of the Countries and Cities of the Moguls, and of their Inhabitants, as also of the Tribes and Tartarian Nations: And that he collected together all he could find on this Subject, in the Histories and Chronicles which were given him by Persons appointed to search for them, who were Men of Learning of several Nations, and who had Orders
Orders to assist him both with their Books and Pens. The Sultan also order'd him to add Geographical Maps. Pursuant to this Order, he wrote in the first Volume the History of Genghizcan, and the Mogul and Tartar Nations. In the second he relates the Death of a great many Princes of this Race, with the Dates of the Years when they dy'd: And in the third Volume he has shewn the Geography of the Countries belonging to the Tartars, Moguls and Turks; relating the History of each Nation, according to the Relations given of them in their Books, without any Alterations. The first Volume does then contain what he wrote in the Name of Gazancan, and by his Order, which he intitled Tarikh Moubarec Gazani; which is in two Chapters; one of the Rise and Greatness of the Turks and Tartars, and the other of the Moguls, wherein was the Life of Genghizcan. The second Volume contain'd what he writ in the Name, and by the Command of Sultan Olagayton Mehemed Codabende; which was also comprehended in two Chapters; one was the History of this Codabende, and the other was divided into two Sections; the first of which treated of the Prophets, Caliphs, Kings, and Nations, from the Days of Adam, down to the Year of the Hegira 700. and the second was the History of the People of the Northern and Southern China, of Cashmir, the Indies, the Israelites, the Atheists, and the Ebrenez, or Europeans. The third Volume contain'd the Maps of the Geography, with the Description of the Kingdoms, Cities and Towns, which made three great Volumes; the first of which is in the King's Library, and has been translated into French by Monsieur Petis, de la Croix Junior, as before mentioned.
An Account of the Authors.

Fargani, see Bin Ketir.

Firuzzahadi, that is, Magededdin Mehemed Bin Yacoub Alshoruzzahadi. His Book is an Arabic Dictionary, intitled Camous Allogha, that is to say, The Ocean of the Arabian Tongue, in 60 Volumes. It was writ in the Month of Schawal, or the Horse, in the Year of Grace 1414. Heg. 817.

Hadj Mehemed is an Author who was a Merchant, and is quoted in Rubruquis.

Handallah, or Binmuskaoufi, that is, Handallah Bin Abiakir Bin almuskaoufi al Cazvini, who dy'd in the Year of Grace 1349. Heg. 750. His Book is a Historical Geography and Natural History in the Persian Language, intitled Nazhatalcouleub, the Recreation of Hearts. It is divided into a Preface, three Chapters, and a Conclusion, The Preface is a Geography, according to Ptolemy's seven Climates: The first Chapter on the production and growth of Plants, on Minerals and Animals: The second treats of Men; the third of Cities and Countries; and the Conclusion treats of the Wonders of Nature: Amongst which he says, That the City of Casbin, of which he was a Native, was situate in a very fair Plain near Mount Alvende, not far from the City of Hamadan in the Country of the antient Parthians, in the 37th Degree of Latitude. There are some who will have it to be the Arsata of the Antients, built by Aschky, or Arsaces, King of Parthia, who made it the Capital of his Empire. See Gohius's Notes upon Alfargani and Strabo, lib. 2. It is in the King's King's Library, No. 1520.

Hezarfen, that is, Coja Husain Efendi, sir-named Hezarfen, who dy'd at Constantinople in the Year 1682. He was a Friend to the French Nation. He has writ a History in the Turkish Language.
made use of in this Work.

Language, intitled Tankih Tavaricolumb, that is to say, An Extract of the Annals of the Kings. 'Tis a General History of Asia. He began it in the Year of Grace 1670, and finish'd it in 1672. He extracted it from the Works of Maoulana Genabi an Arabian, and also from those of the Persian Mirconde, and several other Oriental Authors; and from several Greek and Latin Authors. He has given Rules for taking the Longitudes and Latitudes of Countries. He has explain'd the difference of the Parasanga's, (a Persian Measure of the Roads, not every where limited to a set number of Furlongs) of Leagues and Miles. His Book is divided into four Parts: The first treats of the antient Persians, and of the Ptolemies of Egypt; the second of the Caliphs; the third of the Ottomans; and the fourth of the Kings of all the Asian Nations. He finishes with a Description of China, and afterwards of America. It has been translated into French by Monsieur Peris de la Croix Senior.

Jacut cited in Golius. See Yacout Hamavi.

Jouini, that is, Aladdin Alamule Bin Assabhib Bahaddin Mebemed Aljouini Annabbouy, who dy'd in the Year of Grace 1284. He is call'd the Rhetorician, and excell'd in Learning. He was also call'd Coja Atalmule. He compos'd his Book in the Year 1260, in the Reign of Mangou Caun the Son of Tulican, the Son of Genghizcan, intitled Taric Gebangushcha, that is to say, The History of the Conquest of the World. He observes that Genghizcan's real Country lay much to the North and East of the Desert-side of Tartary; and was of so great extent, that the true Country of the Moguls was eight Months Journey both in length and breadth: That the several forts of People that inhabited it, were divided into Tribes call'd Moguls;
An Account of the Authors

Moguls; and that among all these Tribes there was but one that was civilized, and that was that of Niron Caiat, of which Genghizcan the Son of Pisowac was the Sovereign after the death of his Father. He treats of the History of Genghizcan, and of Hulacou Can, his Grandson, and of other Kings in their time. He is quoted by Alasfus in the beginning of his Chronological History.

Kirmani, or Bin Fadlallah, that is, Schahabadin Ahmed Bin Yahia Bin Mehemed alkirmani, Bin Fadlallah alkatib addimisqui, the Damascene Secretary. He dy'd Anno Dom. 1340. Heg. 741.
His Works in 20 Volumes are intitled Masalik alabdar fil mamalik, or alamsfar, The glancing of the Eyes into the Empires and Cities. This Work is in two Parts: The first treats of the Earth in general; the second of its Situation. It has been enlarged by Bin Schamseddin Mehemed Bin Tousif alkirmani. It is quoted by Alasfus.

Macrizi, that is, The Shee Taquieedin Ahmed Bin Ali almacrizi, who dy'd Anno Domini 1441. Heg. 845. His Book is in Arabick, and treats of the History of Egypt. It is intitled Almanah aiz, or Alitibar; that is to say, Counsels and Examples. He composed fifteen other Books of History, and on other Subjects.

Marraschi, that is, Scherif Zahiraddin Bin Affid nasiraddin Almarraschi, a Native of the City of Marrasche in Cappadocia. His Book is intitled Taric Tabarestan, that is to say, The Chronological History of the Province of Tabareslan in Persia, near the Caspian Sea. He finish'd it in the Year of Grace 1476. Heg. 881.

Marraschi, an Abreviation of Marrakeschi, was the Chee Abouabdallahat Marrakeschi, a Native
made use of in this Work.

tive of the City of Meroc in Mauritania. His Book is of Geography, intitled Almasafik, or Almamalie; that is to say, The Roads and Empires. It is in Arabick in the King's Library, No. 732. It has been translated into the Turkish Tongue by Sid Mehemed Mudarris, a Professor of Languages in the College of the Sultan Mehemed who took Agria. This Marrakeschi did also compose a Chronological History, intitled Tarikh Almarrakeschi, in the third part of his Book of Geography; which is the only one we have in France. He makes mention of several Transactions that pass'd in the beginning of Genghizcan's Reign; of his Laws, the Queens his Wives, and the four great Princes his Sons, who by their Valour distinguish'd themselves, and were more famous than all the great Generals of that Age.

Mehemed Bin Ahmet Nisavi. See Nisavi.

Mehemed Bin Aias. His Book is intitled Naf-\(\text{\textemdash}\)châr alazhar f\(\text{\textemdash}\)adgihihbatamsfar, or alazhar; that is to say, The Scent of Flowers, on the Rarities of Cities and Countries. It also treats of antient Kings, the Pyramids of Egypt, of the Talismans, and Curiosities which the antient Philosophers had made in this Kingdom. He describes the City of Grand Cairo and the River Nile. He begins his Book with a Discourse on Astronomy and the Spheres. It is in the King's Library.

Mehemed Toufy. See Selmani.

Mirconde, or Cavenfchab, or Bin Cavenfchab; that is, Mehemed Bind Cavenfchab Bin Mahmoud, surnamed Mirconde the Historian. His Book is divided into a Preface, seven Parts or Sections, and a Conclusion. Each Part makes a very thick Volume in Folio. He wrote it at He-\(\text{\textemdash}\)vat in Corassuna, in a Caravansera call'd Cau-cabal-
An Account of the Authors

cabaloculafya, built by the Vizier Mir Alisbir, to whom he dedicated this Work, which he intitled Raouzat alaffa fi swat alumbia, or almuboc, or alcoulafa; which signifies, The Garden of Pleasure, touching the Lives of the Prophets, Kings and Califs. The Preface treats of the Science, or Art of Chronological History: The first Part treats of the Creation, the Lives of the Prophets, and of the antient Kings of Persia: The second, of Mahomet and the four first Califs: The third, of the Oummiades and the Abassides: The fourth, of the Kings of divers other Nations, Contemporaries with the Abassides: The fifth, of Genghizcan and his Children: The sixth, of Tamerlain and his Children: The seventh, of Sultan Husein Biera; and the Conclusion treats of several Histories which particularly relate to Geography, the Rarities of the habitable parts of the Earth, and the Wonders of Nature. The Fragment which has been made use of for this History of Genghizcan, which was the fifth part of this Work, was lent by Monsieur Herbelot to Monsieur Petis de la Croix Senior, of which he took a Copy and translated it, and has made use of it all in this Book: And when he sometimes quotes in the beginning of Page 250, and afterwards in Page 40, this because he sometimes reckons by the Pages in the original Manuscript, and sometimes by those of his own Copy of it, not having had the original Manuscript all the time he wrote this in his keeping. The two first of Mirconde’s seven Volumes are in the King’s Library, N° 150, and 160. This Author was the Father of Condemi before-mentioned.

Mahlabi, that is, Hasan Bin Ahmedal Mahlabi, whose Book of Geography is intitled Almafa-
made use of in this Work.

lic, or Almamalik, Roads and Empires; dedicated to Azizbillah, an Abbaside Califf and King of Egypt, quoted by Abulfeda.

Nasirreddin Tousi, is Nasirreddin Mehemed Bin Hassan attousi, a Native of Tous in Corassana. He was in great Repute about the Year of Grace 1261, in the Reigns of Mustasim Billah Califf of Bagdat, and the Mogul King Hulacou Can, Genghizcan's Grandson by Tuli. He excell'd in the Knowledge of Geometry, Astronomy, and all other Sciences; as not only the Tables of Longitude and Latitude which he had publish'd, and which Gravius caus'd to be printed in the Year 1652, with those of Ouloughbek's, do sufficiently manifest; but he shines much more in the famous Astronomical Observations call'd Zige Icani, which he made at Meraga a City in Azerbijana, where he was the chief of all the Astrologers and Mathematicians whom Hulacou Can had call'd together in his so much admired Royal Observatory. He began his Observations at Meraga in the Month of Jumazylevel, in the Year of the Hegira 657, and of our Lord 1259. His Book, which was written in the Persian Tongue, was intitled Zige Icani, and was divided into four Parts: The first treated of the History of Genghizcan and his Children, and of the manner how they conquer'd Asia; The second treated of the Motion of the Planets; of their Longitude and Latitude, or Situation: The third shew'd their rising and setting in the Horizon: The fourth treated of other Astronomical Observations and Operations. There have been several Commentators who have added many things to his Ephemerides and his other Works, as Husein Davir of Nisbavour, Gayseddin Gemfchid, who compos'd
An Account of the Author's
compos'd Zige Cacani, to serve as a Supplement
to the Ephemerides call'd Zige Icani.

Nimatullah, that is, Nimatullah Bin Ahmed Bin
Moubarac Arroumi, a Native of Anatolia. His
Book is a Dictionary which begins with the
Persian, and is explain'd in the Turkish Language.
He dy'd Anno Dom. 1522. Heg. 929.

Nisavi; that is, Mehemed Bin Aly Nisavi.
This Author, who has writ in the Arabian
Tongue, was a Native of the City of Nisa
in Comastana. He was Governor of this Place
for the King of Carizme, and his Reputation
brought him to the Knowledge of the Sultan
Gelaleddin, who was then King of it. He
caused him to come to Court, and be near his
Person, giving him the Post of Secretary of
State. From the time he was employ'd in
this Sultan's Affairs, he made Memorandums of
all that happen'd worthy notice in his time,
and even of all that had past in the Family of
Sultan Mehemed King of Carizme, the Father of
Sultan Gelaleddin. He from these Memoirs
composed a Book, entitled, Sirat Afsultan Ge-
laeddin, that is to say, the Life of the Sultan
Gelaleddin, who was also named Amaddeddin Is-
mael. He was a great Enemy to Genghizcan,
of whom he speaks with as much Passion as
Arabschab did of Tamerlain. Nisavi is not a
faithful Historian in the first Chapters of his
Book; but the rest are more exact. He is quo-
ted in the Gulistan of Schec Sadi. His Book is
in the King's Library, numb. 845. He lived
in the time of Genghizcan.

Selmani; that is, Mehemed Bin Mahmoud Bin
Ahmed attoush assalmani. His Book is a natural
History, entitled, Adgaib Almaclecat, that is
to say, the Wonders of Nature. It was in
Persian. He wrote it in the Year 1160. Heg. 555.

Tabari;
made use of in this Work.

Tabari; that is, Imam Aboujafar Mehemed Bin Jarir, a Native of Tabaresfan, who died in the Year 921. Heg. 303. His Work is an universal History, entitled, Taric Aloumam, or Almoulouc, the History of Nations and Kings. It is also called Taric Attabari. He begins with the Creation of the World, and finishes at the Year 915. Heg. 309. It has been translated into the Persian Language by Balami. Another has translated it into the Turkish. There are two Supplements to it, one writ by Fargani, and the other by Hamadani, who died in the Year 1127. Heg. 521. ‘Twas by means of his Supplement that the original Book came to be discover’d.

Taschkunt, is Hafiz Mehemed Attafikumi, Pupil to the learned Alyalcofschtchi. He composed a History of Genghizcan’s Children, which he entitled Tarikh Aldgenghiz, which has not yet appear’d in Europe. He is Author of a History of the Uzbeck Cans, the Descendants of Genghizcan, who are dispersed in Transoxiana and Turquestan, some of whom do at this present reign in those Countries; and this History is entitled, Tarifch Taschkunt.

Ulubec, is Ulubec Mehemed, the Son of Scharoc, the Son of Tamerlain. His Book is entitled, Zidge Oulubbec, and Zidge Ilcani, that is, the Royal Ephemerides. He composed several other Works on the Mathematicks about the Year 1420, being at Samarcand, where he then reigned. He sent for a great many Astronomers from all Parts of the World, to consult with them about the Observations he had made with great Exactness on the Longitude and Latitude of the Planets. This Tartarian King was the Son of Mirza Charoc, the Son of Tamerlain. The Turks and Persians at this time admire a Dial of a prodigious size, which
An Account of the Authors

which was made by his Direction and Invention in the City of Samarcand, where, as also, in Turquestan, he reign’d the Space of 43 Years. This Prince, who was born in 1394, died in 1450. He had for his Tutors, Salubahaddin Moufia, surnamed Cadizade, and Ghajfasaddin Gemischid, who both died before the Book Zidge Ilcani was finnished, which was afterwards done by the Son of Ghayaseddin, that is to say, by the learned Moulla Aly Bin Mehemed Alcouschchchi the Fowler, who in one Year, as is reported, learnt all the Sciences. The Book of the Astronomical Observations of Ouloughbec, or Ulugbec, which is the same thing, is divided into four Parts. The first treats of Chronological History: The second of Geography, and the Rising and Setting of the Stars in each Country: The third of the Situation or Position of the Planets, and of their Longitudes and Latitudes, and of all that is curious in the Art of Astronomy: The fourth shews the Motions of the Stars. These are the best Ephemerides, and the most easy to be understood of any.

Yacout Hamavi, is the same with Jacut, quoted by Golins. His Name at length was Abou-abdallah Yacout Arroumi Alhamavi. He was a Grecian Turk, tho he dwelt at Hama, and was at Bagdat in Chaldea. His Book treats of Geography, and is entitled, Almuschtarac Sanan, or Almouctalaf Sanfan, that is to say, what is alike in Creation, and different in kind. He is Author of a Book of the Dynasties of Kings, called, Kitabaddoual; as also of several learned Works. He has also composed a Book of Geography, entitled, Moodgem Albuldan, which signifies an Alphabet of Cities; of which an Abridgment has been made by Assiouti, entitled, 

Al-
made use of in this Work.

Almarasid, that is, Observations. It is quoted by Abulfeda.

Zacut, a Jewish Author, also named Abraham. He composed a Book in Hebrew, entitled Sefer Yucassin, which is a Chronicle, containing the Genealogy of the Jews. He also treats of the Arabian Califfs and Princes, and of the antient Moguls and Tartars, and also of Turks sprung from Mahan, from whom the Ottomans are descended. He was born in Castile in the City of Salamanca. His Work was printed at Cracow in the Year 1580.

Zehebi, is the Imam Hafis Schamseddin Mehemed Bin Ahmed Azzahabi Almasri Assmarcandi, who died in the Year 1345. Heg. 746. He was born in Cairo, and dwelt in Samarcand. He is Author of an Universal History in twelve Volumes, entitled, Tarikhalislam, that is to say, the History of the Mussulmans. He relates all the remarkable Events and Actions of great Men as far as the Year 1340. Heg. 741. Several Abstracts have been made from this Book; and among the rest, Kitabalabar, Suiar Annoulala, Tabacat Alhoufzaz, Tabacat Al Courra. There is a Supplement writ by Gezeri; another entitled Hafil, by Schansf Sacaouti, who died in the Year of the Hegira 906. It has been abridged by Aladdin Ali Bin Calaf Alizzi, and by Schamseddin Mehemed Algezeri, who died in the Year 1429. Heg. 833. Zehebi has also made a History from it of the Califfs, Tarikhalkoulafa, in four Volumes, in which he treats of the Ommiades and Abassides. He is also the Author of the History of Carizme, which M. Petis de la Croix made use of in this History, and has put it all into the History of Genghizcan. This Book was by the Persians call’d Intichabsalatin, that is to say, an Abstract of Kings, and makes
An Account of the Authors

a part of the great History of Tarikhalistan. It begins in these Words, The fourth Rank of the second Order of Kings, that is to say, of the Mogul Kings, the first of whom was the Great Genghizcan; and of the Kings of Persia descended from him, the first of whom was Hulacou his Grandson. This Book was writ in the Year 1536. Heg. 757.

The Names of the European Authors and Travellers, who are made use of to prove the Truth of the Facts related in the History of Genghizcan.

Amianus Marcellinus, a Latin Historian, a Native of Antioch. He lived in the Year 378. His Work consisted of thirty one Books, of which we have but eighteen; in which we find the first Original of the French, and several Antiquities of the Gauls. It has been translated into French by Marolles Abbot of Villeloin.

Arian, a Philosopher and Historian, a Native of Nicomedia in Bithynia, where he made his Studies. He was Author of the History of Alexander the Great. He lived in the Reign of the Emperor Adrian. It has been translated into French by Nicholas Parrot of Ablancourt, and by Witard de Rojo.

Aristophanes, a Greek Poet.

Asceline. In the Memoirs of Friar Simon of St. Quintin, in Vincent de Beauvais, mention is made of a Dominican Frier named Asceline, who was sent in 1247. by Pope John IV. to some Tartarian Princes. But his Memoirs have so little Appearance of being true, that we dare
dare not quote what is in them, seeing there is not one Oriental Author to justify what they report: for Example, he assures us that the Can of Tartary is believed by the Tartars to be the Son of God. Frier Asceline spent three Years and seven Months in his Journey.

Barros; that is, John de Barros, a Portuguese, Dec. 3. Lib. 4. Chap. 1. who was born at Viseo in 1496. He is the Author of a History of Asia, which is entitled, Decadas d' Asia. He died in 1570. There are twelve Decades in his Work.

Benoit Goez, a Portuguese Jesuit, sent into China by Echer a Mogul King of India, in 1603. We must distinguish him from Damien Goez, who was not a Jesuit.

Bernier, a Physician, Philosopher, and Traveller, is so well known, that there is no need to speak farther of him.

Bochart, is the Author of Geographia sacra Bocharti, or Phaleg, printed at Leyden in 1692. He was a Minister of the Reformed Religion at Caen in Normandy, and died in 1607.

Father Brier, a learned Jesuit, who died in 1669, a Native of Abbeville in Picardy. He is Author of the Parallels between the antient Geography, and the new European; and of a Chronology in Latin, in six Volumes.

Calvius, a German, the Author of a Chronology in Latin, entitled, Sethi Calvii Opus Chronologicum. He was born at Grosleb, a little Town in Thuringia. He died in 1617. He speaks of the Tartars in Silesia, pag. 807.

Carpin. This is Frier John du Plan Carpin, a Cordelier, who was sent by Pope Innocent IV. to the Can of Tartary, in the Year 1246. A Relation of his Journey is given by Hacklui, F 3 an
an Englishman; and Bergeron has put his Relation of it into a more regular Order. He preceded Rubruquis in his Voyage about seven or eight Years; for Rubruquis did not go from Constantinople for Tartary till the Year 1213. He assures us that Cathay is China.

Schicardus. See Schicardus amongst the Oriental Authors.

Clavieir, is a Book of Geography translated by Father Labbe a Jesuit. He was a Native of Danzig, and died at Leyden in 1623.

Diodorus, a Sicilian born at Agyrium, which is at present call’d San Philippo d’Agrone. He lived in the Reigns of Julius Caesar and Augustus. He wrote the so much celebrated Historical Library, divided into forty Books, of which there remain with us but fifteen. They are writ in Greek, and have been translated into Latin by Pogge, a Florentine, by Order of Pope Nicholas V.

Galamus, is Clement Galamus Furrentinus, a Theatine by Order, and a Missionary from the Holy See to Armenia. His Work is entitled, Conciliatio Ecclesiae Armeniæ cum Romana, testimoniiis Patrum & Doctorum Armenorum. It was printed at Rome in 1650, and at Cologne in 1686. by the Title of Historia Armenia Ecclesiastica & Politica. It speaks of Haidu King of Armenia, and of his Journey to China. Galamus has writ several other Works, as an Armenian Grammar, a Dictionary, a Book of Philosophy, Logick, Phylick, and Theology, all in Armenian and Latin; and several pious Poems in Armenian. The People of that Nation hold him in great Esteem, and avow that he understood the Armenian Tongue in the greatest Perfection.

...
made use of in this Work.

Golius, that is, James Golius, an Arabick Professor in the University of Leyden. He was a Dutchman, born at the Hague. He had been Pupil to Erpenius, and succeeded him in his Place of Arabick Professor in 1624. He was also skil'd in the Mathematicks. Golius made a Voyage to Aleppo, and also went to Morocco with an Ambassador of the States. He presented to the King Moulazeydan the Great Atlas, and the New Testament in Arabick. He made a Petition to this King in Arabick, which the Arabs acknowledged to be very elegant; yet he could not pronounce the Arabick Tongue very well, for which reason he conversed in Spanish with that King, who understood that Language well. Golius published in 1636. the History of Tamerlain in Arabick and Latin; and afterwards at Amsterdam in 1653. the great Arabick and Latin Dictionary, entitled, Lexicon Arabicum, an excellent Book. He might well have omitted a great many Obscenities, which he innocently put in. He had a Brother who was a bare-footed Carmelite, named Peter Golius, who lived a long time in the Levant, and also understood the Oriental Languages, and translated out of Latin into Arabick, The Imitation of Jesus Christ, but in so mean a Style, that it was not much esteemed in the Levant. There is also another Translation of it by M. Petis de la Croix jun. into Arabick. James Golius has translated Alfargan's Astronomy, and called his Translation, Elementa Astronomica; in which he affirms us that Cambalu should be writ Can Baleb, that Baleb signifies City, and Can Emperor; and that it is Pequin situated in 46 deg. of Latitude, according to Herair in Abulfeda, and in Ulugbee. The two Golius's were the Nephews of James
James Hemeler, one of the Canons of Arvors. Golius died in the Year 1700, or thereabouts. Gruber, is a Jesuit.

Gulielmus of Tyre. This Author was born in the City of Tyre, in Phœnicia, of which he was Archbishop in the Year 100. He was afterwards Chancellor of the Kingdom of Jerusalem in the Reign of Baldwin; and tho he was overwhelmed with Business, he did not cease to apply himself to write the History of this Kingdom, and of almost all Syria, which the other European Princes, join'd with the French, had conquer'd, and got from the Mahometans. He lived a long time. He employ'd eight Years in this Work, which was conceal'd for near 400 Years before it was brought to light, which was not till the Year 1560. and printed at Basle in two Parts: the first of which contained twenty three Books of the Holy War; and the second, fix other Books on the same Subject. 'Tis in this second Part that the Emperor Genghiscan is spoken of. It was this William of Tyre who writ, in the time of St. Bernard, the History of the Holy Wars, lib. 4. chap. 9. and fancied that Theophilus Bishop of Antioch was the Person to whom St. Luke address'd the Acts of the Apostles: But he was very much mistaken; for this good Prelate, far from being contemporary with St. Luke and the Apostles, was not consecrated Bishop of Antioch till the Year 170.

Haiton. This Author was Nephew to Haiton King of Armenia, and was called the Lord of Courshi. In his Youth he bore Arms in the Service of the antient Moguls against the Turks. He went to Can-Balec, and offer'd his Service to Mangou Caan, some Years before King Haiton his Uncle went to the Court of the same Prince Mangou,
Mangou, who was Grand Can, and King of China, to ask his Assistance against his Enemies. Mangou agreed to whatever they demanded; and when King Haiton returned to Armenia, this Author his Nephew accompanied him, and carried with him the Observations he had made of the Eastern and Northern Countries; but being very piously inclined, he resolved upon turning a Religious; and in order to it, to go into the Isle of Cyprus, to enter into the Order of the Premonstratenses, an Order of Augustine Friars. And this Resolution he effected in the Year 1305. Here this Religious at length compleated these Memoirs; and soon after being sent for by Pope Clement V. who was retired into France, he published them in the French Tongue at Poitiers, assisted by Nicholas Salconi, who afterwards translated them into Latin in the Year 1307. Which Book was printed in 1672, by the Title of the Oriental History, which some have also called the History of the Tartars.

Herodotus of Halicarnassus, is a Greek Historian, whom Cicero calls the Father of History, and Prince of Historians. He lived 450 Years before the Birth of our Saviour. He composed at Samos his History, in nine Books, which was found so excellent by the Assembly at the Olympick Games, that it had the Name of the nine Muses given it, according to the Report of Suidas. He has taken notice of all that had past most remarkable in the World during the space of 240 Years, that is to say, from the Reign of Cyrus to the Reign of Xerxes King of Persia, in whose time he lived.

Hieronymus Xavierius. He writ in the Year 1598.

Hornius and Zonaras. See Zonaras.
An Account of the Authors

Jacut, is Yacout Hamavi, an Arabian Author, whose Geography is cited in Abulfeda, and in Golius in his Notes upon Alfargani, as is before-mentioned.

Jornandes, was by Birth a Goth, the Son of Wamuth Alain. He was Secretary to the Goths, and afterwards Bishop of Ravenna. He wrote two Books of History in the sixth Century, in which he lived, under the Emperor Justinian. He composed his Book De Rebus Gothicis in 552. He composed another Book, entitled, De Regniorvm Successione, in which he speaks of the Assyrians, Medes, and Persians. 'Tis on account of several Facts which he has related in this last Book, that he is quoted in this History of Genghizcan.

Josaphatus Barbarus, lived in the Year 1474. Josephus, the Historian. He wrote in Greek, tho' he was a Jew by Birth. He was the Son of Matthias the High Priest, and his Mother was of the Blood Royal of the Maccabees. He was born in the Year 37. He lived in the Reigns of nine Emperors, from Caligula to Domitian. He wrote the seven Books of the Wars of the Jews, and was Eye-witness of the taking of Jerusalem by Titus Vespasian. He wrote twenty Books of the Jewish Antiquities, and several other learned Works.

Justin, the Historian, lived in the second Century, in the reign of Antoninus Pius. He made an Abridgment of the History of Trogus Pompeius, which was the reason that some accuse him of having caused the History it itself to be lost by this Epitome of it. This History contained 44 Books, and Justin has kept the like number. His manner of Writing is much esteemed for the Fineness of the Latin.
made use of in this Work.

Mark Taler. See Schicardus.

Marco Polo. This illustrious Venetian was of a noble Family: He writ his Travels in Italian, and intitled them Viaggidi Mefer Marco Polo Gentilhuomo Venetiano. There are two Translations of them into Latin. He treats in his Book De Regionibus Orientis, of the Eastern and Northern Countries; in which he resided a great while, having some considerable Employments in the Court of Coublaycan, the Conqueror of the Southern China, which the Arabs call Matchin; which Genghizcan, his Grandfather, had charged his Children to conquer, after he himself had gotten the Northern China call’d Cautai. Marco Polo lived in those Parts eighteen Years; and Father Kircher, a Jesuit, says, That none of the Antients have written more amply than this Author, of the Kingdoms of the remotest part of the Orient. He went from Venice in 1272, with his Father and Uncle, and did not return till the Year 1295; in which time he apply’d himself to the putting in good order all the Remarks he had made in his Journey.

Father Martini. This Author was a Jesuit belonging to the City of Trent, who had been sent by his Superiors to China. He read in the Histories of this Country, all that had past from the first Establishment of that great Empire, to the Birth of our Saviour; and having himself compos’d a History, at his Return in 1651, he publish’d it in the Latin Tongue, with his Relation of the Wars of the Tartars, printed at Anvers in 1654; and likewise the History of China, printed at Munich in 1658; which gain’d him much Honour. His other Works have been also printed at Amsterdam in 1659: as likewise his new Atlas of China, which contains a fine Collection of Maps of the fifteen Provinces of this
An Account of the Authors

dthis Empire; to which this Father has added
a Geographical Description, and a Map of the
Isle of Corea, and another of Japan.

Matthew Paris, a Monk of St. Albans, the
Author of the History of England, who makes
mention of the Tartars: And he gives the Re-
cital of a circular Letter address'd in the Year
1241, to the Duke of Brabant, by the Count
Palatine of Saxony; in which are related the
Actions the Tartars had done in his Country,
and the great Ravages and Outrages they had
committed there. He acquaints him, that St.
Lewis the French King had made a Vow to arm
against them, to drive them thence. This Au-
thor begins his History of England in the Year
of Grace 1066, and continues it down to the
Year 1270; which was not printed at London
till the Year 1570.

Paulus Jovius, a Historian of the sixth
Century, who dy'd at Florence in 1552. He
was a Native of Como in Lombardy. He was
at first a Physician, and afterwards was made
Bishop of Nocera by Pope Clement VII. He
had a Pension from Francis I. This Historian
lived 69 Years, his History contains 45 Books,
and ends in 1544.

Plutarch of Cheronea, a City of Bœotia, a Phi-
losopher, Historian, and Orator. He lived in
the Days of Nerva and Trajan. He travell'd
into Greece and Egypt, to consult the Learned.
He writ all he saw that was curious. His Book
is intitled, The Lives of Illustrious Men, Greeks
and Romans. There are two other Plutarchs.

Procopius of Cesarea, a Historian who lived in
the Reign of Justinian. He was Secretary to
Belisarius, during all the Wars that General
waged in Persia, Africa and Italy. He was
made Prefect of Constantinople. His Works are
made use of in this Work.

contain'd in eight Books, two of the Wars of Persia, two of the Vandals, and four of the Goths. Father Claude Maltrait, a Jesuit, caus'd all Procopius's Works to be printed in the Year 1663.

Protomæus Claudius, a Native of Pelousia. His Works treat of Geography, which he compos'd in Alexandria, and are contain'd in eight Books. He divided the Earth into seven Climates. He is the Author of the Almagesti.

Quintus Curtius, sirnamed Rufus. He writ the History of Alexander the Great. He lived in the Reign of Vespasian.

Ramusio, that is, John Baptist Ramusio, of Venice, who was skill'd in Languages. He dy'd in 1559. at Padua, being 72 Years old. He wrote three Volumes of Travels: The first contain'd the Description of Africa, and Pestro John's Country: The second was a History of Tartary, and several other Travels: And the third, Voyages to the new World in America.

De Refugè's Geography.

Rubruquis, that is, Gulielmus Rubruquis, a Cordelier, sent by the King St. Lewis to Sartach a Tartarian Prince, who at that time made a great Noife in the World: He was there some Years after Carpin. The greatest of all the Tartar Cans was Mingou Caan, who then reign'd in the East and North Parts of Asia, and Batou Can in the Western Parts: These Princes were both of them Genghizcan's Grandsons. This Cordelier's Travels, who went from Constantinople in 1253, are found written in Peter Bergeron's Book, which he gather'd from Richard Hackhuit an English Man.

Sansnon, that is, Nicholas Sanson in his Sacred Geography.
An Account of the Authors

Sanuto, that is, Livio Sanuto, a French Man, who settled at Venice, and was made a Noble Venetian. He wrote a Book of the Geography of Africa, printed at Venice in 1588.

Scaliger, that is, Joseph Scaliger, born at Agen in 1540, and dy’d in 1609. He was the Son of Julius Caesar Scaliger, or de l’Escale. He dy’d at Leyden. He understood Greek and Hebrew. He studied first at Bourdeaux, and afterwards at Paris. His Book is a Chronicle much esteem’d.

Stephanus de Urbibus.

Strabo, a Philosopher, who flourished in the Year 20, in the Days of Augustus and Tiberius, born at Amasia a City of Cappadocia. His Geography is divided into 27 Parts. He had been a great Traveller. He died in the twelfth Year of Tiberius’s Reign.

Texeira, a Spaniard. He translated the History of Persia, which was the first part of Mirconde’s great Book call’d Raouzet Assafa, which was in seven Volumes, as may be seen under the Word Mirconde before-mentioned. Texeira has extracted thence this History, which he has presented to the World in Spanish; but it has been since translated into French by Cotelendi. Texeira had travel’d into Persia, and made himself acquainted with the Language of that Country; and thus enabled, he translated this part of Mirconde’s Works. He finish’d his first Part with an Abridgment of the History of the Califfs, &c.

Thevenot the younger. He was a great Traveller, born at Paris, and died at Miana in Persia, about eight Days Journey from Tauris, Nov. 18. 1667. He was Monsieur Petis de la Croix’s Friend, so he took care to revise his Memoirs, and had them printed in three Volumes: The first contains his Travels into Turkey;
made use of in this Work.

key; the second his Travels to Persia; and the third to India. Monsieur Petis de la Croix jun. took care, being at Miana, afterwards to take up his Bones near the Caravansera, where they had been buried; and had them buried at Tauris, under the Altar of the Capuchins Church there, in 1676.

Tremellius, and Junius jointly wrote a Book call'd Biblia Heretica; this Emanuel Tremellius, was born at Ferrara, and was the Son of a Jew. He was Professor of the Hebrew Tongue in the Academy at Heidelberg. He render'd into Latin the Syriack Version of the New Testament. After which he retired to Metz; from thence to Sedan to teach Hebrew, and there he died in 1580, being 70 Years old. He made a Version of the Bible, on which account he is cited in this History of Genghizcan.

Trigaut, that is, Nicolaus Trigautius, a Jesuit. He is the Author of a Book intitled, The Christian Expedition to China: In which he affurces us, that the Capital of Cathay is Cambaleg; and that Cambaleg, which Marco Polo calls Cambalu, is the same City with that now call'd Pequin, situate in 46 Degrees of Latitude, which is agreeable to the Opinion of Harair in Abulfeda. And in this Matter this Jesuit's Opinion is conformable to the Eastern Geographers.

Vartomanus, that is, Ludovicus Vartomanus; who flourished in the Year 1506.

Xavier is Hieronymus Xavier, who lived in 1508.

Zacut. See Zacut among the Oriental Authors.

Zonaras, is John Zonaras, a Greek Historian who lived about the Year 1120. He was a Monk of the Order of St. Basil. His Books are Annals in three Volumes, which have been translated into Latin by Jerom Volius, and print-

Zoroaster the celebrated Astrologer, King of Bactria, or Balc, lived in the Days of Ninus King of the Assyrians, who preserv'd his Ashes so long as his Empire endured. He has written Predictions and other Books of Astrology.

FINIS.

Speedily will be published,

The History of Tamerlain the Great, properly call'd Timur-Bec, Emperor of the Moguls and Tartars: Being an Historical Journal of his Conquests in Asia and Europe: Written in the Persian Language by Cherefedin Ali, Native of Tzed, who was contemporary with Tamerlain: Translated into French by the late Monsieur Petit de la Croix, Professor of the Arabian Tongue in the Royal College; and Secretary and Interpreter to the King in the Oriental Languages: With Historical Notes and Maps: Now faithfully render'd into English.